

Holls



Imprimatur,
Imprimatur

Joh. Hall : R. P. D.
Episc. Lon. a sac. Domest.
Feb. 26. 1663.



Smith major

A

1683

D^r. *Saunderson*
(late Bishop of *Lincoln*)
HIS
Approbation of this
GRAMMAR.

I Have perused this present *Work*, which the Author, to his great Commendation, hath contrived with so much care and judgment, that I cannot but very well approve of it, as being the *shortest, orderliest, and plainest*, for the ease both of Master and Scholar, and with the least variation from the COMMON-GRAMMAR, of any Book that I have seen published in *this kind*.

ROBERT SAUNDERSON.

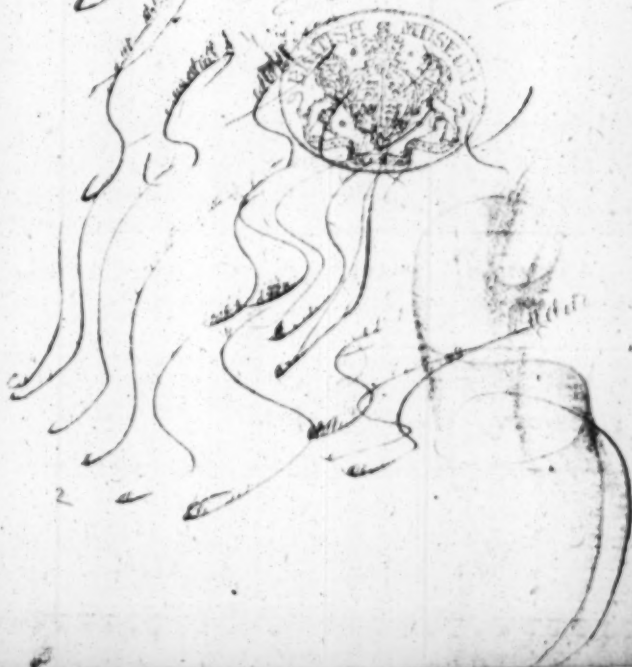
Ita testor Edwardus Sylvester.





Charles Smith

1683



Lily (M) the 9. American
THE
LATINE GRAMMAR
FITTED FOR
THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

WHEREIN

The Words of *Lilie's GRAMMAR* are (as much as might be) retained; many errors thereof amended; many needless things left out: many necessaries that were wanting, supplied; and all things ordered in a Method more agreeable to Childrens capacity

By *Charles Hoole*. Mr. of Arts of Lincoln-Colledge in Oxford, sometimes School-master of *Rotheram* in York-shire.

And (that nothing might be wanting to the purpose) The English Translation is set down on the contrary page for the benefit of Young-learners.

The fifth Edition more exactly Corrected than the former Impressions.

FRANC. PATRI.
Grammar is the Foundation of all Discipline.

LONDON,
Printed for Francis Smith at the Castle and Elephant
without Temple-Bar. 1669.

G. Whiston

GRAMMATICA LATINA
IN
USUM SCHOLARUM
ADORNATA.

Grammatices Liliæ verbis (quantum fieri licuit) retentis ; multis ejus erroribus emendatis ; minus-necessariis amputatis ; pluribus, quæ deficerent, suppletis ; & omnibus Methodo faciliori ad tenellæ ætatis captum conformata dispositis.

Opera & Studio CAROLI HOOLE A. M.
è C. L. Oxon. Scholaræ olim *Rotherhamensis* in agro Ebor.

Adjecta est insuper (nè quid huic instituto desit)
in juventutis gratiam, in adversâ paginâ, Anglicana interpretatio.

Editio quinta prioribus emendatior.

FRANC. PATRÎ.
Grammatica est omnium Discipularum Fundamentum.

LONDINI,
Excudebat pro Francis Smith, ad Castellam &
Elephantum extra Temple-Bar. 1669.



To the Lovers and Professors of
GRAMMAR - LEARNING:

Especially, the *School-Masters* of his acquaintance, either in
City or Country.

Gentlemen,

I Have lately published some Helps towards
grounding little ones in the Latine-tongue:
and finding them (by my own and others pra-
ctice) to become successful; I more willingly go
on to prosecute my begun design: viz. to con-
trive (at vacant times) such necessary Subsidi-
aries for every Classis in a Grammar-
School, as may much facilitate the good
(though with some tedious) old way of teach-
ing by Grammar, Authors, and Exercises.

And because our greatest cumber hitherto
hath been Grammar, I have first begun with
it, and endeavoured to bring the Rules of that
Art to the reach of Childrens apprehensions;
that in daily reading, writing, and speaking
Latine, they may clearly see, and at once un-
derstand the Reason of what they do.

What I have done herein I most humbly
submit to your candid judgements, and if in
your Opinions, I but seem to effect any thing,
that may make our School-labour less trou-
blesom, I have what I desire, and therefore
rest,

Your truly devoted Friend,
and humble servant,
CHARLES HOOLE.



To the Lovers and Professors of
GRAMMAR - LEARNING:

Especially, the *School-Masters* of his acquaintance, either in
City or Country.

Gentlemen,

I Have lately published some Helps towards
grounding little ones in the Latine-tongue:
and finding them (by my own and others pra-
ctice) to become successful; I more willingly go
on to prosecute my begun design: viz. to con-
trive (at vacant times) such necessary Subsidi-
aries for every Classis in a Grammar-
School, as may much facilitate the good
(though with some tedious) old way of teach-
ing by Grammar, Authors, and Exercises.

And because our greatest number hitherto
hath been Grammar, I have first begun with
it, and endeavoured to bring the Rules of that
Art to the reach of Childrens apprehensions;
that in daily reading, writing, and speaking
Latine, they may clearly see, and at once un-
derstand the Reason of what they do.

What I have done herein I most humbly
submit to your candid judgements, and if in
your Opinions, I but seem to effect any thing,
that may make our School-labour less trou-
blesom, I have what I desire, and therefore
rest,

Your truly devoted Friend,
and humble servant,
CHARLES HOOLE.

VHereas it hath been generally desired, that a readier way might be devised for the bringing on of children with more speed and delight; to the attainment of the *Latine tongue*, than that of the *Common-Grammar*: Whereupon sundry learned men, & those well exercised in the *Art of Teaching*, have bestowed much pains to remedy such defects, and remove such inconveniencies as they had observed in the foresaid *Grammar*. And whereas *Mr. Tho. Hayne*, late *School-master of Christ Church-Hospital, London*, and *Mr. Simon Humphreys*, now *School-master of Stamford*, have for divers years past, well-experienced, and under their hands attested, the Abilities of this Author, *Mr. Charles Hool, Mr. of Arts of Linc. Col. in Oxon.* for a *Work of this Nature*; whereby he was encouraged to frame a *Latine-Grammar*, which might be more fit for the *Publicque use*. We whose names are under written, having diligently perused this *Grammar*, do conceive the same to be very conducing to the end and purpose for which it was designed and intended. It being a *Work* which (in our opinion) hath marvellously well accommodated the *Precepts of Grammar*, to the capacity of the weakest Learner.

John Edwards, *Dr. in Phys. Profes.*
Nat. Philos. Oxon. Late Mr.
of Merch-Sch. London.

Edvardus Sylvester, *School-master in Oxon.*

M. FAB.



HÆC Professo—plus habet in recessu quam in fronte promittit. — Quò minus sunt ferendi, qui hanc Artem ut tenuem ac jejunam cavillantur: qua nisi Oratori futuro fundamenta fideliter jecerit, quicquid superstruxeris, corruet: & qua vel sola omni studiorum genere plus habet operis, quam ostentationis. Ne quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammatices elementa; non quia magnæ sit operæ, consonantes à vocalibus discernere, ipsasque eas in semivocalium numerum, mutarumque parti-ri: sed quia interiora velut sacri hujus aduentibus, apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modò accuere ingenia puerilia, sed exercere altissimam quoque eruditionem, ac scientiam possit.

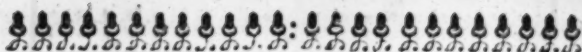
C I C E R O de Oratore lib. 3.

PRæcepta latinè loquendi puerilis doctrina tradit, & subtilior cognitio, ac ratio literarum alit; aut consuetudo sermonis quotidiani ac domestici libri confirmant, & lectio veterum Oratorum & Poëtarum.

Desid. E R A S M U S Roterodamus.

Proclivius est vel in triplici jure Doctoris nomen, quam semel boni Grammatici titulum promeruisse.

GRAM.



THE LATINE GRAMMAR.

Of Grammar, and its Parts.

The Latine
Grammar
containeth
Rules of
right speak-
ing Latine
It hath four
Parts,

Grammar is the Art of Writing and Speaking aright.

With the Latines in Latine.

There bee four	1	Orthographie.	Lib. I.
Parts of Gram-	2	Etymologie.	Lib. II.
mar.	3	Syntaxis.	Lib. III.
	4	Profodia.	Lib. IV.

Grammar hath its name from *letters*, which the Greeks call *Grammata*, and implies as much as *literature*; as if you should call it the *Letter-Art*, or *Skill in letters*; for this Art begins with *letters*, of which *syllables* are made; and of syllables, *words*; and of words, a *speech*; which is either *Prose* or *Verse*.

Orthographie is spent about Letters; *Profodia* about Syllables; *Etymologie* about Words; and *Syntaxis* about a Speech. The natural order therefore requires, that *Profodia* should be ranked in the second place; But we, following the method of the Common-Grammar (because indeed the quantity of Syllables, cannot so well be perceived before Words be understood) thought good to set *Profodia* in the last place.

Lib. I. Of Orthographie.

1 *Orthographie*, which

Ortographie is the first part of Grammar, which teacheth with what letters any word is to be spelled; as, *lectio* not *lexio*.

treateth.

	Of Letters.	Chap. 1.
Orthographie	Of Syllables.	Chap. 2.
treateth	Of Right utterance.	Chap. 3.
	Of Points of Sentences.	Chap. 4.

GRAMMATICA LATINA.

De Grammaticâ, & ejus partibus.

Grammatica est rectè Scribendi atque Lo-
quendi Ars.
Latinis Latinè.

Grammaticæ qua- tuor sunt partes.	{	1 <i>Orthographia.</i>	Lib. I.	Grammatica Latina rectè loquendi La- tinè præcep- ta continet. Ejus qua- tuor sunt partes
		2 <i>Etymologia.</i>	Lib. II.	
		3 <i>Syntaxis.</i>	Lib. III.	
		4 <i>Prosodia.</i>	Lib. IV.	

Nomen *Grammaticæ* impositum est à *literis*, quas *Grammata* Græci vocant, sonâtque idem quid *litera-
tura*, quasi *Artem Literariam* dicas : *literæ* enim sunt
prima hujus Artis initia, ex quibus fiunt *syllabæ* ; ex
syllabis, *dielliones* ; & è dictionibus, *oratio* ; quæ *soluta*
vel *ligata* est.

Orthographia versatur in *Literis*, *Prosodia* in *Syl-
labis*, *Etymologia* in dictionibus, & *Syntaxis* in *Ora-
tione*. Ordo igitur naturalis postulat, ut *Prosodia* in
secundo loco collocetur. Nobis autem methodum
Vulgaris Grammatices observantibus (quippe, *Sylla-
barum* quantitas ante *Vocum* intelligentiam non tam
facile percipi queat) ultimum *Prosodia* locum assign-
nare, visum est.

Lib. I. De Orthographia.

Oρθογραφία est prima pars Grammatices, quâ
docemur quibus quæque dictio sit formanda li-
teris ; ut *lectio non lexio*.

<i>Orthographia</i> autem agit	{	<i>De Literis.</i>	Cap. 1.
		<i>De Syllabis.</i>	Cap. 2. agia
		<i>De Orthoëpia.</i>	Cap. 3.
		<i>De Sententiarum punctis.</i>	Cap. 4. Cap.

Chap. I. Of Letters.

Of Letters

which are

A Letter is the least part of a word.
There be 23 Latine Letters, A B C D E F
G H I K L M N O P Q R S T U X Y Z.

Which are all contained in this verse.

Gaza frequens Lybicos duxit Karthago triumphos.

Three things } 1 The Name, whereby it is called.
belong to e- } 2 The Figure or Character whereby
very Letter. } it is known, or noted.
3 The Force, or power, whereby it
is pronounced or uttered.

Letters are distinguished, } *Vowels*,
according to their } and
sound into } *Consonants*.

Vowels

A *Vowel* is a letter which soundeth by it self, and
they be five, *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y* the Greek one : of
which being diversely placed, or made as many Diph-
thongs, *æ, au, ei, eu, œ*, and *y*, as *Harpyia*.

and

A *Consonant* is a letter which soundeth not, except
it be joyned with a vowel, as *B, C, D, &c.* Likewise
J and *V* become consonants, when they are set be-
fore themselves; or other vowels in the same syllable,
as *Juno, Jovis, Voluntas, Vultus*.

Consonants

Of Con-

sonants

Some are

1 *Mutes*, which have no sound of them-
selves, and they are nine, *b, c, d, f, g, k, p,*
q, t, in which the sound of the vowel fol-
lows after.

For *f* answereth to *phi* the Greek letter,
and *q* to make it sound takes *u* to it.

2 *Semivowels*, which have some sound of
themselves, and they are seven, *l, m, n, r, s,*
x, z, in which the sound of the vowel go-
eth before.

Semi-

Cap. I. De Literis.

Litera est minima pars dictionis.
 Literæ Latinæ sunt Viginti tres, A B C D E
 F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T U X Y Z.

I De literis

Quæ omnes in hoc versiculo continentur.
Gaza sequens Lybicos duxit Karthago triumphos.

Tria accidunt {
 unicuique {
 literæ {
 1 *Nomen*, quo appellatur.
 2 *Figura*, quâ notatur.
 3 *Potestas*, quâ pronunciatur.

Distinguuntur Lite-
 ræ secundum so-
 num in {
Vocales,
 &
Consonantes.

quæ sunt

Vocalis est litera quæ per se sonat ; & sunt quin-
 que, *a, e, i, o, u*, & *y* Græcæ : ex quibus variè disposi-
 tis totid. in fiunt Diphthongi, *æ, au, ei, eu, æ*, & *y*, ut
Harpyia.

&

Consonans est litera, quæ non, nisi cum vocali jun-
 cta, sonat, ut, *B, C, D, &c.* Iterum & *V.* consonan-
 tes fiunt, cum vel sibi, vel aliis vocalibus in eadem
 syllabâ præponantur ; ut, *Juno, Jovis, Voluntas, Vul-*
tus.

{
 1 *Mutæ*, quæ sonum nullum à seipsis
 habent, & sunt novem, *b, c, d, f, g, h, p,*
q, t, in quibus sonus vocalis sequitur.

Co. sonan-
 tium alia
 sunt

{
 Nam *f* respondet *o* Græcorum, & *q*
 ut sonet semper sibi adfiscit *u*.

Consonantes

{
 2 *Semivocales*, quæ aliquid soni à seip-
 sis habent ; & sunt septem. *l, m, n, r, s, x,*
 & in quibus sonus vocalis præcedit.

Semi-

Semi-vowels are some of them { Liquids, which do melt, or lose their force after a Mute in the same syllable; as, *l, m, n, r*.
 { Double Consonants, which have the force of two letters, as, *x, z*, and *j* between two vowels in single words. For in the word *jejunium*, the first *j* seems to be a single consonant, the second a double consonant, and the third a vowel.

S is neither a Liquid nor a Mute, but a letter of its own power or pronunciation; which some therefore call *Monadicon*, or a letter, of whose sort there is but that one.

H is not properly a letter, but a note of aspiration; as in *pulcher, homo, biatus*; which before *ie* in Hebrew words is seldom pronounced, for we say *Hjeremias, Hjerosolyma*, as though they begun with *J* consonant; but Greek words are pronounced as if they begun with *I* vowel; as, *Hierarchia*.

Great and Small.	Letters according to their shape are	{	Great	{	which are written with	{	Great characters; as,
			or				Small

- Great letters are written in the beginning of
- 1 Sentences; as, *Deum time*, Fear God. *Regem honora*, Honour the King.
 - 2 Proper names, as, *Carolus* Charles, *Londinum* London, *Thamisis* the Thames.
 - 3 The more eminent words in a sentence; as, *Religionis Christianae fundamentum est Fides*. Faith is the Foundation of Christian Religion.
 - 4 Every verse in a Poëm; as, *utendum est aetate; cito pede praeterit aetas, Nec bona tam sequitur, quam bona prima fuit.*
 Improve the time; time passeth quickly on,
 Nor doth so good succeed, as that that's gone.

Small

Semi-vocalium alix sunt

Liquide, quæ post Muram in eâdem syllaba liqueſcunt, ſive vim ſuam amittunt; ut, *l, m, n, r*.

Duplices, quæ duarum literarum vim habent; ut, *x, z, & j* inter duas vocales in vocibus ſimplicibus. Nam in *jejunium*, primam *j* videtur eſſe conſona ſimplex, ſecundum duplex, & tertiam vocale.

S nec Liquida eſt, nec Mura, ſed ſux poteſtatis, (ſive pronounciationis) litera; quam idcirco nonnulli *Monadicon* appellârunt.

H propriè quidem non eſt litera, ſed aspirationis nota; ut, *pulcher, homo, biatus*; ſed ante *ie* in Hebræicis diſtionibus raro pronounciatur; dicere enim ſolemus *Hjeremias, Hjerofolyma*, quaſi ab *j* conſona inciperent; ſed Græcæ voces pronounciatur tanquam inciperent ab *I* vocali, ut *Hierarchya*.

Literæ quoad formam ſuam ſunt;

Majusculæ, quæ Majuſculis characteribus ſcribuntur, ut, *A, B, C*. &

Minusculæ, quæ minuſculis characteribus ſcribuntur, ut, *a, b, c*.

Majuſculis inchoantur

- 1 Sententiæ; ut, *Deum time. Regem honora.*
- 2 Propria nomina; ut, *Carolus, Londinum, Thamiſis.*
- 3 Diſtiones quælibet in oratione notari digniores; ut, *Religionis Chriſtiane fundamentum eſt Fides.*
- 4 In Carminibus verſus ſinguli; ut, *utendum eſt ætate; cito pede præterit ætas; Nec bona tam ſequitur, quàm bona prima fuit.*

The Latine Grammar.

Small letters are commonly written in all other places, whereof those are chiefly to be minded which have a double character as *i u* and *s*; for *i* and *u* be vowels, but *j* and *v* be consonants, which some call *ja* and *va*. Likewise long *s* is alwayes written in the beginning or middle of a word, but short *s* in the end of it, as *scripsimus*.

which stand
for

A word,

or

Number.

When
great
letters
be set
alone,
or but
a few
together;
they
do signify
or
stand
sometimes
for

whole words; as, *M. T. C.* Mark Tully Cicero.
S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicit, sendeth much greeting. *A. M.* Anno mundi. In the year of the world. *A. D.* Anno Domini, In the year of our Lord. *R. P.* Respublica, the Common-wealth. *P. C.* Patres Conscripti, the Senators. *HS* or *LLS*, *Dua libra & semis*, two pound and a half (the note of a Silver coin worth 1 d. ob. $\frac{1}{2}$ q) *N. B.* nota bene, mark well.
A number; as, *I* one, *V* five, *X* ten, *L* fifty, *C* an hundred, ∞ or *CC* two hundred, *D* or *D* five hundred, ∞ or *CL* or *M* a thousand, *I* ∞ five thousand, *CC* ∞ ten thousand, *I* ∞ ∞ fifty thousand, *CCC* ∞ an hundred thousand, *I* ∞ ∞ ∞ five hundred thousand, *CCCC* ∞ ∞ ∞ ten hundred thousand or a Million.

The lesser number set before takes away so much as it self is from the greater; but being set after it adds so much to it; as, *IV* makes four, but *VI* six, *IX* nine, but *XI* eleven.

A cross line made over a numeral letter implieth it to signify so many thousands, as otherwise it would contain lesser sums; as, \overline{III} three thousand, \overline{X} ten thousand, and so of the rest.

Chap. 2. Of Syllables.

OF Syllables,

A Syllable, is a taking letters together, and uttering them with one breath; as, *vir tus*.

And

In reliquis locis maximā ex parte Minusculæ scribuntur, è quibus istæ sunt præcipuè notandæ, quæ duplicem obtinent characterem, ut *i u & s*; nam *i & u* vocales sunt; *j* verò & *v* sunt consonæ, quas aliqui *ja* & *va* nominarunt, *s* longum semper in principio, vel medio dictionis pingitur, sed *s* breve in fine; ut scripsimus.

[Integra vocabula; ut, *M. T. C. Marcus* Quæ signifi-

Tullius Cicero, S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicit, A. M. Anno mundi, A. cant Vocabulum.

D. Anno Domini, R. P. Respublica.

P. C. Patres Conscripti, HS. aut

LLS. Due libra & semis (nota

nummi sesterii valentis asses du-

os cum semisse) N. B. Nota bene.

Numerum; ut, *I unum, V quinque, X*

decem, L quinquaginta, C centum,

CC vel CC ducenti, LXX vel D quin-

genti, M vel M mille,

IIIIIIII quinque millia, CCIIIIIIII de-

cem millia, LXXXXIIIIIIII quinquaginta

millia, CCCIIIIIIIIII centena mil-

lia, LXXXXIIIIIIIIII quingenta millia,

CCCCIIIIIIIIIIII decies centena

millia.

Literæ majusculæ cum solæ aut paucæ scribuntur, significant aliquandò.

Numerum; ut, *I unum, V quinque, X decem, L quinquaginta, C centum,*

CC vel CC ducenti, LXX vel D quin-

genti, M vel M mille,

IIIIIIII quinque millia, CCIIIIIIII de-

cem millia, LXXXXIIIIIIII quinquaginta

millia, CCCIIIIIIIIII centena mil-

lia, LXXXXIIIIIIIIII quingenta millia,

CCCCIIIIIIIIIIII decies centena

millia.

Minor numerus præpositus, tantundem demit majori sequenti; postpositus verò tantundem addit: ut, *IV* valet quatuor, *VI* verò sex, *IX* valet novem, at *XI* undecim.

Linea transversa notis numericis superposita, eadem tot millia continere innuit, quot aliqui minores numeros continebant, ut *III* tria millia, *X* decem millia, & sic de cæteris.

Chap. 2. De syllabis.

Syllaba est comprehensio literarum uno spiritu prolata; ut, *vir-tus.* De syllabis.

B

Estque

and

And it is

Improper, which consisteth of one only vowel or diphthong; as, *A-a-cus*.

Proper, which consisteth of one or more consonants taken together with a vowel or diphthong; as, *Cæ-le-stis*.

Of parting
and putting
them toge-
ther.

He that would write rightly, must learn as he writes, *to part syllables, and put them together.*

Note therefore that

1. A Syllable in Latine doth not exceed the number of six letters; as, *Stirps, Scorbs*.
2. In words of many syllables a consonant set between two vowels belongs to the latter; as, *Do-mi-nus*.
3. If a consonant be doubled, the first belongs to the foregoing, and the latter to the following syllable; as, *An-nus*.
4. Consonants which cannot be joyned in the beginning of a word, must be parted in the middle of it; as, *Sul-cus*.
5. Consonants which can be joyned in the beginning of a word, must not be parted in the middle, as, *no-ster*.

6. In simple words these letters alway belong to the following vowel, viz.	<div>[</div> bd <div>]</div> <div>[</div> cn <div>]</div> <div>[</div> ct <div>]</div> <div>[</div> ga <div>]</div> <div>[</div> mn <div>]</div> <div>[</div> phth <div>]</div> <div>[</div> ps <div>]</div> <div>[</div> pt <div>]</div> <div>[</div> sb <div>]</div> <div>[</div> sc <div>]</div> <div>[</div> sm <div>]</div> <div>[</div> sp <div>]</div> <div>[</div> sq <div>]</div> <div>[</div> st <div>]</div> <div>[</div> tl <div>]</div> <div>[</div> tm <div>]</div> <div>[</div> tn <div>]</div>	} as {	<div>[</div> He-bdomas <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Te-chna <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Do-ctus <div>]</div> <div>[</div> A-gnus <div>]</div> <div>[</div> A-mnis <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Na-phtha <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Seri-psi <div>]</div> <div>[</div> A-pius <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Le-gbia <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Pi-scis <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Co-smus <div>]</div> <div>[</div> A-sper <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Te-squa <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Pa-flor <div>]</div> <div>[</div> A-tlas <div>]</div> <div>[</div> La-tmius <div>]</div> <div>[</div> A-tha <div>]</div>	} because we say {	<div>[</div> Bdellium <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Cncus <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Cresipho <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Gnatus <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Macrosyne <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Phibisis <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Psittacus <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Ptolomæus <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Sbeçis <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Scammum <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Smaragdus <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Spero <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Squalor <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Sterto <div>]</div> <div>[</div> teleptolemus <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Tmolus <div>]</div> <div>[</div> Thnesko <div>]</div>

Grammatica Latina.

II

Estque { *Impropria*, quæ constant ex solâ vocali vel diphthongo; ut, *A-a-cus*.
{ *Propria*, quæ constant ex consonante unâ vel pluribus, cum vocali vel diphthongo comprehensis; ut, *Cir-le-sis*.

&c

Rectè scripturo discendum est syllabas, inter scribendum, aptè distinguere, atque consecretere.

earundem
distinctione
vel

Notandum igitur quod

1. Syllaba apud Latinos numerum senarium literarum non excedit; ut, *Stirps, Scorbs*.
2. In Polysyllabis consonans inter duas vocales posita ad posteriorem pertinet; ut, *Do-mi-nus*.
3. Si consonans geminetur, prior ad præcedentem, posterior ad sequentem syllabam pertinet; ut, *An-nus*.
4. Consonæ, quæ in initio vocis conjungi non possunt, in medio sunt distinguendæ; ut, *Sul-cus*.
5. Consonæ quæ in initio vocis conjungi possunt, in medio non sunt distinguendæ; ut, *No-ster*.

	[bd]		[He-bdomas]		[Bdelium.]
	[cn]		[Te-chna]		[Cneus.]
	[et]		[Do-ctus]		[Crespho.]
6. In	[gn]		[A-gnus]		[Gratus.]
simplici-	[mn]		[A-mnis]		[Mnemosyne]
cibus	[pthb]		[Na-phtha]		[Pthbfs.]
voci-	[pf]		[Scri-psit]		[Psittacus.]
bushæ	[pt]		[A-ptus]		[Ptolomæus]
literæ	[sb]	ut	[Le-sbia]	quia dicitur	[Sbcfs.]
vocali	[sc]		[Pi-scis]		[Scamnum.]
se-	[sm]		[Co-smus]		[Smaragdus]
quenti	[sp]		[A-sper]		[Spero.]
sem-	[sq]		[Te-squa]		[Squalor.]
per ad-	[st]		[Pa-stor]		[Sterto.]
hæ-	[tl]		[A-tilas]		[Tl:ptolemus]
rent,	[tm]		[La-tmius]		[Tmolus.]
v. r.	[tn]		[A-tua]		[Thnesko.]

B 2

7. In

7. In words compounded every part must be separated from another; as, *Abf-con-do*.
8. In words compounded with a preposition, we must respect the ear and good sound; as, *Aufero*, not *Absfero*; and *Abstuli*, not *Autuli*: and therefore it is that consonants are often times put in: as *Redamo*, for *Reamo*; *Ambigo* for *Amigo*.
9. *S* is rightly written after *X* in compound words, whose simples begin with *s*; as *Exscribo*, of *ex* and *scribo*, *exsul* of *ex* and *solum*: but not in others, as, *Exoro* of *Ex* and *oro*, *Exigo* of *Ex* and *ago*.
10. *Ti* before a vowel is pronounced like *fi*; as, *Oratio*. Except,
1. In the beginning of a word, as, *Tiara*.
2. When *s* goeth immediately before it; as, *Questio*.
3. In poetical Infinitive Moods; as, *mitti*, for *mitti*.
4. In words borrowed from other languages; as *Politia*.

Chap. 3. Of Right Utterance.

3. Of Right Uttering and amending the faults in Pronouncing.

O *Rthoëpie*, or Right Utterance, is the manner of right speaking out; as, *Homo*, not *omo*.

Boyes must neither over-hasten their speech, nor pause between every word, but must be made to avoid the usual faults in pronouncing; such as are,

1. *Traulism*, when one stutthereth or stammereth; as *Cacacanit*, for *canit*, which fault may be amended by quickly pattering over some ribble rabble made hard to pronounce on purpose; as,

Arcytrideus, yoftrix, sphinx, præster, torrida, seps, striz,

2. *Pla*

7. In compositis quæque pars ab alterâ separanda est; ut, *Abs-con-do*.
8. In compositis cum præpositione auribus & *Eupho-niæ* serviendum est; ut, *Aufero* non *Absfero*, & *ab-stuli* non *autuli* : ideòque Consonantes non raro interferuntur; ut, *Redamo* pro *Reamo*, *Ambigo* pro *Amigo*.
9. Post *X* in compositis, quorum simplicia incipiunt ab *S* rectissimè scribitur *s*; ut, *Ex-scribo*, ab *ex* & *scribo*; *ex-sul*, ab *ex* & *solum*, sed non in aliis; ut *exoro* ab *ex* & *oro*; *exigo*, ab *ex* & *ago*.
10. *Ti* ante vocalem liquescit *si*; ut, *Oratio*.
Nisi,
1. In initio dictionis; ut, *Tiara*.
2. Quando *s* præcedit; ut, *Quæstio*.
3. In poëticis infinitivis; ut, *mittit*.
4. In dictionibus mutuatis; ut, *Politia*.

Cap. 3. De Orthoëpia.

O Orthoëpia est rectè Enunciandi ratio; ut, *Homo* non *Omo*.
 Pueri nec sermonem præcipitent, nec ad singulas, quasque voces consulescant. Deterrendi sunt autem à vitiis sermonis vulgò propriis, cujusmodi sunt.

1. *Traulismus*, qui est hæsitantia vel titubantia oris; ut, *Cacacanit* pro *Canit*. Cui vitio facilè succurritur, si centones quosdam affectatæ difficultatis, quàm citissimè volvant; ut,

Axx, tri dens, rostris, spbinx, præter, torrida, seps, strix.

B 3

2. Pla-

3. De Orthoëpia, & vitiis sermonis emendandis.

2. *Platasm*, when one speaketh too broadly; as, *Argo* for *Ergo*. *Mountes* for *Montes*. *Taibai* for *Tibi*.

3. *Ischnotes*, when one speaketh too mincingly; as, *Nyac* for *nunc*. *Elquis* for *Aliquis*. Or too lispingly; as, *Aputh* for *Apud*. *Amath* for *Amat*.

Chap. 4. Of Points in Sentences.

4. Of points in sentences.

A Point or Pause is a note of distinction, signifying the space of breathing, or how long one may stay his breath. There be eight of these especially to be noted.

1. Comma,

1. A *Comma* is an half circle, which stayeth a sentence a litle, by distinguishing its shorter parts; as, *Grammaticus, rhetor, geometres, pictor, aliptes, Græculus esuriens, in Cælum, jusseris, ibit.*

2. Colon;

2. A *Colon* is two pricks, which suspends a sentence somewhat long, by dividing it in the midst; as, *utendum est atate: cito pede præterit atas.*

3. Semi-colon;

3. A *Semicolon* is a prick with a *Comma* under it, staying a sentence longer than a *Comma*, and not so long as a *Colon*; as, *Tu, quid divitiæ possunt, consideras, quid virtus, non item.*

4. Period.

4. A *Period* is a full prick after a perfect sentence, as, *Deum time. Regem honora.*

5. Parenthesis ()

5. A *Parenthesis* is two half Moons including a sentence, which, though it be taken away, the speech nevertheless will be whole; as,

Princeps (quia bella minantur Hostes,) militibus urbes premunit & armis.

6. Interrogation ?

6. An *Interrogation* marks a question with two pricks, whereof the higher hath a tail upward: as, *Quomodo valet?*

7. Exclamation !

7. An *Exclamation* is marked with two pricks, whereof the upper is a line coming down upon a point as, *O tempus! O viri es!*

8. Hyphen

2. *Plateasmus*, est iusto crassior pronuntiatio : ut, *Argo* pro *Ergo*. *Montes* pro *Montes*. *Taihai* pro *Tibi*.

3. *Ischæotes*, est iusto exilior pronuntiatio; ut, *Nunc* pro *Nunc*. *Aliquis* pro *Aliquis*. Aut blæsius, ut, *Apud* pro *Apud*. *Amat* pro *Amat*.

Cap. 4. De Sententiarum Punctis.

Punctum sive Pausa est nota distinctionis, respirandi intervallum significans. Horum octo sunt præcipue notanda.

1. *Comma* est semi-circulus, sententiam sustinens, breviores ejus clausulas distinguendo : ut, 4. De Sententiarum Punctis, quæ sunt, 1. Comma,

Grammaticus, rhetor, geometres, pictor, atpiter, Græculus esuriens, in Cælum, jussus, ibit.

2. *Colon* sunt duo puncta, quæ sententiam diutius suspendunt, medias ejus partes dirimendo : ut, 2. Colon :

utendum est ætate : cito pede præterit ætas.

3. *Semicolon* est punctum cum Commata subiecto, sententiam diutius paulò sustinens quam Comma : colon ; 3. Semicolon ; minùs diu verò quàm Colon : ut, *Tu, quid divitiæ possint, consideras; quid virtus, non item.*

4. *Periodus* est punctum plenum post perfectam sententiam ; ut, *Deum time. Regem honora.* 4. Periodus :

5. *Parentesis* sunt duæ semilunulæ sententiam includens, quæ remotâ sermo tamen manet integer : thesis () ut, 5. Parenthesis :

Principes (quia bella minantur

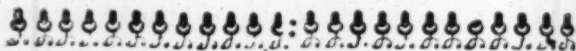
Hostes) militibus urbes præmunit, & armis.

6. *Interrogatio* signat questionem duobus punctis, quorum superius est caudatum ; ut, *Quomodo va-* 6. Interrogatio : les ?

7. *Exclamatio* item notatur duobus punctis, quorum superius est lincola in punctum descendens ; ut, 7. Exclamatio : *O tempora ! O mores !*

§. Hyphen.

8. *Hyphen* is a little stroke interposed in a word divided at the end of a line; as, *Humanissimè*: or, in words that are united, but not compounded; as, *Res-publica*, a Common-wealth.



BOOK. II.

Of Etymologia.

Etymologic

ETYMOLOGIE is the second part of Grammar, which teacheth how to know the difference of words, duly considering the properties or things belonging to every one of them.

teacheth

Now, a word is a dart or piece of a Speech, which itself doth signifie something, but cannot be divided into parts that signifie: as, *Pi-e-tas*, Godliness.

Chap. I.

Of the eight Parts of Speech, and their general Accidents.

Of the eight
Parts of
Speech;
which are

THere bee
eight sorts
of words:

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------|
| 1. A Noun. | Chap. 2. |
| 2. A Pronoun. | Chap. 23. |
| 3. A Verb. | Chap. 24. |
| 4. A Participle. | Chap. 39. |
| 5. An Adverb. | Chap. 40. |
| 6. A Conjunction. | Chap. 41. |
| 7. A Preposition. | Chap. 42. |
| 8. An Interjection. | Chap. 43. |

And

8. Hyphen est lineola interposita voci 8. Hyphen.
 disiectæ in fine lineæ, ut, *Humanis-*
sime : aut in vocibus unitis, sed non compositis;
 ut *Res-publica*.

LIB. II.

De Etymologia.

ETYMOLOGIA est secunda pars Gram- Etymologia
 maticæ, quæ docet dictionum discrimina,
 singularum proprietates, sive Accidentia
 diligentèr expendens.

Est autem dictio sive vox, pars ora- agit
 tionis, quæ ipsa aliquid significat, sed in partes signi-
 ficantes dividi non potest : ut, *Pi-e-tas*.

Cap. 1.

De octo Partibus Orationis, & earum
 Accidentibus generalibus.

Octo sunt vocum genera :
 1. *Nomen*.
 2. *Pronomen*.
 3. *Verbum*.
 4. *Participium*.
 5. *Adverbium*.
 6. *Conjunctio*.
 7. *Præpositio*.
 8. *Interjectio*.

Cap. 2.

Cap. 23. De octo
 Partibus
 Cap. 24. Orationis;
 Cap. 39. quæ sunt

Cap. 40.

Cap. 41.

Cap. 42.

Cap. 43.

Atque

And these be commonly called *Parts of Speech*, because of them every speech is made; though they are seldom all to be found in one Speech

Declined or The Undeclined, four	} <i>first</i> } of these } are } <i>latter</i>	}	Declined, which change their
			endings.
			Undeclined, which change
			not their endings.

There belongs to every Part of Speech

1 Species, or Kinde,	} according to which a word is	}	Primitive, which is not derived of
			any other word; as, <i>Arbor</i> , <i>Amo</i> .
			Derivative, which is derived from
			another word; as, <i>Arbustum</i> <i>Amicus</i> .
2 Figure, or Form,	}	}	Simple, or single; which is not com-
			pounded with another; as, <i>Ami-</i> <i>cus</i> , <i>Amo</i> .
			Compound, or mixt; which is made
			of two or more words; as, <i>Inimi-</i> <i>cus</i> , <i>Redamo</i> .

There belong to words Declined

To which
belong,

1. *Analogie*, when a word agrees with a Common Rule; as, *Musa*, *Amo*.
2. *Anomalie*, when a word swerves from the Common Rule; as, *Filia*, *Fero*.

Two
Numbers,
Singular,
and Plural.
Three
Persons,
The first,
The second,
The third,

3. Two Numbers } whereof

}	The Singular speaketh but of one;
	as, <i>Lapis</i> a Stone.
}	The Plural of more than one; as,
	<i>Lapides</i> Stones.
4. Three Persons }

}	The first speaketh of himself; as, <i>Ego nu-</i> <i>gans puer ludo</i> . I trifling boy do play.
	The second is spoken to; as, <i>Tu nugans</i> <i>puer ludis</i> . Thou trifling boy playest.
	The third is spoken of; as, <i>Ille nugans puer</i> <i>ludit</i> . He trifling boy playeth.

Ego and *Nos* be alwayes of the First Person.
Tu and *vos*, and every Vocative case of the Second.

All

Atque he vulgò vocantur *Partes Orationis*, quò lex
 scilicet omnis oratio conficiatur : ctsi omnes in una
 oratione rarò admodum occurrant.

<p><i>Priores</i></p> <p><i>Præteritum</i> <i>Imperfectum</i></p> <p><i>Posteriores</i></p>	<p><i>sunt</i></p>	<p><i>Declinabiles</i>, sive variabi- les, quæ in <i>sine</i> possunt variari.</p> <p><i>Indeclinabiles</i>, sive inva- riabiles, quæ in <i>sine</i> non possunt variari.</p>	<p><i>Declina- biles.</i></p> <p><i>Indeclina- biles.</i></p>
---	--------------------	---	---

Accidunt cuique Parti Orationis.

<p>1. <i>Species</i>,</p> <p><i>secundum</i> <i>quam</i> <i>vox</i> <i>dicitur</i></p>	<p><i>Primitiva</i>, quæ aliunde non tra- hitur; ut, <i>Arbor</i>, <i>Amo</i>.</p> <p><i>Derivativa</i>, quæ aliundè forma- tur, ut, <i>Arbustum</i>, <i>Amicus</i>.</p> <p><i>Simplex</i>, quæ cum alia non com- ponitur; ut, <i>Amicus</i>, <i>Amo</i>.</p> <p><i>Composita</i>, quæ à duabus vel plu- ribus fit; ut, <i>Inimicus</i>, <i>Redamo</i>.</p>
--	---

Accidunt vocibus Declinabilibus

1. *Analogia*, cum dictio convenit Communi Regulæ ; Quibus
 ut, *Musa*, *Amo*. accidunt.

2. *Anomalia*, cum dictio recedit à Communi Regulâ ;
 ut, *Filia*, *Fero*.

<p>3. <i>Numeri</i></p> <p><i>Singularis</i></p> <p><i>duo</i>, <i>quorum</i></p> <p><i>Pluralis</i></p>	<p><i>loquitur</i></p> <p>de uno; ut, <i>Lapis</i>,</p> <p>de pluribus ; ut, <i>Lapides</i>.</p> <p><i>Prima</i>, quæ loquitur de se ; ut, <i>Ego</i> <i>nugans puer ludo</i>.</p>	<p><i>Numeri</i> <i>duo</i>, <i>Singularis</i>, <i>& Pluralis</i>, <i>Personæ</i> <i>tres</i>, <i>Prima</i>.</p>
--	---	--

4. *Persona* *tres*,
Secunda, ad quam loquimur ; ut, *Tu*
nugans puer ludis.

Tertia, de quâ loquimur ; ut, *Ille nu- Tertia*
gans puer ludit.

Ego & nos sunt semper Primæ Personæ.

Tu & Vos, & omnes Vocativi Secundæ.

Cætera

All other Nouns, Pronouns, and Participles be of the Third, unless *Ego* or *Nos*, *Tu* or *Vos* be exprest or understood.

Chap. 2.

Of a Noun, and its proper Accidents.

A Noun
nameth a
thing,
and is
Substant.

or

Adjective.

A Noun is a part of Speech which nameth a thing without any difference of Time or Person; as, *Manus* a Hand, *Domus* a House.

And it is either } *Substantive*, which may stand by it self in a Speech, and requireth nothing to be added to declare its signification; as, *Homo* a Man.

} *Adjective*, which stands in need of a Substantive to declare its signification; as, *Bonus* good.

A Substantive sheweth what a thing is; as, *Equus* a Horse.

An Adjective sheweth what alike the thing is; as, *Albus* White

Proper,

or

Common.

Both
wh. ch
are

} *Proper*, which is spoken of some one thing only; as, *Carolus* Charles, *Londinum* London, *Thamis* the Thames, *Anglus* English, *Scotus* Scotch.

} *Common*, which signifieth a thing common to many; as, *Homo* a Man, *Urbs* a City, *Fluvius* a River, *Regio* a Country, *Magnus* Great.

It hath

There belong to a } *Case*.
Noun, Pronoun, and } *Gender*.
a Participle. } *Declension*.
} *Comparison*.

Chap. 3.

Chap. 4.

Chap. 11.

Chap. 17.

Chap. 3.

ples be of
express or

Cætera Nomina, Pronomina, & Participia sunt
certæ personæ, nisi *Ego* vel *Nos*, *Tu* vel *Vos* expri-
mantur vel subintelligantur.

dents.

h a thing
erson; as,

it self in
ng to be
tion; as,

f a Sub-
tion; as,

, *Equus*

ng is; as,

one thing
ondinium
s, *Anglus*

common
s a City,
Country,

Chap. 3.

Chap. 4.

Chap. 11.

Chap. 17.

Chap. 3.

Cap. 2.

De Nomine, & ejus Accidentibus specialibus.

Nomen est Pars Orationis quæ rem nominat, Nothen rem
sine ulla Temporis aut Personæ differentia; ut, nominat,
Manus, *Domus*.

Estque } *Substantivum*, quod per se in Oratione sub-
sistit, & nihil addi postulat ad suam sig-
nificationem exprimendam; ut, *Homo*.
estque } *Substanti-
vum*.

Estque } *Adjectivum*, quod Substantivo indiget ad
suam significationem exprimendam; ut, *Bonus*.
vel } *Adjectivum*.

Substantivum indicat quid sit rei; ut, *Equus*.

Adjectivum indicat quale sit rei; ut, *Albus*.

Quorum } *Proprium*, quod rem uni individuo propri-
am significat; ut, *Carolus*, *Londinum*,
utrunque } *Thamisis*, *Anglus*, *Scotus*.
est } *Proprium*.

est } *Commune*, sive Appellativum, quod rem
multis communem significat; ut, *Homo*,
arbs, *Fluvius*, *Regio*, *Magnus*.
est } *Commune*.

Accidunt Nomini, } *Casus*.
Pronomini, & } *Genus*.
Participio. } *Declinatio*.
} *Comparatio*.

Cap. 3.

Cap. 4. Ejus sunt

Cap. 11.

Cap. 17.

Cap. 3.

Chap. 3. Of Case.

A Case is the special ending of a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle.

There be *Six Cases* in both numbers.

Six Cases,
The Nominative,

1. The *Nominative Case* is the first word whereby we name any thing, and it goeth before the Verb, and answereth to the question, *who*, or, *what*? as *Magister Docet*, The Master teacheth.

Genitive,

2. The *Genitive case* signifies whose a thing is, and answereth to the question, *whose*, or, *whereof*? as *Doctrina Magistri*, the learning of the Master, or the Master's learning.

Dative,

3. The *Dative* attributes, or gives something to one, and answereth to the question, *to whom*, or *to what*? as, *Do librum Magistro*, I give a Book to the Master.

Accusative,

4. The *Accusative case* follows the Verb, and signifies whereunto the Action of the Verb referreth; and answereth to the question, *whom*, or *what*? as *Amo Magistrum*, I love the Master.

Vocative,

5. The *Vocative case* is used in calling or speaking to; as, *O Magister*, O Master.

Ablative.

6. The *ablative case* is commonly joyned with a Preposition that serveth thereunto; and answereth to the question, *from whom*, or *from what*? and the like; as, *Accipi librum a Magistro*, I received a book from the Master.

The *Nominative case* is sometimes called the *right* or *streight case*, and the rest *oblique* or *'thwart cases*, because their endings swerve from the *Nominative*.

Chap. 4. Of Gender.

Gender is the differencing of Sex in respect of speech.

Cap. 3. De Casu.

Pronouns,

whereby
Verb, and
as Magi-ing is, and
f? as Do-
er, or theg to one,
to what?Master.
and sig-
nifyeth;
what? as

speaking

d with a
answereth
and the
d a bookthe right
or cases,
nitive.

Casus est specialis, Nominis, Pronominis, aut Participii terminatio.

Sunt autem *Sex Casus* in utroque numero.

Sex Casus,

1. *Nominativus* est prima vox, quâ rem aliquam nominamus : præcedit autem Verbum, & respondet questioni *Quis*, aut *Quid*? ut, *Magister docet*.

Nominativus,

2. *Genitivus* significat ejus sit res quæpiam, & respondet questioni *Cujus*? ut, *Doctrina Magistri*.

Genitivus,

3. *Dativus* quid cuiquam attribuit, & respondet questioni *Cui*? ut, *Do librum Magistro*.

Dativus,

4. *Accusativus* sequitur Verbum, utpote in quem actio Verbi immediatè transit, & respondet questioni, *Quem*, vel *Quid*? ut *Amo Magistrum*.

Accusativus,

5. *Vocativus* vocandis compellendisve personis accommodatur; ut, *O Magister*.

Vocativus,

6. *Ablativus* conjungitur ferè præpositioni Ablativo inservienti; & respondet questioni *à quo*; & similibus, ut, *Accepi librum à Magistro*.

Ablativus,

Nominativus aliquando *Rectus Casus* dicitur: ceteri vero *Obliqui*, quod eorum terminationes flectant à Nominativo.

Cap. 4. De Genere.

spect of

For

Genus est Sexus discretio ratione sermonis.

Discernit

For it makes a difference betwixt Nouns that are used as *Hees* or *Shees*, thereby to know the agreement of the Substantive or Adjective.

Seven Gen-
ders.

Genders of Nouns be seven; whereof the three first may not unfily be termed *Simple*, and the four last *Compound* Genders.

They are known by their Articles (or notes) which are borrowed of the Pronoun, and be thus declined.

Singulariter		Male.	Fem.	Neut.	Pluraliter	Male.	Fem.	Neut.
	Nom.	<i>Hic</i>	<i>Hæc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>Hi</i>	<i>Hæ</i>	<i>Hæc</i>
	Gen.	<i>Huius</i>	<i>Huius</i>	<i>Huius</i>		<i>Horum</i>	<i>Harum</i>	<i>Horum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Huius</i>	<i>Huius</i>	<i>Huius</i>		<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>
	Acc.	<i>Hunc</i>	<i>Hanc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>Hos</i>	<i>Has</i>	<i>Hæc</i>
	Voc.							
	Abl.	<i>Hoc</i>	<i>Hæc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>

Masculine. 1. The *Masculine* gender is of Nouns which are given to *Hees*; and is declined with *Hic*; as, *Hic vir*, a man.

Feminine. 2. The *Feminine* gender is of Nouns which are given to *Shees*; and is declined with *Hæc*; as, *Hæc mulier*, a Woman.

Neuter. 3. The *Neuter* is of Nouns which are given to things that are accounted neither *Hees* nor *Shees*; and is declined with *Hoc*; as, *Hoc Saxum*, a Stone.

Common of two. 4. The *Common of two* is made of the Masculine and the Feminine joyned together; and is declined with *Hic* and *Hæc*; as, *Hic & Hæc Parens*, a Parent.

Common of three. 5. The *Common of three* is made of all three simple Genders

Discernit enim inter ea nomina, quæ tanquam
males aut fœminæ construuntur, propter convenien-
tiam Substantivi & Adjectivi cognoscendam.

Genera Nominum sunt septem: quorum tria prima Genera
non ineptè *Simplicia*, quatuor vero postrema *Composi-* Septem.
ta dici queant.

Dignoscuntur autem suis Articulis (sive notis) qui
à Pronominibus accipiuntur, & in hunc modum va-
riantur.

Singulariter		Male	Fœm.	Neut.	Pluraliter	Male.	Fœm.	Neut.
	Nom.	<i>Hic</i>	<i>Hæc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>Hi</i>	<i>Hæ</i>	<i>Hæc</i>
	Gen.	<i>Hicujus</i>	<i>Hæcujus</i>	<i>Hocujus</i>		<i>Horum</i>	<i>Harum</i>	<i>Horum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Hic</i>	<i>Hic</i>	<i>Hic</i>		<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>
	Acc.	<i>Hic</i>	<i>Hæc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>Hos</i>	<i>Hæc</i>	<i>Hæc</i>
	Voc.							
	Abl.	<i>Hic</i>	<i>Hic</i>	<i>Hic</i>		<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>

1. *Masculinum* genis maribus attribuitur; ejus Masculi-
num. nota est *Hic*; ut, *Hic vir*.
2. *Fœmininum* fœminis attribuitur; ejus nota est Fœmini-
num. *Hæc*; ut, *Hæc mulier*.
3. *Neutrum* nec maribus, nec fœminis attribuitur; Neutrum.
ejus nota est *Hoc*; ut, *Hoc saxum*.
4. *Commune duorum* ex Masculino & Fœminino Commune;
componitur; ejus nota est *Hic & Hæc*; ut, *Hic & duorum*.
Hæc Parens.
5. *Commune trium* ex omnibus simplicibus generi- Commune
bus trium.

Genders joyned together, and is declined with *Hic*, *Hac*, and *Hoc*; as, *Hic*, *Hac* & *Hoc* *Felix*, Happy.

Doubtful.

6. The *Doubtful* may be either the Masculine or the Feminine; and is declined with *Hic vel Hac*; as, *Hic vel Hac* *Dies*, a Day.

Epicene.

7. The *Epicene* comprehendeth both Sexes under one Article; as, *Hic passer*, a Sparrow. And in this Gender, to avoid ambiguity, we use to express the Sex by *He*, or *She*; as, *Passer mas* a *He*, or Cock-sparrow: *Passer femina* a *She*, or Hen-sparrow.



Propria quæ Marribus :

OR,

WILLIAM LILIE'S Rules,
OF THE
GENDERS of NOUNS.

Rules of the
Genders of
Nouns are

I. General.

I. Of Sub-
stantives

proper.

I. Proper
names.

I. Of Gods.

2. Of Men.

3. Of Rivers.

4. Of months

5. Of winds

are of the

Masculine

Gender.

Chap. 5.

Of the General Rules of Proper Names

I. **P**roper Names which are given to Males, & Hees, are Masculines: As 1. Of Gods; as, *Bacchus*, *chi*. *Mars*, *tis*. *Apollo*, *inis*. 2. Of Men; as, *Cato*, *onis*. *Virgilius*, *lii*. 3. Of Rivers; as, *Tybris*, *bris*. *Orontes*, *tis*. 4. Of Months; as, *October*, *bris*. 5. Of winds; as, *Lybs*, *ybis*. *Notus*, *us*. *Auster*, *stri*, the South-wind.

bus componitur; cujus nota est *Hic, Hæc & Hoc*; ut, *Hic, Hæc & Hoc Felix*.

6. *Dubium*, aut Masculinum aut Fœmininum Ar- *Dubium*,
ticulum indifferenter assumere potest; cujus nota est
Hic, vel Hæc; ut, *Hic vel Hæc Dies*.

7. *Epicœnum* sub uno Articulo utrumque sexum *Epicœnum*,
complectitur; ut, *Hic Passer*. Hoc autem in genere,
ad vitandam ambiguitatem, sexum exprimere solemus
per marem & fœminam; ut, *Passer mas, Passer fœ-*
mina.



Propria quæ Maribus:

VEL,

GULIELMI LILII Regulæ,
DE
GENERIBUS NOMINUM.

Cap. 5.

De Regulis Generalibus Propriorum.

Propria, quæ Maribus tribuuntur, Mascula dicas;
ut sunt, 1. *Divorum*, Mars, Bacchus, Apollo. 2.

ut, Carus, Virgilius; 3. *Fluviorum*; ut, Tiberis, Orontes.
4. *Mensium*; ut, October, 5. *Ventorum*; ut, Lybs, Notus,
(Auster.

Regulæ de
generibus
nominum.

1. Generales
I. Substan-
tivorum.
propriorum.

1. Propriæ,
1. Deorum.
2. Virorum.
3. Fluviorum
4. Mensium.
5. Ventorum
mascula
sunt.

Propria

2 Proper Names,

1 Of Goddesses,

2 of Women.

3 Of Cities.

4 of Regions.

5 Of Islands.

6 Feminines.

II. **P**roper Names shewing the female kind are Feminines, as, 1. Of Goddesses, as Juno, rōnis. Venus, rēris. 2. Of Women, as, Anna, nā, Philoris, loi-
dis. 3. Of Cities, as, Elis, līdis. Opus, pūntis. 4. Of Regions, as, Græcia, x. Persis, īdis. 5. Of Islands, as, Creta, x. Britannia, nix. Cyprus, pri.

But some names of Cities are excepted, as, 1. These Masculines, Sulmo, mōnis. Agragas, gantis. 2. Some Neuters, as, Argo, ſgi. Tibur, ūris. Prænestis, stis, and 3. Auxur, xuris, which is both of the Masculine and Neuter Gender.

Chap. 6.

Of the general Rules of Common Names.

II. General of Common Names.

I Common names of Trees are Feminines.

Common names of Trees are of the Feminine Gender, as, *Alnus*, ai, an Alder. *Cupressus*, si, a Cypress. *Cedrus*, di, a Cedar. But *Pinus*, ai, a Pine. *Quercus*, ſri, a wild Olive, are Masculines. *Siler*, ſer, an Oler. *Saber*, ſeris, a Cork tree. Thus, *uris*, the Frankincense tree. *Robur*, ōris, an Oak, and *Acer*, cēris, a Maple, are Neuter.

2. Common names of Birds, Beasts and Fishes be Epicenes.

II. **T**he names of Birds, as, *Passer*, ſeris, a Sparrow. *Hirundo*, dynis, a Swallow. Of Beasts, as, *Tigris*, gi, ſdis, a Tyger. *Vulpis*, is, a Fox. And Fishes, as, *Ostrea*, e, an Oyster. *Cetus*, ti, a whale, are of the Epicene gender.

3 All that end in *um*, and that change not their ending are Neuters.

III. But here is to be noted that of all the Nouns afore-mentioned, every Noun (except proper names of Men and Women) in *um* is of the Neuter Gender. And so are Nouns that change not their ending.

Propriæ scemineum reserentia nomina sexum,
Femineo generi tribuuntur: sive 1. Dearum
Sunt; ut, Juno, Venus. 2. Mulierum; seu, Anna, Philoris
3. ubi; ut, Elis, Opus 4. Regionum; ut, Græcia, Persis
5. Insula item nomen; seu, Creta, Britannia, Cyprus.

2 Propria,
4 Dearum,
2 Mulierum
3 ubi,
4 Regionum
5 Insularum
femina
sunt.

Excipienda tamen quedam sunt ubi; ut ista
1. Mascula, Sulmo, Agragas: 2. quedam neutralia, ut, Ar-
cos.
Tybur, Preneste: & genus. 3. Anxur quod dat utrumq;.

Cap. 6.

De Regulis Generalibus Appellativorum.

I. **A**ppellativa arborum erunt muliebria; ut, Alnus,
Cupressus, Cedrus, Mas pinus, mas oleaster.
Et sunt neutra, filer, suber, thus, iobur, acerque.

II Generales
Appellati-
vorum.
I Appellativa
Arborum sunt
femina.

II **S**unt etiam volucrum; seu, passer, hirundo, fera-
rum
ut, Tygris, Vulpes: & piscium; ut, ostrea, cetus,
Dicta Epicæna: quibus vox ipsa genus feret aptum.

2 Appellati-
va volucrum,
ferarum, &
Piscium pi-
cæna sunt.

III. Attamen ex cunctis, quæ diximus ante notandæ, 3 Omne in
Omne quod exit in unum (si hominum modum opera tollas)
Est genus neutrum: sic invariabile nomen.

um, & in-
variable tu-
Neutra.

2. Special Rules of common Names are three.

But now will I speak in order touching all other Common names, or which are as Common names; for in these the Gender is alwayes known by the Genitive case, as the three special rules following will shew.

Chap. 7.

Of the First Special Rule.

1. A Noun not encreasing in the Genitive, is Feminine. Except Masculines.

A Noun not encreasing in the Genitive singular, is of the Feminine Gender; as, *Caro, carnis* Flesh. *Capra, caprae* a She Goat. *Nubes, nubis* a cloud.

1. **M** Any Names belonging to Men, ending in *a*, are of the Masculine gender; as, *Scriba, bae*, a Scribe. *Affecta, clae*, a Page. *Scutria, rae* a Scoler. *Rabula, lae*, a Brawler. *Lixa, xae*, a Scullion. *Lanista, tae*, a Fencer. 2. Such as come from the first Greek Declension, and ends in *as*; as *Satrapas, pae*, a Pár. Or in *es*; as, *Athletes, tae*, a Wrestler. And such as are made of them in *a*; as, *Satrapa, pae*, *Athleta, tae*. 3. Likewise, *Verres, vis*, a Boar-pig. *Natalis, lis*, a Birth-day. *Aqualis, lis*, an ewer. 4 Words that are compounded of *as* (and signifie more than *as*) a pound weight; as, *centussis, sis*, an hundred pound weight. 5. Add to these, *Lienis, nis*, the mill. *Orbis, bis*, a roundle. *Callis, lis*, a path. *Caulis, lis*, a stalk. *follis, lis*, a pair of bellows. *collis, tis*, a little Hill. *mensis, sis*, a month. *ensis, sis*, a sword. *fastis, sis*, a club. *funis, nis*, a rope. *panis, nis*, bread. *penis, nis*, a mans yard. *crinis, nis*, hair. *ignis, nis*, fire. *cassis, sis*, a net. *fascis, cis*, a saggot. *torris, vis*, a firebrand. *sentis, tis*, a thorn. *piscis, cis*, a fish. *unguis, guis*, a nail; hoof. *vermis, mis* a worm. *velis, eis*, a doe; bar. *postis, sis*, a post. and *axis, xis*, an axle tree. 6. Nouns ending

1. *er, is*, *Venter, tris*, a belly; } are of the
in *os, as*, *Logus, gi*, a word; } Masculine
2. *us, is*, *Annus, ni*, a year; } gender.

Yet

*Sed nunc de reliquis, quæ Appellativa vocantur,
Aut quæ sunt tanquam Appellativa ordine dicam :
Nam genus bis semper dignoscitur ex Genitivo :
Ipsi à ut monstrabit Specialis Regula triplex.*

Regula spe-
cialis Ap-
pellativorū
sunt tres.

Cap. 7.

De Prima Regula Speciali, & ejus
Exceptionibus.

Nomen non crescens Genitivo, *cen*, caro, carnis;
Capra, capræ, nubes, nubis; genus est muliebre.

^{1.}
Nomen non
crescens, est
Muliebre.

I. **M**ascula nomina in *a*, dicuntur multa virorum;
ut, Scriba, afflecta, scurra, & rabula, lixa, lanista.

Excipiuntur
Masculina.

2. Mascula Græcorum quot Declinatio prima

Fundit in *as* & in *es*, & ab illis quot per *a* fiunt;

ut, Satrapas, Satrapa, Athletas, Athleta. 3. Leguntur

Mascula item verres, natalis, aqualis, 4. Ab affe

Nata; *ut*, centussis. 5. Coniunge, lienis & orbis,

Callis, caulis, follis, collis, mensis, & ensis,

Fustis, funis, panis, penis, crinis, & ignis,

Cassus, fassis, torris, sentis, piscis & unguis,

Et vermis, vectis, postis, societur & axis.

6. Mascula in *i*. *er*, *cen* verter; in *os*, vel *a*. *us*; *ut*,
(logos, annus.

Feminei

Y Et these are Feminines. 1. *Mater, tris, a mother.* 2. *Humus, mi, the ground : domus, mi, mūs, an house or home : Alvus, vi, a panch : colus, li, lūs, a staff : ficus, ci, cūs, a fig : acus, cūs, a needle : portus, cūs, a gallery : tribus, būs, a tribe : socrus, cri, a mother in law : nurus, rūs, a daughter in law : manus, nūs, a hand : idus iduum, the Ides of the month : ius, nūs, an old woman : vānus, ni, a ban.* 3. To these you may add Greek words which turn as into us, as, *papyrus, i, paper : antidotus, ti, an antidote : costus, si, the herb cost : Mary : diphthongus, gi, a diphthong : hyssus, si, fine flax : abyssus, si, an abyss : cristallus, li, cristall : Synodus, di, a Synod : sappheus, vi, a Sapphire : eemus, mi, a wilderness : arctus, eti, Charis. wain : with many more, which would be long to set down.*

Neuters.

II. **N**ouns ending in e, whose Genitive makes *is*, are of the Neuter gender, as, *mare, is, the sea, rete, is, a net.* And 2. Nouns that end in *or*; as, *barbitor, ti, a Rute : or inum*; as, *ovum, vi, an egg.* 3. *Hippamones, nis, Mare-poison : catocthes, ibis, an evil custome : virus, poison : pelagus, gi, the sea.* But 4. *Vulgus, gi, the common people,* is sometime Masculine, sometime Neuter.

Doubtfuls.

III. **T**hese Nouns are of the Doubtful Gender ; *Talpa, p.e, a mole : dama, mæ, a falow deer : canalis, lis, a Channel : Balanus, ni, mast : sius, nis, an end : clunis, nūs, a buttock : restis, flis, a rope : pennus, ni, nūs, bignals : amnis, amnis, a river. Pampinus, ni, a vine-leaf : corbis, bis, a basket : linter, tris, a cockboat : torquis, quis, a gold-chain : specus, cūs, a den : anguis, guis, a snake : ficus, ci, a pile : phaselus, ti, a barge : Leucythus, thi, an oil-glass : pharus, ri, a watch tower : and Paradisus, si, Paradise.*

IV. Nouns

Femini generis sunt, 1. Mater. 2. humus, domus,
 Et colus, & quarta pro fructu ficus, acúsque, (alvus)

Porticus, & que tribus, socrus, nūrus, & manus, idus;

Huc anus addenda est, huc mystica vannus Iacchi.

3. His jungas os in us vertentia Græca, Papyrus,

Antidorus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, abyssus,

Crystallus, Synodus, sapphirus, eremus & arctus,

Cum multis aliis quæ nunc perscribere longum est.

Neutrum novum in e, si gignit is; ut, mare, rete. Neutra.

2. Et quot in on vel in um fiunt; ut, barbiton, ovum.

3. Est neutram hippomanes, genus & neutrū caccēthes,

Et virus pelagus. 4. Neutrum modè, mas modè vulgus.

Incerti generis sunt talpa & dama, canalis, Dubia.

Et baranus, finis, clunis, rellis, penus, amnis.

Pampinus, & corbis, linter, torquis, specus, anguis,

Pro mabo ficus, fici dans, atque Phasellus,

Lecythus, ac atomus, grossus, pharus, & Paradisus.

IV. Compositum

IV. **N**ouns derived of Verbs, and ending in *a*, are of the Common of two gender; as, *Grājūgena, nē*, a Grecian boyn, of *gigno* to beget; *Agricola, lā*, an husband-man, of *colo* to till; *ādvena, nē*, a stranger, of *venio* to come. To these add *Senex, vis*, an old man; *auriga, gē*, a waggoner; *verna, nē*, a bondslave: *sodalis, lis*, a companion: *vates, tis*, a Prophet: *extorris, ris*, a banished man: *Patruēlis, lis*, an Uncles son: *Perduellis, lis*, an enemy in war: *Affinis, nis*, a kinsman: *juvenis, nis*, a youth: *testis, tis*, a witness: *civis, vis*, a citizen: *canis, nis*, a dog: *hostis, tis*, a foe, or enemy.

Chap. 3.

Of the second special Rule, and it's Exceptions.

II.

A noun en-
creasing
long is Fe-
minine.

If the last syllable but one of the genitive case singular encreasing, sound long, a noun is of the Feminine gender; as, *Pietas, pietatis*, godliness: *virtus, tutis*, virtue.

Except
Masculines.

I **C**ertain nouns of one syllable are Masculine; as *Sal, salis*, salt: *sol, solis*, the Sun: *ren, renis*, the kidney: *splen, splenis*, the spleen, *Car, caris*, a man of Caria: *Ser, seris*, a man of Seres: *vir, viri*, a man: *vas, vadis*, a surety: *as, assis*, a pound weight: *mas, maris*, a male: *bes, beffis*, eight ounces: *præs, prædis*, a surety: *pes, pedis*, a foot: *glis, gliris*, a dormouse: *mos, moris*, a mannoy: *flor, floris*, a flower: *ros, roris*, dew: *Tros, trovis*, a Trojan: *mus, muris*, a mouse: *dens, dentis*, a tooth: *mons, montis*, a mountain: *pons, pontis*, a bridge: *fons, fontis*, a spring: *seps, septis*, a serpent: *gryps, gryphis*, a gryffen: *thrax, thracis*, a Thracian: *Rex, Regis*, a king: *grex, gregis*, a flock: and *Phryx, Phrygis*, a Phrygian. 2. Nouns of many syllables in *n*; as, *Acaruan, nānis*, one of Acarnania: *lichen, chēnis*, lichen: *liber, libris*, a book: *delphin, phinis*, a dolphin. 3. Nouns that end in *o* and signifie a body; as, *Leo, ōnis*, a lion: *curculio, ōnis*, a weevil, so also, *senio, ōnis*, age: *ternio, ōnis*, tresp: *sermo, mōnis*, speech.

4. Nouns

V. **C**ompositum à verbo dans à commune duorum Communia.
(est,

Grajugen³, à gigno; agricola, à colo; id advena monstrat Excipe hæc
Puerpera.

venio : adde senex, auriga, & verna, sodalis,

Vates, extorris, patruelis, perque duellis,

Affinis, juvenis, testis, civis, canis, hostis.

Cap. 3. De secundâ Speciali Regulâ, &
ejus Exceptionibus.

Nomen, crescentis penultima si genitivi
Syllaba acuta sonat, velut hæc pietas, pietatis,
Virtus, virtutis, monstrat, genus est muliebre.

II.
Nomen ac-
cutè cre-
scens est
muliebre.

I. **M**ascula dicuntur monosyllaba nomina quæ
(dam,

Excipiuntur
Masculina.

Sal, sol, ren, & splen, Car, Ser, vir, vas vadis, as, mas,

Pes, Cres, præ, & pes, glis-gliris habens genitivo,

Mos, flos, ros, & Tros, mus, dens, mons, pons,
simul & fons.

Seps pro serpente, gryps, Thrax, Rex, grex gregis, &
Phryx.

2. Mascula sunt etiam polysyllaba in n, ut, Acarnan,

Lichen, & delphin : 3. & in o, signantia corpus,

ut leo, circulio, sic senic, ternio, sermo.

4. Nouns $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{er} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{os} \end{array} \right\}$ as $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{crater, t  ris a goblet} \\ \text{conditor, t  ris a builder} \\ \text{Heros, ro  s a nobleman.} \end{array} \right\}$ are masculine.

5. So are also *torrens, rentis, a brook: nefrens, entis, and dis a pig: Oriens, entis, the East:* with many in *dens,* as *biden, dentis, a two grain'd fork.* 6. Add to these *gigas, gantis, a giant: Elephas, phantis, an Elephant: adamas, mantis, an adamant: Garamas, mantis, one of Garamaria: tapes, petis, tapestry: lebes, hetis, a canb  ron: Cures, etis, one of Curs: Magnes, netis, a loadstone: meridies, diei, noon.* 7. Nouns compounded of *as,* and signifie part of *as;* as, *dodrans, antis, nine ounces: semis iissi, half a pound:* 8. To these add *Samnis, nitis, a Samnite: hydrops, dropis, the droppe: nicticorax, racis, a night-raven: vervex, vecis, a swether: phoenix, nicis, a Phentix: bombyx, bycis, a silk-worm.* Yet of these *Syren, renis, a mermaid:* and also *seror,   ris, a sister:* and *uxor,   ris, a wife,* are feminines.

Neuters,

II. **T**Hese nouns of one syllable be of the Neuter gender, *mel, mellis, honey: sel, fellis, gall: lac, lactis, milk: far, farris, bread=cozn: ver, veris, the spring: cor, cordis, a heart: vas, vasis, a vessel: os, ossis, a bone: and os, oris, a mouth: rus, ruris, the country: thus, thuris, frankincense: ius, iuris, right: crus, cruris, the leg: pus, puris, corrupt matter.* 2. Nouns in *al,* capital, *talis, a quolf.* And in *ar, as, laquear, aris, a vault.* 3. *Halce, lecis, an herrin,* is of the feminine and Neuter gender,

III. These

are Mascula in er, or & os; cœcrator, conditor, heros.
 mascu- sic torrens, nefrens, oriens, cum pluribus in dens,
 line. Equale bidens, quando pro instrumento reperitur.
 ex' is, and Adde gigas, elephas, adamas, Garamásque, rapésque,
 in dens, Atque lebes, Cures, magnés, unúmque meridi-
 d to thele Es, nomen quintæ. 7. Et quæ componuntur ab affe,-
 ephane, ut dodrans, semis. 8. Jungantur Mascula Samais,
 is, one of Hydrops, nycticorax, thorax, & mascula vervex,
 a canis Phœnix, & bombyx, pro vermiculo. Attamen ex his
 a load- Sunt muliebre genus, Syren, nec non soror, uxor.
 ended of
 is, miz
 dd Sam
 te: n. fi
 weith
 =woz
 to for
 nes.

II. Sunt neutralia & hæc monosyllaba nomina, mel, Neutra.
 is, gall (iel,
 eris, the Lac, far, ver, cor, æs, vas vasis, os-ossis, & oris,
 os, ossis, Rus, thus, jus, crus, pus, Et in al poly syllaba, in æque,
 untrp, Ut capital, laquear: Neutrum hæc, & muliebre.
 cravis
 in al
 aris, &
 minis

III. Sunt:

Doubtfuls.

III. **T** Hese nouns be of the Doubtful gender, *Phan, óis*, a spirit of Prophecie; *corbis*, a ditch; *serpens*, *pentis* a serpent: *bubo, bóis* an owl: *rudens, dentis*, a cable: *grus, gruis*, a crane: *Perdis, dicis*, a partridge: *hux, cis*, a spotted beast: *limax, macis* a snail: *stirps, pis*, a stock: *calx, cis* an hæl: *dies, dies* a day, is only masculine in the plural number.

Commons.

IV. **T** Hese nouns be of the Common of two gender: *Parent, rentis* a parent: *autor, storis* an author: *infans, fantis*, a babe: *adolescens, scentis*, youth: *dux, ducis*, a leader: *illex, légis*, a lawless person: *heres, rédis*, an heir: *exlex, légis*, an outlaw. Words compounded of *frons, tis*, a forehead: *as, bis, frans, ris*, one having two foreheads: *custos, stodis*, a keeper: *bos, bovis* a neat: *fur, furis*, a thief: *fus, suis*, a swine: *sacerdos, dotis* a Priest.

Chap. 9.

Of the third Special Rule, and it's Exceptions.

III.
A noun en-
creasing
short, is of
the Mascul-
ine gender.
Except Fe-
minines.

A Noun is of the masculine gender, if the last syllable but one of the genitive case singular increases, sound short; as, *sanguis, sanguinis*, blood.

I. **A** Noun of more than two syllables, ending in *do*, which makes *dinis*; as, *dulcedo, dinis*, sweetness: and in *go*, which makes *ginis*; as, *compago, ginis*, a joyn: are of the feminine gender. 2. Add *Virgo, ginis*, a maid: *grando, dinis*, hail: *fides, dei*, faith; *competis, fetters*: *teges, getis*, a mat: *seges, getis*, standing corn: *arbor, boris*, a tree: *hyems, emis*, winter: *baccar, charit*.

III. **S**unt dubia hæc Python, scorbs, serpens, bubo, Dubia,
rudens, grus.

Perdix, lynx, lymax, stirps, pro trunco, pedis & calx :

Adde dies numero tantum mas esto secundo.

IV. **S**unt Commune, parens, aurorque, infans, adole- Communia.
scens.

Dux, illex, hæres, exlex; à fronte creata,

ut bifrons; custos, bos, fur, sus, atque sacerdos.

Cap. 9.

De tertia Speciali Regula, & ejus exceptionibus.

Nomen, crescentis penultima si genitivi, III.
Sit gravis, ut sanguis, genitivo sanguinis; est Nomen gra-
viter cre-
scens, est
masculinũ.
(mas.)

I. **F**eminei generis fit hyperdissyllabon in do. Excipiuntur
Quod dinis; atque in go, quod dat ginis in geni- Fœminina,
Id tibi dulcedo faciens dulcedinis, idque (tivo
Monstrat compago, compaginis. 2. Adjice virgo,
Grando, fides, compes, reges, & seges, arbor, hyemsque:
Sic

charis, the herb Ladies-globe, or clove: *Spikenard*: *siadon*, *dōnis*, fine linnen: *Gorgon*, *gōnis*, the monster *Gorgon*: *icon*, *cōnis*, an image: *Amazon*, *zōnis*, an Amazon. 3. Greek nouns ending in *as*, *is*, *lampas*, *pāllis*, a lamp. Or in *is*, *as*, *iāspis*, *fēdis*, *jasper*: *cassis*, *fēdis*, an helmet: *cuspis*, *spēdis*, a spear-point. 4. One word in *us*, *as*, *pecus*, *cūlis*, small-cattle. 5. To these add, *forsex*, *ficis*, a pair of shears, *pellex*, *licis*, an harlot: *carex*, *ricis*, *sedg*: *supellex*, *lectilis*, household-stuff: *appendix*, *dicis*, an appendix: *Histris*, *fricis*, an hedgehog: *coxendix*, *dicis*, an hip: *felix*, *licis*, fern. 6. *Haleon*, *onis*, a kings fisher: and *mulier*, *hēris*, a woman, may be put in this rank, or rule.

Neuters.

II. **A** Noun signifying a thing without life, is of the neuter gender, if it end in *as*, *as*, *Problema*, *māis*, a problem: In *es*, *as*, *omen*, *omin*, a luck. In *as*, *as*, *jubar*, *bāris*, the sun-beam. In *ur*, *as*, *pecur*, *cōis*, the liver. In *us*, *a*, *onus*, *nēris*, a burden. In *ut*, *as*, *occiput*, *cipitis*, the hinder part of the head. 2. Yet of these, *pellex*, *licis*, a comb *fufar*, *fūis*, *bian*, are masculines. 3. These are neuter, *cadaver*, *vēris*, a carcass: *verber*, *bēris*, a stripe: *iter*, *tinēis*, a journey *fuler*, *bēris*, cork: *tuber*, *bēis*, a road-stool: *tuber*, *bēris*, a dug: *gingiber*, *bēris*, ginger: *laser*, *seris*, the herb *Ben jamin* *cicer*, *ceres*, a vetch: *piper*, *peis*, pepper: *papaver*, *veris*, poppy: *fiser*, *seris*, a parsnip: *lier*, *leris*, an oilier. 4. *Aquor*, *ōris*, the sea: *marmor*, *ōris*, a marble: and *ador*, *dōris*, *to*, eat, are neuters. 5. And so is *pecus*, cattle, when it makes *pecōris*.

Doubtfuls.

III. **T**Hese nouns are of the Doubtful gender: *cardo*, *dūis*, the hinge of a door: *margo*, *gānis*, a margent: *cinis*, *nēris*, a heg: *obex*, *hicis*, a bolt: *putor*,

Sic bacchar, sindon, Gorgon, icon, & Amazon.

3 Gracula in as vel in is finita ; ut, Lampas, Iaspis,

Et cassis, cuspis. 4 Vox una pecus pecudis dans.

5 His forfex, pellex, carex, simul atque supellex,

Appendix, histrix, coxendix, adde filixque.

6 Halcyon, & mulier, possunt hâc classe reponi.

II. **E** St neutrale genus signans rem non animatam, Neutra.

Nomen in a; ut, probléma; en, ut, omen; ar, ut jubar ;
ur dans,

ut jecur; us, ut onus; put, ut occiput. 2 Attamen ex his

Mascula sunt pecten, fui fur. 3 Sunt neutra cadaver,

Verber, iter, suber, pro fungo tuber, & uber,

Gingiber, & laser, eicer, & piper, atque papaver,

Et filer, atque filer. 4 Neutra æquor, marmor, adorque.

5 Atque pecus, quando pecoris facit in Genitivo.

III. Sunt dubii generis cardo, margo, cinis, obex, Dubia.

Æ

Pulvis

pulvis, veris, dact: *adeps, dipis, fat*: forceps, *cipis*, a pair of tongs; *pumex, micis*, a pumice-stone; *ramex, micis*, burfnets; *anas, natis*, a duck; *imbrex, bricis*, a gutter-tile; *culex, licis*, a gnat; *natrix, tricis*, a water-snake; *onyx, nicis*, the nail of ones hand, with its compounds; and *flex, licis*, a flint; though these be rather used as Masculines.

Commons,

IV. **T**Hese nouns be of the common of two gender, *vigil, gilis*, a watchman; *pugil, gilis*, a champion; *exsul, fulis*, a banished man; *praesul, fulis*, a super-intendent; *Homo, minis*, a man; *nemo* wants the Genitive case, and in the Dative makes *nemini*, no body; *martyr, tyris*, a martyr. *Ligur, guris*, one of Liguria; *augur, guris*, a soothsayer; *Arcas, cadis*, an Arcadian; *Antistes, stitis*, a President; *miles, litis*, a soldier; *pedes, diris*, a footman; *interpres, pretis*, an interpreter; *comes, mitis*, a companion; *hospes, spitis*, an host or guest; *ales, lites*, a bird of wing; *Praeses, sidis*, a President; *Princeps, cipis*, a Prince; *auceps, cupis*, a Fowler; *eques, quitis*, an horseman; *obses, fidis*, an hostage. 2. And many other nouns derived of verbs; as, *conjugis*, an husband or a wife; *iudex, dicis*, a judge; *vindex, dicis*, a revenger; *opifex, fcis*, a workman; and *arspex, spicis*, a soothsayer.

Chap. 10.

Of the Genders of Adjectives.

II. General Rules of Adjectives,

1 Of one termination,
2 Of two terminations

I. **A**Djectives of one termination are of all the three genders; as, *hic, hac*, & *hoc felix, licis*, happy; *hic, hac* and *hoc audax, dacis*, bold.

II. Adjectives, if they have two terminations, the first is of the Common of two gender; the second is of the Neuter; as, *hic & hac omnis*, & *hoc omne*, all.

III. But

Pulvis, adeps, forceps, pumex, ramex, anas, imbrex,

Adde culex, natrix, & onyx, cum prole, filéxque.

Quamvis hæc melius vult mascula diciet usus.

IV. **C**ommunis generis sunt ista, vigil, pugil, exsul, Communia

Præsul, homo, nemo, martyr, Ligur, augur, & Arcas,

Antistes, miles, pedes, interpretes, comes, hospes,

Sic ales, præses, princeps, auceps, eques, obfes,

Atque alia à verbis quæ nomina multa creantur,

Et, conjux, judex, vindex, opifex, & aruspex.

Cap. 10.

De Generibus Adjectivorum.

Adjectiva unam duntaxat habentia vocem,

Infelix, audax, resistent genus omne sub unâ

Sub geminâ si voce cadant, velut omnis, & omne,

Vox commune duâ prior est, Vox altera neutrum.

II. Regula
generales
Adjectivorum.
1 Unius vo-
cis.
2 Geminæ
vocis.

3 Of three terminations,

III. But if Adjectives do vary three Terminations; as, *Sacer, sacra, sacrum, holy*: the first termination is Masculine, the second is Feminine, and the third is Neuter.

Except
1 Adjectives
like Substantives.

1 But some are by declining, almost Substantives, yet by nature and use, rather Adjectives: such are *Pauper, peris, poor*: *puer, beris, of ripe age*: *degeneris, one that goes out of kinde*: *uber, beris, plentiful*: *dives, vitis, rich*: *locuples plētis, wealthy*: *sospes spētis, safe*: *comes mitis, a companion*: *superstes sitis, a survivor*, and some others, which due reading will reach.

2 Of Adjectives that are declin'd by *er* and *is*.

2 These Nouns have a certain manner of declining proper to themselves; *Campester, of the plain field*: *volucer, swift in flight*: *celeber, famous*: *celer, swift*: *saluber, wholesome*. To which add *Pedester, of a footman*: *equester, of an horseman*: *acer, sharp*, *Paluster, of a fen*: *alacer, chearful*: *sylvestre, of a wood*. And these you shall decline thus; *Hic celer, hac celeris, hoc celerē, swift*: or, *Hic* and *Hac celeris* and *hoc celerē, swift*, &c.

Chap. II.

Of the first Declension.

There be five Declensions.

D Declension is the variation of a word by Cases. There be five declensions of nouns.

A Noun is known of what Declension it is by the ending of the Genitive case singular; for the Ge-

Genitive case of the	1st	2d	3d	4th	5th
ends in	<i>a</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>es</i>

The

III. At si tres variant voces, sacer, ut sacra, sacrum;

Adjectiva trium vocū, a prima sunt Masculini in se cum da feminini in tertia neutrius generis.

Vox prima est mas, altera femina, tertia neutrum.

At sunt quæ flexu propè Substantiva vocantur;

Adjectiva tamen naturâ usūque reposita.

Talia sunt pauper, puber, cum degener, uber,

Et dives, locupies, sospes, comes, atque superstes;

Excipe
I Adjectiva propè Substantiva.

Cum paucis aliis quæ lectio iusta docebit.

Hæc proprium quendam sibi flexum adsciscere gaudent,

2 Adjectiva quæ per er & u, variantur.

Campester, volucer, celeberrimus, celer, atque saluber:

Junge pedester, equester, & acer, junge paluster,

At alacer sylvester: At hæc tu sic variabis,

Hic celer, hæc celeris, neutro hoc celere, aut aliter sic,

Hic atq; hæc celeris, neutrum hoc celere est tibi neutrum.

Cap. II.

De Declinatione primâ.

Declinatio est variatio dictionis per Casus.

Declinationes sunt quinque.

Sunt autem Declinationes nominum quinque.

Dignoscitur nomen cujus sit Declinationis ex

Terminatione genitivi singularis; definit enim

genitivus || 1^{ma} || 2^{da} || 3^{ia} || 4^{ta} || 5^{ta} ||

1^{us} || a || i || is || us || ei ||

D 3

Ge-

The Latine Grammar.

The Genitive case is formed of the Nominative, (which is the first word) by changing the Termination; and other cases are formed of the Genitive.

The Vocative in the singular number; is, for the most part, like the Nominative; and in the plural always.

Nouns of the neuter gender have the Nominative, the Accusative, and Vocative cases alike in both numbers, which three cases end in *a* in the plural.

The Dative and Ablative plural are always alike.

The Genitive plural in many words, admits Syncope, i.e. the loss of a middle letter or syllable.

Nouns of the first declension are declined like *Musa*.

The first declension is of Latine nouns (for the most part Feminines) not encreasing, ending in *a*; which are declined like *Musa*, a Song.

The Terminations of the first Declension are	Singularly in the	Nominative	} case, {	a	Musa	
		Genitive		ae	Musae	
		Dative		ae	Musae	
		Accusative		am	Musam	
		Vocative		a	Musa	
		Ablative		a	Musa	
	Plurally in the	Nominative	} case, {	ae	Musae	
		Genitive		arum	Musarum	
		Dative		is	Musis	
		Accusative		as	Musas	
		Vocative		a	Musa	
		Ablative		is	Musis	
	The Example or Type thereof is					

Genitivus fit à Nominativo, qui est prima vox mutata Terminatione, alii autem casus à Genitivo formantur.

Vocativus singularis *plerumque* similis est Nominativo; pluralis semper.

Nomina neutrius generis habent nominativum, accusativum, & vocativum similes in utroque numero; qui tres casus in plurali desinunt in *a*.

Dativus & Ablativus plurales, semper sunt similes.

Genitivus pluralis in complurimis Syncope admittit.

Prima declinatio est nominum Latinorum (plerumque fœmininorum) non crescentium in *a*, quæ variantur sicut *Musa*. Nomina primæ variantur ut *Musa*.

Primæ Declinationis Terminationes sunt	Singulariter,	Nominativo	casu,	<i>a</i>	<i>Musa</i>
		Genitivo		<i>e</i>	<i>Musæ</i>
		Dativo		<i>e</i>	<i>Musæ</i>
		Accusativo		<i>am</i>	<i>Musam</i>
		Vocativo		<i>a</i>	<i>Musa</i>
		Ablativo		<i>â</i>	<i>Musâ</i>
	Pluraliter,	Nominativo	casu,	<i>a</i>	<i>Musæ</i>
		Genitivo		<i>arum</i>	<i>Musarum</i>
		Dativo		<i>is</i>	<i>Musis</i>
		Accusativo		<i>as</i>	<i>Musas</i>
		Vocativo		<i>a</i>	<i>Musæ</i>
		Ablativo		<i>is</i>	<i>Musis</i>

Ejus Exemplum sive Typus est

As is found in the Genitive case singular in imitation of the Greeks; as, *Pater-familias*, the good man of the house.

The Antients dissolved *a* into *aī*; as, *aulaī*, for *aula*.

Filia, nata, dea, equa, with some few others; make their Dative and ablative plural in *abus*, to distinguish them from their Masculines, *filia, natu, Deus equu*, which follow the form of the second declension.

This Declension is also of Greek Nouns, viz. Masculines in *as* and *es*, and feminines in *a* and *e*.

Nouns in *as* and *a* make their accusative in *am*, and *an*, sometimes in the Poets; as,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accu.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Aneas</i>	<i>Anea</i>	<i>Anea</i>	<i>Anea, an</i>	<i>Anea</i>	<i>Anea</i>
<i>Maria</i>	<i>Maiā</i>	<i>Maiā</i>	<i>Maiā, an</i>	<i>Maiā</i>	<i>Maiā</i>

Greek words in the plural number are declined like Latine.

Es makes in the accusative case *em* in the Vocative and Ablative *e*, or *a*.

Nom. | Gen. | Dat. | Acc. | Voc. or Abl.

Anehisēs | *Anehisē* | *Anehisē* | *Anehisē* | *Anehisē*, vel *Anehisē*

E makes the Genitive in *es*, the Dative in *e*, the Accusative in *em*, the Vocative and Ablative in *e*; as,

Nom. || Gen. || Dat. || Accu. || Voc. & Abl.

Penelope || *Penelopes* || *Penelope* || *Penelopen* || *Penelope*

Some add hereunto Hebrew words in *am*, as *Adam*, *Adā*, which are better reduced to the second Declension by putting to *us*, as *Adamus*, *Adami*, *Adam*.

Chap.

As in Genitivo reperitur ad Græcorum imitationem; ut, *Pater-familias*.

Prisci dissolvebant *e* in *ai*; ut, *aulai* pro *aulæ*.

Filia, nata, dea, equa, cum paucis aliis *Dar.* & *Ablativum* pluralem mittunt in *abus*, ut distinguantur à suis Masculinis, *Filius, natus, Deus, equus*, quæ sequuntur formam secundæ Declinationis.

Est etiam hæc declinatio Græcorum Masculinorum in *as* & *es*, & Femininorum in *a*, & *e*,

As & *a* accusativum *am* faciunt, & *an* aliquando apud Pœtas; ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dar.	Accu.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Aneas</i>	<i>Aneæ</i>	<i>Aneæ</i>	<i>Aneam, an</i>	<i>Aneæ</i>	<i>Aneæ</i>
<i>Maiæ</i>	<i>Maiæ</i>	<i>Maiæ</i>	<i>Maiam, an</i>	<i>Maiæ</i>	<i>Maiæ</i>

Græca in plurali declinantur ut Latina.

Es in accusativo *en* sumit, in vocativo vel ablativo *e*, vel *a*; ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dar.	Accu.	Voc. & Abl.
<i>Anchises</i>	<i>Anchisæ</i>	<i>Anchisæ</i>	<i>Anchisen</i>	<i>Anchise, vel Anchisæ</i>

E Genitivum in *es*, mittit, dativum in *e* accusativum in *en*, vocativum & ablativum in *e*; ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dar.	Accu.	Voc & Abl.
<i>Penelope</i>	<i>Penelopes</i>	<i>Penelope</i>	<i>Penelopen</i>	<i>Penelope</i>

Sunt qui huc addunt Hebræa quædam in *am*; ut, *Adam, Adæ*, quæ tamen melius ad secundam declinationem reducuntur, addendo *us*, ut, *Adamus, Adami*.

Cap.

Chap. 12.

Of the second Declension.

Of the Second like **T**he second Declension is (for the most part) of Masculines in *us*, *Magister*, *as* *Magister*, or of Neuters in *um*, *Dominus*, *as* *Dominus*, *Regnum*, *as* *Regnum*, *a* *kingdō*.

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singularly,	N.	<i>us, um</i>	The Examples or Types of it are	<i>Magister</i>	<i>Dominus</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
		G.	<i>i</i>		<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regni</i>
		D.	<i>o</i>		<i>Magistro</i>	<i>Domino</i>	<i>Regno</i>
		A.	<i>um, um</i>		<i>Magistrum</i>	<i>Dominum</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
		V.	<i>e, um</i>		<i>Magister</i>	<i>Domine</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
		A.	<i>o</i>		<i>Magistro</i>	<i>Domino</i>	<i>Regno</i>
	Plurally,	N.	<i>i, a</i>		<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regna</i>
		G.	<i>orum</i>		<i>Magistorum</i>	<i>Dominorum</i>	<i>Regnorum</i>
		D.	<i>is</i>		<i>Magistris</i>	<i>Dominis</i>	<i>Regnis</i>
		A.	<i>os, a</i>		<i>Magistros</i>	<i>Dominos</i>	<i>Regna</i>
		V.	<i>i, a</i>		<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regna</i>
		A.	<i>is</i>		<i>Magistris</i>	<i>Dominis</i>	<i>Regnis</i>

When the Nominative endeth in *us*, the Vocative endeth in *e*; but *Deus* **God**, maketh *o* *Deus*, and *Filius* **a son**, maketh *o* *fili*.

Proper names of Men in *ius*, make their Vocative in *i*; as, Nom. *Georgius*, **George**. Voc. *o* *Georgi*.

Agnus, **a lamb**, *lucus*, **a grove**; *chorus*, **a quire**; *fluvius*, **a river**; do make their Vocative case in *e* and in *us*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
We read in the Plural number	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Divorum</i>	<i>Divis</i>	<i>Divos</i>	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Divis</i>
	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Deorum</i>	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Dies</i>	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Diu</i>
						gods
						Greek

Cap. 12.

De secunda Declinatione.

Secunda Declinatio est (plerumque) Masculinorum in *us*, *er*, *ut*, *Magister*, *Neurotorū* in *ampt*, *secunda*, *ut*, *Regnum*, *Magister*, *Dominus*, *Regnum*.

Terminations hujus Declinationis sunt			Ejus Exempla, sive Typi sunt		
Singulariter,	N.	r, us, um	Magister	Dominus	Regnum
	G.	i	Magistri	Domini	Regni
	D.	o	Magistro	Domino	Regno
	A.	um	Magistrum	Dominum	Regnum
	V.	r, e, um	Magister	Domine	Regnum
	A.	o	Magistro	Domino	Regno
Pluraliter,	N.	i, a	Magistri	Dominus	Regna
	G.	orum	Magistorū	Dominorum	Regnorum
	D.	is	Magistris	Dominis	Regnis
	A.	os, a	Magistros	Dominos	Regna
	V.	i, a	Magistri	Domini	Regna
	A.	is	Magistris	Dominis	Regnis

Quando Nominativus exit in *us*; Vocativus exit in *e*, sed *Deus* format *o Deus*, & *Filius*, *o fili*.

Propria Hominum in *ius*, faciunt Vocativum in *i, ut*, Nom. *Georgius*, Voc. *o Georgi*.

Agnus, lucus, chorus, fluvius, formant Vocativum in *e* & in *us*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Ablar.
Legimus plurali	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Divorum</i>	<i>Divis</i>	<i>Divos</i>	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Divis</i>
	<i>Dei</i>	<i>Deorum</i>	<i>Deis</i>	<i>Dios</i>	<i>Dei</i>	<i>Deis</i>
	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Deum</i>	<i>Diu</i>	<i>Dios</i>	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Duis</i>

Nomina

Greek Nouns of this declension, have three Terminations: *eus* of the Masculine, *os* of the Masculine and Feminine, and *on* of the Neuter Gender.

Eus makes the Genitive case in *ei*, or *eos*; the dative in *ei*, the accusative in *ea*, the vocative in *eu*, the ablative in *eo*.

|| Nom. || Gen. || Dat. || Acc. || Voc. || Abl. ||

|| *Orpheus* || *Orphei, pheos* || *Orphei* || *Orphea* || *Orpheu* || *Orpheo* ||

Os makes the accusative case in *on*; as, Nom. *Delos*, Gen. *Deli*, Dat. *Delo*, Acc. *Delon*, Voc. *Dele*, Abl. *Delo*.

But Attick Nouns in *os* make the Genitive in *os*; as, *Androgeos Androgeo*, &c. And nouns contracted in *us*, make their Vocative in *u*; as, *Oedipus, Oedipu*.

On is declined like other Neuters; as, Nom. *Ilion*, Gen. *Ilii*, Dat. *Ilio*, Accus. *Ilion*, Voc. *Ilion*, Abl. *Ilio*.

Chap. 13. Of the third Declension.

Of the third
like *Lapis*,
or *Caput*.

THe third declension is very diverse. For it contains all Genders, and (at the least) eleven Terminations in the Nominative case singular: *in a, c, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, x*.

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singular.	Nom.	diverse.	The Examples of Types of it are	<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Gen.	<i>is</i>		<i>Lapidis</i>	<i>Capitis</i>
		Dat.	<i>i</i>		<i>Lapidi</i>	<i>Capiti</i>
		Acc.	<i>ens</i>		<i>Lapidem</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Voc.	diverse.		<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Abl.	<i>e</i>		<i>Lapide</i>	<i>Capite</i>
	Plural.	Nom.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Gen.	<i>um</i>		<i>Lapidum</i>	<i>Capitum</i>
		Dat.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>
		Acc.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Voc.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Abl.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>

Nomina Græca hujus declinationis tres habent terminationes; viz. *eus* Masculini, *os* Masculini & Feminini, & *on* Neutrius.

Eus Genitivum facit in *ei*, vel *eoy*, dativum in *ei*, accusativum in *ea*, vocativum in *eu*, ablativum in *eo*.

|| Nom. || Gen. || Dat. || Acc. || Voc. || Abl. ||

|| *Orpheus* || *Orphei*, *pheos* || *Orphei* || *Orphea* || *Orhen* || *Orpheo* ||

Os accusativum in *on* mittit; ut, Nom. *Delos*, Gen. *Deli*, Dat. *Delo*, Acc. *Delon*, Voc. *Dele*, Abl. *De'o*.

Sed Attica in *os*, Genitivum in *o* mittunt; *Androgeos* *Androgeo*, &c. Et contracta in *us* formant vocativum in *u*; ut, *Oedipus*, *Oedipu*.

On formatur more aliorum Neutorum; ut, Nom. *Ilion*, Gen. *Ilis*, Dat. *Ilis*, Acc. *Ilion*, Voc. *Ilion*, Abl. *Ilis*.

Cap. 13. De tertiâ Declinatione.

Tertia Declinatio est admodum varia. Continet enim omnia genera, & undecim (ad minimum) Terminationes in Nominativo singulari: *a, e, i, l, u, o, r, s, t, x*. Tertie ut, *Lapis, aut Caput*.

Terminationes hujus Declinationis sunt	Singulariter	Nom.	varie	Hujus Exempli five Typi sunt	<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Gen.	<i>is</i>		<i>Lapidis</i>	<i>Capitis</i>
		Dat.	<i>i</i>		<i>Lapidi</i>	<i>Capiti</i>
		Acc.	<i>em</i>		<i>Lapidem</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Voc.	varie		<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Abl.	<i>e</i>		<i>Lapide</i>	<i>Capite</i>
	Pluraliter	Nom.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Gen.	<i>um</i>		<i>Lapidum</i>	<i>Capitum</i>
		Dat.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>
		Acc.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Voc.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Abl.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>

Quæ

What Nouns
make the
Accusative
in *im*.

The Accusative cases of some words are declined only in *im*; as, *vis*, strength : *pavis*, hoarseness : *stis*, thirst : *tussis*, a cough : *maguderis*, the stalk of the herb Benjamin : *Charybdis*, a gulf : and *amussis*, a Carpenters line : To which we may add the names of Rivers; as, *Araris*, the Poan in France : *Tybris*, Tybris by Rome.

in *im* and *em*

Some make their accusative in *im* and *em* indifferently ; as, *Pelvis*, a Basin : *turris* a Tower : *buris*, a plow stilt : *puppis*, a poop of a ship : *torquis*, a chain to wear about ones neck : *securis*, an ax : *restis*, a rope : *sebris*, an Ague : *clavis*, a key : *bipennis*, a twibie : *aqualis*, a water-pot : *avis*, a ship.

The Abl. in *i*

Their Ablative ends in *i* only, whose Accusative ends only in *im*; as, *tussim*, Abl. *tussi*.

Names of months in *er* and *is*, do make their Ablative in *i* only ; as, September, Abl. *bris*, Aprilis, Abl. *li*.

Neuters, ending in *al*, *ar*, and *e*, for the most part make their Ablative in *i*;

as, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Festigal, Abl. } li, \text{ toll.} \\ \text{Calcar, Abl. } \acute{a}ri, \text{ a spur.} \\ \text{Rete, Abl. } ti, \text{ a net.} \end{array} \right. \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{For Rete in the Ab-} \\ \text{lative, is of Reteis.} \end{array} \right\}$

Yet these Nouns in *ar*, and *e*, keep *e*, in their Ablative case ; as, *Far*, bread-corn : *hepar*, the liver : *jubar*, the sun beam : *nectar*, sweet wine : *gausape*, a frize : *praesepe*, a stall : *Soraeste*, a hill in Italy ; *Praeneſte*, the city Palestrina : *Reate*, the city Reati in Italy.

Adjectives, having the Nominative common in *is*, or *er*, and the Neuter in *e*, make their Ablative in *i* only ; as, *Fortis*, *ti*, strong : *Acer*, or *Acris*, *cri*, sharp.

Nouns, which take on them the nature of Adjectives, make their Ablative case for the most part in *i*, as *Sodalis*, *li*.

Except

Quorundam Accusativi flectuntur tantum in *im*, Quæ nomina
 ut, *Vim, ravim, sitim, tussim,* formant Acc-
Maguderim, Charybdim, & amussim. cusativa in
im.

Quibus addas & Fluviorum nomina, ut, *Ararim,*
Tybrim.

Quædam Accusativos flectunt in *im*, & *em* com. in *im* & *em*,
 m. niter, ut,

Pelvis, turris, buvis,
Puppis, torquis, securis,
Reſtis, febris, clavis,
Bipennis, aqualis, navis.

Quorum Accusativus in *im* tantum definit, *iis* Ab- Abbat. in *i*,
 lativus exit in *i*, ut, *tussim, Abl. tussi.*

Mensium nomina in *er*, & *is*, Ablativum in *i* so-
 lum mittunt, ut, *September, Abl. bri, Aprilis, Abl. li.*

Neutra desinentia in *al, ar, & e*, Ablativum magna
 ex parte mittunt in *i*,

{ *Vestigal, Abl. li.* } Nam *Rete* in Ablativo,
 ut, { *Calcar, Abl. ari,* } est à *Retis*.
 { *Rete, Abl. ti.* }

Hæc tamen in *ar* & *e* retinent *e* in Ablativo; *Fars,*
hepar, jubar, nectar, gausape, prasepe, Soracte, Præne-
ſte, Reate.

Adjectiva, quæ Nominativum communem in *is* vel
er & *e* Neutrum habent, Ablativum mittunt in *i*; ut,
Fortis, forti, Acer vel acris, acri.

Quæ Adjectivorum naturam induunt, majori ex
 parte mittunt Ablativum in *i*, ut, *Sodalis, li.*

Excipe

in *e* and *i*.

Except Proper names; as, *Clemens, tis, Clement*.
Nouns whose Accusative cases end in *em* or *im*,
make their Ablative in *e*, and *i*; as, *Puppis*, Accus.
pem vel *pim*; Abl. *pe* vel *pi*.

Par also, with its compounds, makes both *e* and *i*.
Also nouns of the Comparative degree; as, *melior*,
better, and the rest of the Adjectives, except those
above mentioned in *er* or *is*. But *Pauper*, *poor*; *de-*
gener, *out of kind*; *uber*, *plentiful*; *sospes*, *safe*, and
hospes, *an host*, make their Ablative in *e* only.

Some Substantives, as, *Ignis*, *fire*; *amnis*, *a river*;
anguis, *a snake*; *supellex*, *household-stuff*; *vestis*, *a*
coat; *bar*; *unguis*, *a nail*, or *hoof*: Gentiles, as, *Arpi-*
nas, *one of Arpinum*; and Verbals in *trix*, as, *Victrix*,
a Conqueress, make their Ablative in *e* and *i*.

Nom. plural
in *ia*.

Neuters whose Ablative ends in *i*, or in *e* and
i, make their Nominative plural in *ia*; as, *Fortis*, *tia*,
strong, *felix* *licia*, **happy**.

Except Comparatives; as, *fortiora*, **stronger**, but
Plus makes *plura* and *pluria*, **more**.

Es & eis,

Some Nouns make their Nominative & Accusative
plural in *es* or *eis* the diphthong; as, *Omnes*, or *omneis*
all, and *eis* is sometimes contracted into *is*; as, *Sardis*.

Gen. in *ium*.

Of Ablatives in *i* only, or in *e* or *i*, the Genitive
case plural ends in *ium*; as, *utili* *utilium*, *profitabili*,
puppi vel *pe*, *puppium*, Except Comparatives; as, *betiorum*.

And

Sapplicum,
Complicum,
Strigilum,
Artificum,
Veterum,
Vigilum,
Memorum,
Inopum,
Pugilum,

Supplex, *a suppliant*.
Complex, *a partner*.
Strigil, *an host-coat*.
Artifex, *an artificer*.
Vetus, *old*.
Vigil, *a watchman*.
Memor, *mindful*.
Inops, *poor*.
Pugil, *a champion*.

But *plus* maketh *plurimum*.

When

Excipe propria; ut, *Clemens, te.*

Nomina quorum Accusativa per *em* & *im* finiunt, in *e* & *i*.
formant Ablativos in *e* & *i*; ut, *Puppis*, Acc. *pem* vel
pi, Abl. *pe* vel *pi*.

Par, quoque cum compositis *e* & *i* habet. Compara-
tiva etiam, ut *melior*, & reliqua Adjectiva, prae-
ter ea quae supra dicta sunt in *er* & *is*. Sed *Pauper*,
degener, *uber*, *sospes*, *hospes*, in *e* tantum faciunt Abl-
ativum.

Substantiva quaedam; ut,

Ignis, amnis, anguis,

Supellex, vestis, unguis.

Gentilia; ut, *Arpinās*: & Verbalia in *trix*; ut,
Vitrix, Ablativum mittunt in *e* & *i*.

Neutra, quorum Ablativus exit in *i*, vel in *e* & *i*, Nom. pl. in
Nominativum pluralem mittunt in *ia*; ut, *fortis*, *for-ia*.
felix, *felicia*.

Præter Comparativa; ut, *fortiora*; Plur. habet
plura & *pluria*.

Nonnulla Nominativum & Accusativum pluralem *is* & *eis*.
mittunt per *es* & *eis* Diphthongam; ut, *Omnes* vel *om-*
neis. *Eis* autem aliquando contrahitur in *is*; ut, *Sar-*
dis.

Ex his Ablativis in *i* tantum, vel in *e* & *i*, sic pluraliter Gen. in *ium*.
Genitivus in *ium*; ut, *utili*, *utilium*; *puppi* vel *puppe*,
puppium. Præter Comparativa; ut, *meliorum*.

Item præter ista;

Supplicum, complicum, strigilum;

Artificum, veterum, vigilum;

Memorum, inopum, pugilum.

At *plus*, *plurimum* format.

E

Quando

When the Nominative cases singular end with two Consonants, the Genitives plural end in *ium*; as, *Pars, Partium*.

Except	{	<i>Hyemum</i>	}	of	{	<i>Hyems</i> a Winter.
		<i>Principum</i>				<i>Princeps</i> a Prince.
		<i>Forcipum</i>				<i>Forceps</i> a pair of tongs.
		<i>Municipum</i>				<i>Municeps</i> a free-man.
		<i>Inopum</i>				<i>Inops</i> poor.
		<i>Cœlibum</i>				<i>Cœlebs</i> a single-man.
		<i>Clientum</i>				<i>Client</i> a Client.
	{	<i>Participum</i>	}		{	<i>Particeps</i> a Partner.

When like syllables are found in the Nominative and Genitive cases singular, the Genitive case plural ends in *ium*; as, *collis* a hill, makes *collium*.

To which add, { *Virium*, } of { *Vis* strength.
 { *Salium*, } { *Sal* salt.
 { *Ditium*, } { *Dis* rich.

{ *Manium* } of { *Manes* spirits.
 { *Penatium* } { *Penates* household-gods.
 { *Litium* } { *Lis* controverſie.

Yet except, { *Vatum* } of { *Vates* a Poët.
 { *Juvenum* } { *Juvenis* a youth.
 { *Canum* } { *Canis* a dog.

{ *Opum* } of { *Opes* wealth.
 { *Apum* } { *Apes* a Bee.
 { *Panum* } { *Panis* bread.

As a pound makes *assium*, *mas* a male, *marium*,
vas-vadis a surety *vadum*, *nox* night *noctium*, *nie*
snow *nivium*, *os* a bone *ossium*, *faux* a jaw *fauci-*
um, *mus* a mouse *murium*, *caro* flesh *carnium*, *cor*
heart *cordium*.

Uum.

Ales a bird makes *alium*, and *cœlites* the hea-
 venly inhabitants *cœlium*, by taking to them

BONN

Quando Nominativi singulares duabus consonantibus finiuntur, genitivi plurales excut in *ium*; ut, *Pars, partium*.

Excipe,

Hyemum, principum, forcipum, municipum;
Inopum, calibum, clientum, participum.

Ubi in Nominativis & Genitivis singularibus reperiuntur pares syllabæ, Genitivus pluralis exit in *um*; ut, *Collis, collium*.

His adde;

Virium, salium, ditium,
Manium, penatium, litium.

Excipe tamen

Vatum, juvenum, canum;
Opum, apum, panum.

As format *assium*; *mas, marium*; *vas, vadis, vadium*;
nox, noctium; *nix, nivium*; *os, ossium*; *faux, faucium*;
mus, murium; *caro, carniū*; *cor, cordium*.

Ales facit *alium*; & *calites, calitum*, *assumen-* *um*.

Bovum of *bos, bovis*, an *Ox*, is an irregular word, as also *bobus* and *bubus*, for *bovibus*.

Orum & ium

The Names of Feasts, which are only plural, make their Genitive case sometimes in *orum*; as, *Agonalia, liorum*: sometime in *ium*; as, *Floralia, lium*: and sometimes both in *orum*, and *ium*; as, *Saturalia, liorum*, and *lium*,

Abl. in *u* & *ibus*.

Neuters singular in *a*. make the Dative and Ablative plural in *is* or *ibus*; as, *Problema, tis*, vel *matibus*. So also *Quinquatria, tris*, vel *tribus*,

Words derived from the Greek, when they are declined after their own manner, imitate these examples,

Sing.	Nom.	Gen	Dat	Acc.	V.	Abl
<i>Titan</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>anos</i>	<i>ani</i>	<i>ans</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>ane</i>
<i>Arcas</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ado</i>	<i>adi</i>	<i>ada</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ade</i>
<i>Phyllis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>idos</i>	<i>idi</i>	<i>ida</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ide</i>
<i>Geneſis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is; eos</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>im; in</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>
<i>Opus</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>ntos</i>	<i>untri</i>	<i>unta</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>unte</i>
<i>Tethys</i>	<i>ys</i>	<i>yor</i>	<i>yi</i>	<i>yn</i>	<i>y</i>	<i>y</i>
<i>Dido</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>ris</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
<i>achilles</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>

Some of these make the Genitive plural in *ay* and *ium*

Chap. 14.

Of the fourth Declension.

Of the fourth like *Manus*, or

Cornu.

THe fourth Declension hath only two terminations in the Nominative case singular,

{ *us*, Masculine and Feminine, } as { *Manus*,
 { *u*, Neuter, } { *Cornu*.

The

Equum à bos, bovis, anomalum est; ut etiam *bebua* vel *bubua*, pro *bovibus*.

Festorum nomina quæ tantum pluralia sunt, Genitivum aliquando in *orum*; ut, *Agonalia, liorum*: aliquando in *ium*; ut, *Floralia, lium*: aliquando tam in *orum*, quàm in *ium* mittunt; ut, *Saurnalia, liorum, & lium*.

orum & ium

Neutra Græca singularia in *a*, faciunt dativum & Ablativum pluralem in *is* and *ibus*; ut *Problema, matibus*, vel *matibus*. Sic etiam *Quinquatria, triis*, vel *tribus*.

Abl. in is & bus.

Græco fonte derivata, quando juxta linguæ suæ morem variantur, hæc exempla imitantur.

Sing.	N.	Gen.	Dat.	Ace	V.	Abl.	
<i>Titan</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>anos</i>	<i>ani</i>	<i>ama</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>ane</i>	Horum nonnulla formant Genitivum pluralem in <i>oy</i> vel <i>ium</i> .
<i>Arcas</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ados</i>	<i>adi</i>	<i>ada</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ade</i>	
<i>Phyllus</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>idos</i>	<i>idi</i>	<i>ida</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ide</i>	
<i>Genesis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is, eos</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>im, in</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>	
<i>Onus</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>untos</i>	<i>unti</i>	<i>unta</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>unte</i>	
<i>Tethys</i>	<i>ys</i>	<i>yos</i>	<i>yi</i>	<i>yn</i>	<i>y</i>	<i>y</i>	
<i>Dido</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	
<i>achilles</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>eos</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>	

Cap. 14.

De quarto Declinatione.

Quarta Declinatio duas tantum sortitur terminaciones in Recto singulari, *Quartæ, ut*
Manus, manus

Malculinorum & Fœmininorū in us, } ut } *Manus, Cornu,*
Neutrorum in u, } *Cornu.*

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singularly.	Nom.	us, u	The Examples or Types of it are	Manus	Cornu
		Gen.	us, u		Manus	Cornu
		Dat.	ui, u		Manui,	Cornui
		Acc.	um, u		Manum	Cornu
		Voc.	us, u		Manu	Cornu
		Abl.	u, u		Manu	Cornu
	Plurally.	Nom.	us, na		Manus	Cornua
		Gen.	uum		Manuum	Cornuum
		Dat.	ibus		Manibus	Cornibus
		Acc.	us, ua		Manus	Cornua
		Voc.	us, ua		Manus	Cornua
		Abl.	ibus		Manibus	Cornibus

Antiently the Genitive singular ended in *i*, and *uis*, thence the Antients said *fructi* for *fructus*; and *anui* for *anūs*.

The most holy name *Jesus*, makes *Jesum* in the Accusative, and in other cases *Jesu*.

The Dative case hath sometimes *u*; as, *fructu* for *fructui*,

These words make their Dative and Ablative plural in *ibus*; viz. *Artus*, a joint: *arcus*, a bow: *tribus*, a flock: *acus*, a needle: *ficus*, a fig: *specus*, a hole: *quercus*, an oak: *lacus*, a lake: *partus*, young: *veru*, a spit: *genu*, a knee.

All other Nouns make *ibus*.

Chap. 15.

Of the fifth Declension.

Of the fifth,
like *Facies*.

THe fifth Declension hath ene only termination in *es*; as, *Facies*, a face.

All nouns of this Declension are Feminines; except *Dies*, a day, and *Meridies*, noon-day.

Terminationes hujus Declinationis sunt	Singulariter	Nom.	us, u	Ejus Exempli five Typi sunt.	Manus	Cornu
		Gen.	ûs, u		Manûs	Cornû
		Dat.	ui, u		Manui	Cornui
		Acc.	um, u		Manum	Cornu
		Voc.	us, u		Manus	Cornu
		Abl.	u, u		Manu	Cornu
	Pluraliter	Nom.	us, ua		Manus	Cornua
		Gen.	uum		Manuum	Cornuum
		Dat.	ibus		Manibus	Cornibus
		Acc.	us, ua		Manus	Cornua
		Voc.	us, ua		Manus	Cornua
		Abl.	ibus		Manibus	Cornibus

Olim Genitivus singularis exhibet in *i* & *ûs*; inde Veteres dixerunt *fructi* pro *fructûs*, & *anûs* pro *anûs*.

Sacro-sanctum nomen *Jesus* habet in Accusativo *Jesum*, in reliquis verò casibus *Jesu*.

Dativus interdum *u* habet; ut, *fructu* pro *fructui*.

Hæc Dativum & Ablativum pluralem in *ibus* formant; viz. *Artus*, *arcus*, *tribus*, *acus*;
ficus, *specus*, *quercus*, *latus*;
partus, *veru*, *genu*.

Cætera omnia in *ibus*.

Cap. 15.

De quinta Declinatione.

Quinta Declinatio unicam habet terminationem in *es*; ut, *Facies*.

Quintæ, ut *Facies*.

Omnia nomina hujus Declinationis sunt scæminina, exceptis *Dies*, & *meridies*.

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singularly,	Nom.	es	The Example or Type is	Facies	The Genitive singular once ended in <i>es, ii</i> , and <i>e</i> , & the Dative sometimes in <i>e</i> .
		Gen.	ei		Faciēi	
		Dat.	ei		Faciēi	
		Acc.	em		Faciem	Some Nouns of the third Declension were declined after this; as, <i>plebs, plebei</i> .
		Voc.	es		Facies	
		Abl.	e		Facie	
	Plurally,	Nom.	es		Facies	No nouns of this Declension have the Gen. Dat. and Ablative plural, except, <i>Res, a thing; species, a kind; facies, a face; acies, an edge; dies, a day; meridies, midday, or noon</i> :
		Gen.	erum		Faciē. um	
		Dat.	ebus		Faciebus	
		Acc.	es		Facies	
		Voc.	es		Facies	
		Abl.	ebus		Faciēbus	

Chap. 16. Of the declining of Adjectives.

Adjectives of three Terminations, are declined like *Bonus*.

Adjectives are declined with three Terminations, or three Articles.

Adjectives of three Terminations are varied after the first and second Declension; viz. The termination *r*, like *Magister*; *us*, like *Dominus*; *a*, like *Musa*; *um*, like *Regnum*.

Their Example or Type is	Singulariter,	Nom.	Bonus		Bona		Bonum
		Gen.	Boni		Bonae		Boni
		Dat.	Bono		Bonae		Bono
		Acc.	Bonum		Bonam		Bonum
		Voc.	Bone		Bona		Bonum
		Abl.	Bona		Bona		Bono
	Pluraliter,	Nom.	Boni		Bona		Bona
		Gen.	Bonarum		Bonarum		Bonarum
		Dat.	Bonīs		Bonīs		Bonīs
		Acc.	Bonos		Bonas		Bona
		Voc.	Boni		Bonae		Bona
		Abl.	Bonīs		Bonīs		Bonīs

ingulari
nd e, &
s in e.
e third
eclined
be i.
Declen-
nt. and
pt, Res,
inde;
n edg;
ind.

Terminationes hujus Declinat.	Singular.	Nom.	es	Ejus Exemplum five Typus est	Facies	Genitivus singularis olim etiam in <i>es, ii, & e</i> , exhibat, & Dativus aliquando in <i>e</i> .
		Gen.	ei		Faciēi	
		Dat.	ei		Faciēi	
		Acc.	em		Faciem	
		Voc.	es		Facies	
		Abl.	e		Facie	
		Plural.	Nom.	es	Ejus Exemplum	Facies
Gen.			erum	Faciēum		
Dat.			ebus	Faciēbus		
Acc.			es	Facies		
Voc.			es	Facies		
Abl.			ebus	Faciēbus		
					Hæc declinatio Genit. Dat. & Ablativum plura- lem in nullis sortita est, præter <i>Res, species, facies, a- cies, dies, & meridiēs</i> .	

ives.
minari
d after
mina-
Musa;
Regnum.

Cap. 16. De flexione Adjectivorum.

Adjectiva flectuntur tribus Terminationibus, Adjectiva
vel tribus Articulis. trium Ter-
minationū
variantur
sicut *bonus*.
Adjectiva trium Terminationum variantur ad for-
mam primæ & secundæ Declinationis, viz. *r*, sicut
Magister; us, sicut *Dominus; a*, sicut *Musa; um*, sicut
Regnum.

Terminationes hujus Declinat.	Singulariter,	Nom.	Bonus	Ejus Exemplum	Bona	Bonum
		Gen.	Boni		Bonæ	
		Dat.	Bono		Bonæ	
		Acc.	Bonum		Bonum	
		Voc.	Bone		Bona	
		Abl.	Bono		Boni	
	Pluraliter,	Nom.	Boni	Ejus Exemplum	Bonæ	Bonum
		Gen.	Bonorum		Bonarum	
		Dat.	Bonis		Bonis	
		Acc.	Bonos		Bonas	
		Voc.	Boni		Bonæ	
		Abl.	Bonis		Bonis	

*unus, one; totus, whole; solus, alone; ullus, any; alter, another: uter, whether, and their compounds, make their Genitive in *ius*, and the Dative in *i*.*

So also doth *alius, alia, aliud*, Gen. *alius*, Dar. *Alii*, &c.

Ambo both, duo two, are irregular, and make their Neuter gender in *o*, and be thus declined.

Plu- ra- li- ter.	Nom.	<i>Ambo</i>	<i>Ambæ</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Gen.	<i>Amborum</i>	<i>Ambarum</i>	<i>Amborum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>
	Acc.	<i>Ambos</i>	<i>Ambas</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Voc.	<i>Ambo</i>	<i>Amba</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Abl.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>

Of three
Articles
like *Felix*
or *Tristis*.

Adjectives of one or two Terminations follow the rule of the third declension, and are declined with three Articles.

Their Examples, or Types be	Singularly,	N.	<i>Hic, hæc, & hoc, Felix</i>	Singularly,	N.	<i>Hic, & hæc, Tristis,</i> <i>& hoc Triste</i>
		G.	<i>Hujus, Felicis</i>		G.	<i>Hujus, Tristis</i>
		D.	<i>Huic, Felici</i>		D.	<i>Huic, Tristi</i>
		A.	<i>Hunc, & hanc, Felicẽ</i> <i>& hoc Felix</i>		A.	<i>Hunc, & hanc Tri-</i> <i>stem, & hoc Triste</i>
		V.	<i>Felix</i>		V.	<i>Tristis, & Triste</i>
		A.	<i>Hoc, hæc, & hoc Feli-</i> <i>ce vel Felici.</i>		A.	<i>Hoc, hæc, & hoc Tristi</i>
	Plurally,	N.	<i>Hi, & hæ, Felices,</i> <i>& hæc, Felicia</i>	Plurally,	N.	<i>Hi, & hæ, Tristes, &</i> <i>hæc Tristia</i>
		G.	<i>Horum, harum, &</i> <i>horum, Felicium</i>		G.	<i>Horum, harum, &</i> <i>horum, Tristium</i>
		D.	<i>His, Felicibus</i>		D.	<i>His, Tristibus</i>
		A.	<i>Hos, & has, Feli-</i> <i>ces, & hæc Felicia</i>		A.	<i>Hos, & has, Tristes,</i> <i>& hæc, Tristia</i>
		V.	<i>Felices, & Felicia</i>		V.	<i>Tristes, Tristia</i>
		A.	<i>His, Felicibus</i>		A.	<i>Tristibus</i>

Nouns

*isus, totus, solus, ullus, alter, unus, & eorum composita, formant Genitivum in *ius*, & Dativum in *i*.*

Sic & alius, alia, aliud, Gen. alius, Dat. alii, &c.

Ambo & duo sunt anomala, & formant neutrum genus per o: sic autem variantur.

Pluraliter.	Nom.	<i>Ambo</i>	<i>Ambae</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Gen.	<i>Amborum</i>	<i>Amarum</i>	<i>Amborum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>
	Acc.	<i>Ambos</i>	<i>Ambas</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Voc.	<i>Ambo</i>	<i>Ambae</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Abl.	<i>Ambus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>

Adjectiva trium Articulorum variantur, ut, *Felix* aut *Tristis*.

Adjectiva unius vel duarum Terminationum sequuntur formam tertiae Declinationis, & flectuntur tribus Articulis.

Singular.	N.	<i>Hic, haec, & hoc, Felix</i>	Singular.	N.	<i>Hic, & haec, Tristis, & hoc, Triste.</i>
	G.	<i>Hujus, Felicis.</i>		G.	<i>Hujus, Tristis.</i>
	D.	<i>Huic, Felici.</i>		D.	<i>Huic, Tristi.</i>
	A.	<i>Hunc & hanc, Felicem, & hoc, Felix.</i>		A.	<i>Hunc, & hanc Tristem, & hoc Triste.</i>
	V.	<i>Felix.</i>		V.	<i>Tristis, & Triste.</i>
	A.	<i>Hoc, haec, & hoc Felice, vel Felici.</i>		A.	<i>Hoc, haec, & hoc Tristi.</i>

Pluraliter Encipit

Plural.	N.	<i>Hi, & haec, Felices, & haec Felicia.</i>	Plural.	N.	<i>Hi, & haec, Tristes, & haec, Tristia.</i>
	G.	<i>Horum, harum, & horum, Felicium</i>		G.	<i>Horum, harum, & horum, Tristium.</i>
	D.	<i>His Felicibus.</i>		D.	<i>His, Tristibus.</i>
	A.	<i>Hos, & has, Felices, & haec Felicia</i>		A.	<i>Hos, & has, Tristes, & haec, Tristia.</i>
	V.	<i>Felices, & Felicia</i>		V.	<i>Tristes, & Tristia.</i>
	A.	<i>Felicibus.</i>		A.	<i>His, Tristibus.</i>

Nomina

Nouns compounded of a Substantive and Adjective are declined in both; as, *Res publica, Rei-publica, Jus jurandum, Juris-jurandi*,

But such as are compounded of two Substantives, are declined only in the former; as, *Pater-familiâs, Patris-familiâs*.

Chap. 17.

Of Comparison.

There be
three de-
grees of
Compari-
son.

NOuns, whose signification may encrease or be diminished, do form Comparison.

Comparison is the varying of a word by degree.

There be three Degrees of Comparison, }
The Positive.
The Comparative.
The Superlative.

The Positive

The Positive degree is the first word signifying a thing Simply, and without Excess; as, *Tristis, sad; durus, hard*.

The Com-
parative.

The Comparative somewhat exceeds the signification of his Positive by *more*; as, *Tristior sadder, et more sad; durior, harder, or more hard*.

The Super-
lative.

The Superlative exceedeth far above the Positive by *very*; or *most*; as, *Tristissimus, very sad, durissimus most hard*

The Com-
parative

is formed of the } or, and *us*; as of *Tristi-*
first case of the } is made *Tristior*, and
Positive, that en- } *tristius*; of *Duri*, *duri-*
deth in *i*, by put- } or, and *durius*.
ting thereto. } *ssimus*; as of *Tristi-*
is made *tristissimus*; of
Duri, *durissimus*.

But the
Comparison
of some
words is Ir-
regular.

The Su-
perlative

Positives in *r*, make their Superlative by putting
to *rimus*; as, *Pulcer, fast-pulcerimus*.

But

Nomina Composita à duobus rectis declinantur in utrisque; ut, *Res-pub lica*, *Rei-publica*, *Ius-jurandum*, *Iuris-jurandi*.

Composita verò à recto & obliquo, declinantur tantum ex parte recti; ut, *Pater familiās*, *Patris-familiās*.

Cap. 17.

De Comparatione.

Comparantur nomina, quorum significatio augeri, minui potest.

Comparatio est variatio dictionis per Gradus.

Gradus Comparationis sunt tres. { *Positivus.*
Comparativus.
Superlativus.

Comparationis Gradus sunt tres.

Positivus Gradus est primo vox quæ rem simpliciter, & sine excessu significat; ut, *Tristis*, *durus*. Positivus.

Comparativus, Positivi significationem per magis augeat; ut, *Tristior*, *durior*. Comparativus.

Superlativus supra Positivum cum Adverbio valde vel maxime significat; ut, *Tristissimus*, *durissimus*. Superlativus.

Comparativus. { fit regulariter { or, & us; ut, à *Tristi* fit *tristior*, & *tristius*; à *Duri*, *durior*, & *durius*.
à primo Positivi casu in i, *simus*; ut, à *Tristi*, fit *tristissimus*; à *Duri*, *durissimus*.
Superlativus. { addendo {

Positiva in r, formant Superlativum assumendo rimum; ut, *Pulcer*, *pulcerimus*.

Quorundam vero Comparatio est irregularis.

But *dexter*, on the right hand, *dexterior*, more on the right hand, *dextrimus*, most on the right hand; and *sinister*, on the left hand, *sinisterior*, more on the left hand, *sinistimus*, most on the left hand, as the Antients formed them, are excepted.

These six ending in *lis*, do make their Superlative by changing *lis* into *llimus*; viz. *Docilis*, *docillimus*, *docible*: *agilis*, *agillimus*, *nimble*: *gracilis*, *gracillimus*, *slender*: *humilis*, *humillimus*, *humble*: *similis*, *simillimus*, *like*: *facilis*, *facillimus*, *easy*.

Such as are derived of *disco*, *loquor*, *volo*, *facio*, are compared as Positives, in *ens*; as, *Maledicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*, *curling*: *magniloquus*, *magniloquentior*, *magniloquentissimus*, *brag*: *benevolus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*, *kind*: *magnificus*, *magnificentior*, *magnificentissimus*, *stately*.

If a vowel come before *us* in the end, the Comparative degree is made by *magis*, and the Superlative by *maximè*; as, *Pius*, *godly*: *magis Pius*, *more godly*: *maximè Pius*, *most godly*.

These also are excepted from the General Rule aforegoing.

Bonus good, *melior*, better, *optimus* the best.

Malus bad, *pejor* worse, *pejissimus* the worst.

Magnus great, *major* greater, *maximus* the greatest.

Parvus little, *minor* less, *minimus*, the least.

Multus much, *plus* more, *plurimus* the most.

Vetus old, *vetterior* older, *veterrimus* oldest.

Maturus ripe, *maturior* riper, *maturimus*, & *maturissimus* very ripe.

Nequam naughty, *nequior* naughtier, *nequissimus* the naughtiest.

And many such like, whose Positives are derived of Adverbs and Prepositions; as,

Citer hitherly, *citerior*, *citimus*, of *citra* on this side.

Excerptum

Excipiuntur autem *Dexter, dexterior, dextimus*; & *sinister, sinisterior, sinistimus*, pro ut antiqui formabantur.

Sex ista in *lis*, formant Superlativum mutando *lis* in *lissimus*; viz. *Docilis, docillimus*; *agilis, agilissimus*; *facilis, gracillimus*; *humilis, humillimus*; *similis, simillimus*; *facilis, facillimus*.

Quæ derivantur à *dico, loquor, volo, facio*, comparantur tanquam à Positivis in *ens*; ut,

Maledicus, Maledicentior, Maledicentissimus
Magniloquus, Magniloquentior, Magniloquentissimus
Benevolus, Benevolentior, Benevolentissimus.
Magnificus, Magnificentior, Magnificentissimus.

Si vocalis præcedit *us* finale, fit gradus Comparativus per *magis*, & Superlativus per *maximè*; ut, *Pius, magis Pius, maximè Pius*.

Hæc etiam à Regula Generali præcedente excipiuntur.

Bonus, melior, optimus. } *Multus, plurimus; multa, plurima; multum plus plurimum.*

Malus, peior, pessimus. } *Vetus, Veterior, veterrimus.*

Magnus, major, maximus. } *Maturus, maturior, maturissimus, & maturissimus.*

Parvus, minor, minimus } *Nequam, nequior, nequissimus.*

Et istiusmodi multa, quorum Positivi ab Adverbis & Præpositionibus derivantur; ut,
Citer, ceterior, citissimus, à citra.

Exterus, outerly, { *extimus*, } of extra without
exterior; { *extremus*, }

Inferus, netherly; *inferior*, *infinus*, of infra beneath
Posterus, afterly, *posterior*, *postremus*, of post after.

Superus, oberly, { *supremus*, } of supra above.
superior; { *summus*, }

To which are wont to be added, *ultra*, beyond, ul-
terior, further, *ultimus*, furthest; *Prope*, near, pro-
prior, nearer *proximus*, the next; *Pridem*, long ago
prior, former, *primus*, the first, and *Diu*, long, *diutius*,
tonger, *diutissimus*, very long.

Handsal,

These words are very seldom met withall in read-
 ing Authors, and therefore seldome to be used, viz. *As-*
fiduor, more daily: *Strenuor*, more stout: *Egregius-*
simus, very excellent: *Minificissimus*, very wonder-
 ful: *Pientissimus*, vel *piissimus*, very goodly: *ipissi-*
simus, the very best: *perpetuissimus*, most perpetual:
raissimus, most young: *exiguissimus*, the least that
 may be: *multissimus*, the most: *proximior*, nearer
 than the nearest.

Some want the Positive; *Ocyor*, swifter: *ocyssimus*,
 very swift: *potior*, better able: *potissimus*, the best
 able: *deterior*, worse, *deterimus*, the worst: *penitior*,
 inner: *penitissimus*, most innerly.

Defective.

Some want the Comparative; *Novus*, new, *novis-*
simus, the newest: *inclutus*, famous, *inclutissimus*, most
 famous: *inuitus*, unwilling, *inuitissimus*, most un-
 willing: *meritus*, deserved, *meritissimus*, most deser-
 ved: *sacer*, holy, *sacerrimus*, most holy: *falsus*, false,
falsissimus, very false: *fidus*, trusty, *fidissimus*, most
 trusty: *nuper*, nupercus, late, *nuperrimus*, very late:
diversus diverse, *diversissimus*, very diverse.

Some want the Superlative; as, *Opimus*, wealthy,
opimior, more wealthy: *juvenis*, young, *junior*, youn-
 ger: *senex*, old, *senior*, older: *declivus*, down-hill
declivior, more down-hill: *longinquus*, afar off, lon-
 gin-

Extremus, exterior, { *extimus*, } ab Extra.
 { *extremus*, }

Inferus, inferior, *infimus*, ab Infra.

Posterus, posterior, *postremus*, à Post.

Superus, superior { *supremus*, } à Supra.
 { *summus*, }

Quibus addi solent, *ultra*, *ulterior*, *ultimus*, *Propter*,
propior, *proximus*. *Pridem*, *prior*, *primus*; & *Diu*, *di-*
tior, *diutissimus*,

Hæc in legendis authoribus raro occurrunt, raro i-
 tur sunt usurpanda, viz. *Affiduor*, *Strenuior*, *Egre*. Inusitata.
issimus, *Mirificissimus*, *Pientissimus*, vel *piissimus*, *ip-*
issimus, *perpetuissimus*, *tuiissimus*, *exiguissimus*, *multif-*
issimus, *proximior*.

Quædam carent Positivo; *Ocyor*, *ocyssimus*, *Pæior*,
atissimus, *Deterior*, *deterimus*, *Penitior*, *penitissimus*. Defectiva,

Quædam carent Comparativo; *Novus*, *novissimus*,
Inclutus, *inclutissimus*; *Invitus*, *invitissimus*; *Meri-*
us, *meritissimus*; *Sacer*, *sacerrimus*; *Falsus*, *falsissi-*
us; *Fidus*, *fidissimus*; *Nuper*, *nuperus*, *nuperrimus*;
Diversus, *diversissimus*.

Quædam carent Superlativo; ut, *Opimus*, *opimior*; *juve-*
us, *junior*; *Senex*, *senior*; *Declivus*, *declivior*; *longinquus*,
longinquior.

longinquior, farther off: *salutaris*, wholesome: *salutarior*, more wholesome: *supinus*, careless: *supinior*, more careless: *adolescens*, youthful: *adulescentior*, more youthful: *ingens*, huge: *ingenior*, more huge: *satur*, full: *saturior*, fuller: *antè*, before: *anterior*, more before: *infinitus*, infinite: *infinitior*, more infinite: *taciturnus*, silent: *taciturnior*, more silent: *communis*, common: *communior*, more common.

Licentior, more licentious, is only the Comparative.

Improper

Sometimes also Comparison is made of Substantives, but abusively; as, *Nero*, *Neronior*, more cruel than *Nero*; *Pæus*, *Pænior*, more perfidious than *Carthaginian*.



Quæ Genus.

OR,

ROB. ROBINSON'S Rules of Nouns
Heteroclitès, or Irregular.

Chap. 18. Of varying *Heteroclitès*.

Heteroclitès
are,

Nouns which 1. vary or change their Gender Declining. 2. Those which want of any new fashion. 3. And those which have too much, and are *Heteroclitès*.

These nouns change their Gender and Declining which are,

I
Variant

1. Feminines in the singular number, and Neuters in the plural; as,

Perge

longinquior; salutaris, salutarior; supinus, supinior;
 adolescens, adolescentior; ingens, ingentior; satur, satur-
 ior; autē, anterior; infinitus, infinitior; taciturnus,
 taciturnior; communis, communior.

Licentior est solus Comparativus

Interdum etiam à Substantivis sic Comparatio
 sed abusive; ut, Nero, Neronior; Pænus, Pænior. Abusiva.



Quæ Genus :

SIVE,

ROB. ROBINSONI Regulæ de
Heteroclitis, seu Anomalis.

Cap. 18.

De Heteroclitis variantibus.

Quæ genus aut flexum variant, 2. quæcumq; nō-
 (vato sunt. Heteroclitæ sunt.)
 situ deficiunt, 3. superantive, Heteroclitæ sunt

Hæc genus ac partim flexum variantia cernis,

Variant.

1 Pergamus, *mi*, the town Pergamus, makes Pergama, *morum* : Supellex, *lectilis*, household-stuff, makes supellectilia, unless it want the plural.

2 Neuters in the singular, and masculines and neuters in the plural ; as, Rastrum, *sti*, a rake, makes rastri, & rastra, *strorum* : frænum, *ni*, a bridle, makes fræni, & fræna, *norum* : filum, *li*, a thread, makes fili, & fila, *lorum*. Capistrum, *stri*, an halter, makes capistri, & stra, *strorum*.

3 Neuters in the singular, and masculines only in the Plural ; as, Argos, *gi*, the City of Argos, makes Argi, *gorum* : cælum, *li*, heaven, makes cæli, *lorum*.

4 Neuters in the singular, and feminines in the plural ; as, Nundinum, *ni*, a fair, makes nundina, *narum* : epulum, *li*, a banquet, makes epula, *larum* : balneum, *nei*, a bath, makes balneæ, *nearum*, though JUVENAL hath balnea in the plural number.

5 Masculines in the singular, and neuters in the plural ; as, Mænalus, *li*, a hill in Arcadia, makes Mænala, *lorum* : Dindimus, *mi*, the top of Ida, makes Dindima, *morum* : Ismarus, *ri*, a hill in Thrace, makes Ismara, *rorum* : Tartarus, *ri*, Hell, makes Tartara, *rorum* : Taygætus, *ti*, a hill in Lacedemonia, makes Taygæta, *torum* : Tænarus, *ri*, a hill in Laconia, makes Tænera, *rorum* : Massicus, *ci*, a hill in Italy, makes Massica, *corum* : Gargarus, *ri*, a top of Ida, makes Gargara, *rorum*.

6 Masculines singular, and masculine and Neuters in the plural ; as, Sibilus, *li*, an hissing, makes sibili, & sibila, *lorum* : focus, *ci*, a jest, makes joci, & jocorum : locus, *ci*, a place, makes loci, & loca, *corum* : Avernus, *ni*, a lake in Campania, makes Avernus, & Avena, *norum*.

1 Pergamus infelix urbs Troum Pergama gignit ;

Quod nisi plurali careat facit ipsa supellex ;

Singula fœmineis, neutris pluralia gaudent.

2 Dat prior his numerus neutrum genus, alter utrumq̃;

Rastrum, cum fræno, filum, simul atque capistrum.

3 Argos item & cœlum, sunt singula neutra; sed audi,

Mascula duatætaxat cœlos vocitabis & Argos.

4 Nundinum, & hinc epulum, quibus addito balne-

Neutra quidem primo, muliebria rite secundo.

Balnea plurali Juvenalem constat habere.

5 Hæc maribus dantur singularia, plurima neutris ;

Mænalus, atq̃, sacer mons Dindimus, Ismarus, atq̃,

Tartara, Táygētus, sic Tænera, Massica, & altus

Gargarus. 6. At numerus genus his dabit alter utrumq̃,

Sibilus, atq̃, jocus, locus, & Campanus Avernus.

Chap. 19.

Of Heteroclites that want Case.

T hose Heteroclites which follow are defective in Case, or Number.

¹
Defective in
Case,

1 Aptotes are such as vary no Case; as, *Fas*, right: *nil*, nothing: *nihil*, nothing: *instar*, like: such as end in *u* and *i*; as, *cornu*, a horn: *genu*, a knee: *gummi*, gum: *frugi*, thrifty: Likewise, *Tempe*, a pleasant field: *tot*, so many: *quot*, how many: and all nouns of number from three to an hundred.

2 A Monoptote is a noun of one only Case; as, *Noctu*, by night: *natu*, by birth: *jussu*, by bidding: *injussu*, without bidding: *astu*, by craft: *promptu*, in readiness: *permissu*, by sufferance: but we read *astus* in the Accusative case plural, and *inficias*, a denial, which word is only found.

3 Those are Diptotes which have two Cases only; as, Nom. *forte*, Abl. *forte*, *hap*; Gen. *spontu*, Abl. *sponte*, of ones own accord: Nom. *plus*, Gen. *pluribus*, more: Gen. *repetundarum*, of bribery: Abl. *repetundis*: Gen. *jugeri*, of an acre, Abl. *jugere*: Gen. *verberis*, of a stroke, Abl. *verbere*: Nom. *suppetiæ*, aid, Acc. *suppetias*: Nom. *tantundem* so much, Gen. *tantidem*: Gen. *impetis*, violence, Abl. *impete*: Acc. *vicem*, a turn, Abl. *vice*: whereof *verberis*, *vicem*, *plus*, and *jugeri*, have all their cases in the plural number.

4 Those are Triptotes which have three cases only; as, Gen. *precis*, Acc. *precem*, Abl. *prece*, prayer: Gen. *opis*, Acc. *opem*, Abl. *ope*, help.

Via, force, wanteth no case except the Dative. And these have all their cases in the plural number.

5 Relatives; as, *qui*, which: Interrogatives; as, *quis*, who: Distributives; as, *nullus* none: neuter neither, and *omnis*, all.

Cap. 19.

De Heteroclitis defectivis Casu.

Que sequitur manca est Numero, Casusque pro-
 (pago. ² Defectiva
 Casu.

1 *Que nullam variant casum; ut, fas, nil, nihil, instar;
 Mula & in u simul; ut sunt hæc cornuque, genuque;
 Sic gummi, frugis; sic Tempe, tot, quot, & omnes
 A tribus ad centum numeros Aptota vocabis.*

2 *Estque Monoptoton nomen, cui vox cadit una;
 Cen noctu, natu, iussu, injussu, simul astu,
 Promptu, permittu, plurali legimus astus,
 Legimus inficias, sed vox ea sola reperta est.*

3 *Sunt Diptota, quibus duplex flexura remansit,
 ut, fors, fore dabit sexto; spontis, quoque sponte;
 Sic plus, pluris habet; repetundarum, repetundis;
 Jugeris, & sexto dat jugere; verberis autem
 Verbere; suppetiæ quarto quoque suppetias dant.
 Tantundem dat tantidem, simul imperis hoc dat
 Impetes; junge vicem sexto vice: nec lego plura.
 Verberis, atque vicem, sic plus cum jugere, cunctos
 Quatuor hæc numero casus tenuere secundo.*

4 *Tres quibus, inflectis casus Triptota vocantur,
 ut, precis atque precem, petit & prece blandus amicam
 Sic opis est nostra, fer opem legis, atque ope dignus.
 Integra vox vis est, nisi desit forte Dativus;
 Omnibus his mutilus numerus prior, integer alter.*

5 *Que referunt, ut, qui; que percontantur, ut, equis:
 Et que distribuunt, ut, nullus, neuter, & omnis.*

Indefinites; as, *quilibet*, any one: *alter*, another: want the Vocative case, and all Pronouns, except *Noster*, ours: *nostras*, on our side: *meus*, mine: *tu*, thou.

Chap. 20.

Of Heteroclites that want Number.

Defective in the Singular Number.

ALL Proper Names, having a restraining nature, do want the plural number; as, *Mars, Mars, Mars*: *Cato, Cato, Cato*: *Gallia, Gallia, Gallia*, France: *Roma, Roma, Roma*, Rome: *Ida, Ida, Ida*, a hill near Troy: *Tagus, Tagus, Tagus*, the River Taio in Spain: *Lalaps, Lalaps, Lalaps*, a dogs name: *Carnassas, Carnassas, Carnassas*, a hill in Phocis: *Eucephalus, Eucephalus, Eucephalus*, Alexanders horse. Add to these the names of Corn; as, *tritium, tritium, tritium*, wheat. Things sold by weight; as, *Lana, Lana, Lana*, wool: Or Herbs; as, *salvia, salvia, salvia*, sage: Or Liquors; as, *Cervisia, Cervisia, Cervisia*, beer: Of Metals; as, *aurum, aurum, aurum*, gold; wherein observe the opinion of Authors, for sometimes they keep, sometimes they reject the plural number.

2 *Hordeum, hordeum, hordeum*, barley: *far, far, far*, barley: *bycad, bycad, bycad*, a market: *mel, mel, mel*, honey: *mustum, mustum, mustum*, wine mingled with honey: *defrutum, defrutum, defrutum*, wine boiled to the half: and thus, *thuris, thuris, thuris*, frankincense, have only three like cases in the plural number.

3 These Masculines want the plural number; *Spes, spes, spes*, the evening star: *vesper, vesper, vesper*, the evening: *pontus, pontus, pontus*, the sea: *vinus, vinus, vinus*, wine: *simus, simus, simus*, dung: *penus, penus, penus*, vel *penus, penus, penus*, victuals: *sanguis, sanguis, sanguis*, blood: *ather, ather, ather*, the sky: and *nemo, nemo, nemo*, no body: but *nemo* wants the genitive and vocative singular, as well as the plural number.

4 These Feminines have seldom the plural number: *Pubes, pubes, pubes*, ripeness of age: *salus, salus, salus*, health: *ratio, ratio, ratio*, like the fox like: *indoles, indoles, indoles*, to wardline: *sis, sis, sis*, the cough.

*Infinita solent his jungi, ut, quilibet, alter;
 Quinto hæc sæpe carent casu; & Pronomina præter
 Quatuor hæc infra, noster, nostras, meus, & tu.*

Cap. 20.

De Heteroclitis defectivis Numero.

PROPRIA cuncta notes, quibus est natura coercens, Defective
 Plurima præ fuerint, ut, Mars, Cato, Gallia, Roma, Numero
 Singulari,

Ida, Tagus, Lælaps, Parnassus, Bucephalusque.

Hic frumenta dabis, pensa, herbas, uva, metalla;

In quibus Autorum quæ sint placita ipse requiras;

Est ubi pluralem retinent hæc, est ubi spernunt.

2 Hordea, farra, forum, mel, mulsum, defruta,
 (husque,
 Tres tantum similes voces pluralia servant.

3 Hesperes, & vesper, pontus, limusque, sinusque,
 Sic penus, & sanguis, sic æther, nemo; sed ista.

Mascula sunt: numerum vix excedentia primum.)

Nemo caret genito, quinto, numeroque secundo.

4 Singula feminei generis pluralia raro;

Pubes atque salus, sic talio cum indole, tussis,

Pix,

pix, cū, pitch: *humus, mi, the ground*: *lues, is, the murrain*: *sitis, is, thirst*: *fuga, gē, flight*: *quies, ēis, rest*: *cholera, ē, choler*: *fames, mis, hunger*: *lilis, lis, choler*: *senectū, ē, old age*: *juventus, tūtis, youth*: But *soboles, lis, an off-spring*: *labes, bis, a spot*: & all nouns of the fifth Declension will have three like cases in the plural number, except, *res, rei, a thing*: *species, ciēi, a kinde*: *facies, ciēi, a face*: *acies, ciēi, an edge*: and *dies, diēi, a day*: which words are whole in the plural number. To these they are wont to add many Feminines; as, *Stultitia, tiā, foolishness*: *invidia, diā, envy*: *sapientia, tiā, wisdom*: *desidia, diā, sloth*: and a many words of like sort, which reading affords: and these sometimes, but very seldom, have the plural number.

5 These Neuters have not the plural number; *Delicium, cū, ones delight*: *senium, nū, old age*: *letum, shi, death*: *caenum, nū, dirt*: *salum, li, the salt sea*: *barathrum, thri, hell*: *virus, poison*: *vitrum, tri, glass*: *viscum, sci, bird-lime*: *paenum, nū, provision*: *institium, cū, vacation-time*: *nihilum, li, nothing*: *veris, the spring*: *lac, ētis, milk*: *gluten, cūlis, glue*: *halec, lēcis, an herrin*: *gelu, frost*: *solium, li, a throne*: *jubar, baris, the sun-beam*. Here also you may put many such like, which you shall meet with as you read.

And Plural.

6 These Masculines have onely the plural number; *Manes, nūm, spirits*: *maiores, rum, Ancestors*: *cancelli, forum, a lattice*: *liberi, rorum, children*: *antes, tium, the first rank of vines*: *mensē, sium, woad*: *mens flowers*: *lemures, rum, hobgoblins*: *fasti, sium, a Register=book*: *minores, rum, posterity*: *natales, tium, ones stock*: *penates, tium, household gods* and names of places; as, *Gabii, bidum, Locri, eorum*; and whatsoever the like you read any where.

7 These are of the Feminine gender and plural Number;

Exuvæ.

Pix, h

Sic ch

Sed ta

Tres si

Excipe

Quas

Sis m

Stultici

Id genu

Rariūs

5 No

Deliciu

Sic bar

Institiu

Adde g

Quæ ti

6 Ma

Manes, r

Menses

Sūm gen

Et loca p

Et quæ

7 He

Pix, humus, atque lues, sitis & fuga jungo, quietem,

hic cholera, atque fames, bilisque, senectus, juvenus :

Sed tamen hæc, soboles, labe, ut & omnia quinta,

Tres similes casus plurali sæpe tenebunt :

Excipe res, species, facies, aciesque, diesque,

Quas voces numero totas licet esse secundo.

His multa solent muliebria necesse, ut hæc sunt ;

Sulcritia, invidia, sapientia, desidia, atque

Id genus innumeræ voces, quas lectio præbet.

Rarius his numerum, quandoque sed adde secundum ;

5 Nec licet his Neutris numerum deferre secundum ;

Delicium, senium, lethum, cœnũque, salũque ;

Hic barathrum, virus, vitium, viscũque, penũque ;

Institium, nihilum, ver, lac, gluten, simul hæc ;

Adde gelu, solium, jubar. Hic quoque talia ponas,

Quæ tibi, si observes, occurrent multa legenti.

6 Mascula sunt numero tantũ contenta secundo ; Et Plurali.

Manes, majores, cancelli, liberi, & antes ;

Menses [pro fluvium] lemures, fasti, atque minores ;

Cũ genus assignant, natales: adde penates

Et loca plurali, quales Gabiique, Locrique,

Et quæcunque legas passim similis rationis.

7 Hæc sunt Fæminei generis, numerique secundi,

Exuviz,

Exuvia, arum, an Adders slough: phalera, varum, horse-trappings; Nom. grates, Acc. grates, thanks: variabla, arum: Spoil: Idus, iduū, the Ides of months: anxia, arum, foze-locks: inducia, arum, truce: insidia, arum, lying in wait: mina, arū, threatnings: excubie, arum, watch and ward: Nona, arum, the Nones of a month: nuga, arum, trifles: trica, arum, games: Calende, arum, the first day of the month: quisquilia, arum, sweepings: thermæ, marum, hot bathes: cuna, narum, a cradle: dira, varum, cursing: exequia, arum, rites at funerals: inferia, arum, sacrifices to the infernal spirits: feria, arum, holidays: primitia, arum, the first fruits: plage, arum, hunters nets: valva, varum, double, or two-leav'd doors: divitie, arum, riches: nuptia, arum, a wedding: lactes, tium, the small guts. To these may be added Theba, barum, Theebes: Athene, narū, Athens in Greece; of which sort you may find many names of places.

8 These Neuters have seldome the singular number; *Mainia, ium, the walls of a Town: tequesquorum, rough places: precordia, orum, the midriff: lustra, strorum, dens of wilde beasts: arma, motum, weapons: mapalia, liorum, cottages: bellaria, riorum, juncates: munia, niorū, an office: castra, strorum, tents: iusta, storum, Rites at funerals: sponsalia, liorum, betrothing: rostra, strorum, a pulpit: crepundia, orum, a rattle: cunabula, lorum, a cradle: exta, torum, the entrails of beasts: effata, torum, a Southsayers murtherings. To these may be added the Heathenish Festival names; as, Bacchanalia, liorum, a Feast to Bacchus; and if you shall read more, you may put them under this Rule.*

rariis, phaloræ, gratæque, manubis, & idus;
 antix, & induciæ, simul, insidiæque, minæque,
 excubiæ, nonæ, nugæ, tricæque, calendæ,
 Quisquiliæ, thermæ, cunæ, diræ, exequiæque,
 ferriæ, & ferriæ, sic primitivæque, plagæque,
 etia signantes, & valvæ, divitiæque,
 Nuptiæ item & lactes. Addantur Thebæ & Athenæ;
 Quod genus invenias & nomina plura locorum.

8 Rariis hæc primo plurali neutra leguntur;
 Mcenia, cum resquis, præcordia, lustra ferarum;
 Arma, mapalia, sic bellaria, munia, castra,
 Funus justa petit, petit & sponsalia virgo,
 Nostra disertus amat, pueriq;, crepundia gestat;
 Infantēq;, colunt cunabula, consulit extra
 Augur, & absolvens superis effata recantat.

Festa Deam poterunt, cum Bacchanalia, jungi.

Quod si plura leges, licet hæc quoq;, classe reponas.

Chap. 21.

Of redundant or abounding Heteroclites.

3
Redundant.

THese nouns (as it were) have too much, following divers forms; for they vary both their gender, and termination; viz. *tonitrus*, & *tonitru*, **thunder**: *clypeus*, *pei*, & *clypeum* *pei*, a **bucket**: *baculus*, & *baculum*, *li*, & *bacillum*, *li*, a **staff**: *sensus*, *ſus*, a **soul**: & *ſenſum*, *ſi*, a **conceit**, or **meaning**: *ignus*, *ni*, & *ignis*, *ni*, a **rafter**: *tapetum*, *ti*, *tapete*, *ti*, & *tapes*, *pēris*, *tapestry*: *punctus*, *ti*, & *punctum*, *ti*, a **point**: *ſinapi*, & *ſinapis*, *pis*, **muſtard**: *ſinus*, *ni*, & *ſinum*, *ni*, a **milk vessel**: *menda*, *de*, & *mendum*, *di*, a **fault**: *viſcus*, *ſci*, & *viſcum*, *ſci*, **bird**: *cornu*, & *cornum*, *ni*, an **horn**: and *cornu*, *nūs*, **the wing of an Army**: (as *Lucane* ſaith) *eventus*, *tiſ*, & *eventum*, *ti*, an **hap**: and a thouſand ſuch which reading will afford thee.

2 Some Greek words do make a new Latine word in their Accuſative caſe: as, *Panther*, *thēris*, makes *Panthera*, *re*, a **Panther**: *crater*, *teris*, makes *cratera*, *re*, a **goblet**: *cassis*, *ſidis*, makes *cassida*, *da*, a **helmet**: *ether*, *theris*, makes *ethera*, *re*, the **æther**.

3 In theſe nouns the Nominative caſe is diverſe but the ſenſe and gender are all one; viz. *Gibbus*, *bi*, a **gibber**, *beris*, a **bunch**, or **ſwelling**: *cucumis*, *miſ*, a **cucumber**, *meris*, a **cucumber**: *ſtipis*, *piſ*, & *ſtipis*, *piſ*, a **gig**: *cinis*, *neris*, & *ciner*, *neris*, **ashes**: *vomis*, *meris*, & *vomer*, *meris*, a **plowſhare**: *ſcobis*, *biſ*, & *ſcobs*, *biſ*, a **dust**: *pulvis*, *veris*, & *pulver*, *veris*, **dust**: *pubes*, *biſ*, a **puber**, *beris*, **ripeness of age**. Add hereunto nouns ending in *or*, and *os*; as, *Honor*, *nōris*, & *honor*, *nōris*, **honor**: *labor*, *bōris*, & *labos*, *bōris*, **labor**: *arbor*, *boris*, & *arbor*, *boris*, a **tree**; *odor*, *dōris*, & *odos*, *dōris*, **labor**.

Cap. 21.

De Heteroclitis Redundantibus.

Hæc quasi luxuriant varias imitantia formas : 3
Redundan-
tia.

nam genus & vocem variant, tonitrus, tonitruūque;

hic clypeus, clypeum; baculus, baculum, atque; bacillum;

sensus, & hoc sensum, tignus, tignūmq; capetum,

atque capere, rapes; punctus, punctumq; sinapi,

Quod genus immutans fertur scelerata sinapis;

sinus, & hoc sinum [vas lactis] mendāq; mendum;

viscus & hoc viscum; sic cornu, & flexile cornum;

ut Lucanus ait cornū tibi curā suisistri.

eventus, simul eventum; Sed quid moror istis?

Alia doctorum tibi lectio mille ministrat.

2 Sed tibi præterea quedam sunt Græca notanda.

Quæ quæto casu factum peperere Latinum :

nam panther, panthera creat, craterāq; crater,

Assida assis habet, sed & æther, æthera fundit.

hinc cratera venit, venit æthera; sic caput ipsum

Assida magna regit, nec vult panthera domari.

3 Vertitur his rectus, sensus manet & genus unum;

Gibbus, & hic gibber; cucumis, cucumer; stipis, &

(stips;

hic cinis, atque ciner; vomis, vomer; scobis & scobs;

pulvis, item pulvis; pubes, puber; quibus addes

Quæ pariunt or & os, honor, & labor, arbor, odorque.

His

Also *apes*, *pis*, and *apis*, *pis* a *Wē* : *plebs*, *bis* : and *plebes*, *bri*, the common people. There be also many nouns coming from the Greeks, having this double manner ; as, *Delphin*, *phinis*, and *Delphinus*, *phini* : *Dolphin* : *Elephas*, *phantis*, and *Elephantus*, *ti*, an *Elephant* : *Congrus*, *gri*, and *Conger*, *gri*, a *Conger* : *Cel* : *Meleagrus*, *gri*, and *Meleager*, *gri* ; *Teucrus*, *cri*, and *Tencer*, *cri*. And hitherto you shall refer all such as these, which your reading affordeth.

These Nouns are both of the second and fourth Declension ; viz. *Laurus*, *ri*, and *rūs*, a *Bay tree* : *quercus*, *ci*, and *cūs*, an *Oak* : *pinus*, *ni*, and *nūs*, a *Pine tree* : *ficus*, *ci*, and *cūs*, a *fig*. or a *fig tree* : *colus*, *li*, and *lūs*, a *distaff* : *pennus*, *ni*, and *nūs*, a *pen* : *cornus*, *ni*, and *nūs*, a *Dog tree* : *lacus*, *ci*, and *cūs*, a *lake* : and *domus*, *mi*, and *mūs*, an *house*, or *home*. Though these be not thus found in every case. You shall read also more than these, which you may leave to old Authors.

When you decline *Domus*, omit the cases ending in *me*, *mi*, in the singular ; and *mi*, *mi*, in the plural number.

4. Many Adjectives also do abound, but especially such as come of these Substantives ; *Arma*, *morum*, *Arms* : *jugum*, *gi*, a *yoke* : *nervus*, *vi*, a *sinew* : *somnus*, *ni*, *sleep* : *clivus*, *vi*, a *slope of an hill* : *animus*, *mi*, a *mind* : *limus*, *mi*, *mind* : *frænum*, *ni*, a *bridle* : *sera*, *re*, *war* : *bacillum*, *li*, a *staff* : of which Substantives you may make Adjectives in *us*, and *is* ; as of *Arma*, is made *inermus* and *inermis*, *unweaponed* : *Hilarus*, *merry*, is seldome used, but *hilaris*, is well known to be used.

His & apes, & apis, plebs, plebis. Sunt quoque multa
 Accepta à Græcis geminam referentia formam;
 Delphin, delphinus, & hic Elephas, elephantus;
 Congrus, conger, Meleagrus, sic Meleager;
 Teucrus, item Teucer. Dabis huc & cætera cuncta;
 Qua tibi par ratio dederint & lectio casta.
 Hac simul & quarti flexus simul atque secundi;
 Laurus enim lauri facit, & laurus genitivo;
 Quercus, pinus, pro fructu ac arbore ficus,
 Colus, atque penus, cornus quando arbor habetur;
 Lacus atque domus; licet hæc nec ubique recurrant.
 In quoque plura leges, quæ priscis jure relinquant.
 Me, mu, mi, mis, si declinare domum vis.
 Et quæ luxuriant sunt, Adjectiva notanda
 Multa, sed imprimis quot & hæc tibi nomina fundunt
 Ima, jugum, nervus, somnus, clivusque, animusque,
 Quo limus habet, quo frænum, & cera, bacillum;
 Quibus as, simul is formes; ut, inermus, inermis:
 Vior est hilarus, vox est hilaris, hæc nota.

Chap. 22. Of the kinds of Nouns.

Nouns,
are,
1
Primitive.

I. **T**Hese Nouns which follow, and such like, be *Primitives*, viz.

1 A noun *Collective*, which signifieth a multitude in the singular number; as, *Turba*, a rout: *grex*, a flock.

2 *Fictitious*, which is feigned of the sound; as, *Sibilus*, an hissing: *intinnabulum*, a tinkling.

3 *Interrogative*, which we use in asking; as, *Quot*, how many? *qualis*, what an one?

4 *Redditive*, which gives answer to the interrogative; as, *Tot*, so many: *talis*, such an one.

Indefinites, which do not define certain thing.

And these two do sometimes turn into

Relatives, which are referred to the word aforegoing; as, *Talis erat quem nunquam vidi*. He was such an one as I never saw.

5 *Numeral*, which signifies a number on any fashion, whole kinds are also many, viz.

1 *Cardinal*, from which numerals proceed; as, *unus*, one: *duo*, two.

2 *Ordinal*, which denotes an order; as, *Primus*, the first: *secundus*, the second.

3 *Distributive*, which divides the whole into parts; as, *Singuli*, several: *bini*, two and two.

4 *Partitive*, which signifieth either many severally; as, *Quisque*, every one: *uterque*, both: or of many; as, *Alter*, one of the two: *aliquis*, some one.

5 *Universal*, which signifies a thing universal; as, *Omnis*, all: *nullus*, none.

6 *Particular*, which signifieth part of the universal; as, *Quidam*, one: *aliquis*, some body.

Cap. 21. De Speciebus Nominum.

Nomina Primitiva sunt hæc quæ sequuntur, & hujusmodi, viz. Nomina sunt Primitiva.]

1 *Collectivum*, quod singulari numero multitudinem significat; ut, *Turba, grex.*

2 *Fictitium*, quod à sono fingitur; ut, *Sibilus, tin-
nabulum.*

3 *Interrogativum*, quo in interrogando utimur; ut, *Quot? qualis?*

4 *Redditivum*, quod Interrogativo responsum reddit; ut, *Tot, talis.*

Et hæc duo *Indefinita*, quæ certam rem non designant, *Relativa*, quæ ad vocem præcedentem referuntur: ut, *Talis erat, qualem nunquam vidi.*

5 *Numerale*, quod numerum aliquo modo significat, cujus etiam species multe sunt, viz.

1 *Cardinale*, à quo alia numeralia dimanant; ut, *unus, duo.*

2 *Ordinale*, quod ordinem denotat; ut, *Primus, secundus.*

3 *Distributivum*, quod totum in partes distribuit; ut, *Singuli, bini.*

4 *Partitivum*, quod significat vel multa singularem; ut, *Quisque, uterque*; vel unum è multis; ut, *alter, aliquis.*

5 *Universale*, quod universaliter rem significat; ut, *Omnis, nullus.*

6 *Particulare*, quod partem universalis significat; ut, *Quidam, aliquis.*

7 *Multiplicative*, which signifies the multiplicity of a thing; as, *Simplex*, **Single** : *duplex*, **double**.

8 *Proportional*, which signifieth proportion ; as, *Simplum*, **a single part** : *duplum*, **a double part**.

9 *Temporal*, which signifieth time; as, *biennus*, **two years old** : *triennus*, **three years old** : and *biennus*, of **two years standing** : *triennus*, of **three years standing**, or continuance.

10 *Ponderal*, which signifieth the weight of a thing; as, *Binarius*, of **two pound weight** : *ternarius*, **three pound weight**.

11. *Derivatives*, are also of many sorts, whereof these be the chief.

1 *Verbal*, which is derived of a Verb; as, *Lectilis*, **reading**; *flexilis*, **flexible**.

2 *Patrial*, which signifieth the Country; as, *Londonensis*, **a Londoner**.

3 *Gentile*, which betokeneth the Nation, Side, or Sect; as, *Græcus* **a Greek**; *Ciceronianus*, **one of Ciceroes side**; *Christianus*, **a Christian**, or follower of Christ.

4 *Patronymic*, which is derived either from the Father; or some other person of the family ; as, *Æacides*, **the son of Æacus**.

5 Patronymic nouns end in	des,	as,	Lato, des , the son of Latona.	Masculine
	ion,			
	as,	as,	Ili, as , the daughter of Ili.	Feminine
	is,			
	ne,		Nerine, the daughter of Nereus .	

6 *Diminutive*, which lesseneth the signification of its Primitive ; as, *Stimulus*, **a little (wool)** : *lapillulus*, **a little stone**.

7 *Multiplicativum*, quod multipliciter rei significat; ut, *Simplex, duplex*.

8 *Proportionale*, quod proportionem significat; ut, *Simplex, duplex*.

9 *Temporale*, quod tempus significat; ut, *Binus, trinus, & Bicennus, triennus*.

10 *Ponderale*, quod pondus significat; ut, *Ternarius, centenarius*.

II. *Derivativa*, etiam sunt multiplices, horum hæ sunt præcipue species.

Derivativa.

1 *Verbale*, quod à verbo derivatur; ut, *Lectio, flexilis*.

2 *Patrium*, quod patriam significat; ut, *Londinensis*.

3 *Gentile*, quod gentem, partes, aut sectam significat; ut, *Græcus, Ciceronianus, Christianus*.

4 *Patronymicum*, quod vel à patre, vel ab alia quam suæ familiæ personâ derivatur; ut, *Æacides*.

5 Desinunt autem Patronymica vel in	{	des,	{	ut	{	Latoïdes	}	Mascula.
		ion,				Spétion		
		as				Iliaz,		
		is				Menclaz,		
		ne				Nerine.		Fœminina.

6 *Diminutivum*, quod significationem sui Primitivi minuit; ut, *Stultulus, lapillulus*.

7 *Possessive*, which signifieth owning, or Possession; as, *Regius, the Kings*, or, of the King: *pater-
nus, the fathers*, or, of a Father.

8 *Denominative*, which hath its name from another, which differeth from it in Termination only; as, *Iustitia, justice*, of *iustus, just*.

9 *Material*, which signifieth matter; as, *Aureus, golden*.

10 *Local*, which denotes a place; as, *Hortensis, of the garden*: *agrestis, of the field*,

11 *Participial*, which is made of a participle; as, *Sapiens, wise*.

12 *Adverbial*, which is derived of an Adverb; as, *Crassinus, of to morrow*: And here we must diligently observe,

1 All words whose original is unknown or uncertain, may be accounted Primitives in the Latine tongue; yea, though they flow from another Language; as, *Ego, musa*.

2 Lest you be ridiculous in finding the beginnings of words, you may observe diligently the Terminations which come to the Primitives; as of *Amo, I love*, is made *amator, a lover*: *amicus, a friend*: *amabilis, lovely*, &c.



Chap. 23. Of a Pronoun.

A Pronoun
is put for a
Noun.
There be
fifteen Pro-
nouns.

A Pronoun is a part of Speech put for a Noun and supplying its stead.

There be fifteen Pronouns; *Ego, I*: *tu, thou*: *se, of himself*: *ille, he*: *ipse, himself*: *iste, pond*: *hic, thine*: *is, it*: *meus, mine*: *tuus, thine*: *suus, his own*: *nostri, ours*: *uester, yours*: *nostras, our country*: *ma-*
vestras, yours.

7
Regi

8
ne di

9
rens.

10
gress

11
ens.

12
Crassi

quod

1
tina l

incer

Ego, 2

2
ginib

miciv

mabi

23

P

Pro

ille, bi

frat.

T

7 *Possessivum*, quod possessionem significat; ut, *Regius, paternus*.

8 *Denominativum*, quod ab alio sola Terminatio-
ne differt; ut, *Iustitia, à iustus*.

9 *Materiale*, quod materiam significat; ut, *Au-
reus*.

10 *Locale*, quod locum denotat; ut, *Flortensis, a-
grestis*.

11 *Participiale*, quod a Participio fit; ut, *Sapi-
ens*.

12 *Adverbiale*, quod ab Adverbio derivatum; ut,
Crassius, à cras. Diligenter autem hic observandum,
quod,

1 Omnes voces habeantur pro Primitivis in La-
tina lingua, quarum origo, in eadem vel ignota vel
incerta est; imò, licet ab alia lingua dimanant; ut,
Ego, musa.

2 Nè ridiculus sis in investigandis dictionum ori-
ginibus, diligenter observes Terminaciones quæ Pri-
mitivis accedunt; ut, ab *Amo*, fit *amator, amicus, a-
mabilis, &c.*



Cap. 23.

De Pronomine.

Pronomen est pars Orationis pro Nomine posita, Pronomen
& vicem ejus supplens. pro nomine

Pronomina sunt quindecim; *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse,* ponitur.
ille, hic, is, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, ve- Sunt autem
stras. Pronomina
quindecim.

To which may be added, *Qui*, *which*: *quis*, *who*:
cujus, *whose*: *cujus*, *whose countryman*.

Whereof
 some be

And some of
 these be
 called

Pronoun Substantives, viz. *Ego*, *tu*, *tu*, *sui*
 which are referred to three genders,
 without varying their termination.

Pronoun Adjectives, viz. all the rest
 which be varied by three genders; as,
Meus, *mea*, *meum*.

Primitives,

and some

Derivative.

According to their Species, Pro-
 nouns are called

1 *Primitives*, which are the first word; as,
Ego, *tu*, *sui*, *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, and *qui*.

and these be
 called } *Demonstratives*, which are used in
 shewing a thing not spoken of be-
 fore; as, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*, *ille*, *ipse*, *hic*, *is*,
Relatives, which we use in rehear-
 sing a thing that was spoken of
 before; as, *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *is*, and *qui*.

2 *Derivatives*, are such as are derived of their
Primitives: as, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suius*, *nostre*, *vestre*,
Nostre, *vestre*, *cujus*, *cujus*, are derived from
 the Genitive cases of their *Primitives*, *Mei*,
tui, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*, and
quis from the Nominative case *qui*.

Of these some are

Possessives, which signifie owning or Possession, as,
Meus, *tuus*, *suius*, *nostre*, *vestre*.

Gentiles; which signifie belonging to Countries, or
 Nations, to Sects, or Factions, as, *nostre*, *vestre*, and
cujus, which were once used as Nouns in *atis*, and *itis*.

Finites, which define, or set out a certain person,
 as, *Ego*, *tu*.

Indefinites, which do not define a certain person,
 as, *Quis*, *cujus*.

Reciprocals, which betake themselves to the same
 third person which went before it, as, *Sui*, *suius*.

Peter intreateth thou wouldst not forsake him,

Every man spareth his own Errors.

Every man is drawn of his own pleasure.

Thm

Secundum Speciem suam di-
 cuntur.

Po-
 tuus,
 Ge-
 sectas
 profes-
 Fin-
 Ina-
 ur, Q-
 Re-
 perfor-
 Pe-
 Pa-
 Tra-
 a volu-

Quibus addi possint, *Qui, quis, cujus & ejus.*

Horum autem alia dicuntur. *Substantiva*; viz. *Ego, tu, sui*, quæ ad tria genera referuntur sine variatione.

Adjectiva, viz. omnia reliqua quæ per tria genera variantur, ut *Meus, mea, meum.*

1 *Primitiva*, quæ sunt primæ voces, viz. *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is*, & qui. Quorû alia Primitiva.

Arque hæc vocantur *Demonstrativa*, quæ in re aliquâ non prius dictâ demonstrandâ usurpantur, ut, *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, hic, is.*

Relativa, quibus in repetenda re aliquâ prius dictâ utimur, ut, *Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is*, & qui.

2 *Derivativa*, quæ derivantur à suis Primitivis, ut, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras, cujus & ejus.* Et alia Derivativa.

Ex his etiam alia sunt.

Possessiva, quæ possessionem significant, ut, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester.*

Gentilia, quæ gentem aut nationem, vel partes & sectas significant, ut, *Nostras, vestras & ejus*, quæ proferebantur olim ut nomina in *âis*, & *âte*.

Finita, quæ definiunt certam personam, ut, *Ego, tu.*

Indefinita, quæ certam personam non definiunt, ut, *Quis, cujus.*

Reciproca, quæ recipiunt se ad eandem tertiam personam quæ præcessit, ut, *Sui, suus.*

Petrus rogat ut se deserat.

Pareit quisque erroribus suis.

Trahit sua quemque voluptas, i. e. Quisque trahitur à voluptate suâ.

Decli-

There be four Declensions of Pronouns.

Pronouns
have four
Declensions.

Of the first
are, *Ego, tu,*
su.

The Genitive case singular of the first Declension
endeth in *i*: of the Second in *ius*, or *jus*; of the Third
in *i, æ, i*: of the Fourth in *atis*.

Ego, tu, su, be of the first Declension, and are thus
declined.

Singulariter,	N.	<i>Ego</i> , I	Pluraliter,	N.	<i>Nos</i> , we
	G.	<i>Mei</i> , of me		G.	<i>Nostm</i> , <i>nostr</i> , of us
	D.	<i>Mibi</i> , to me		D.	<i>Nobis</i> , to us
	A.	<i>Me</i> , me		A.	<i>Nos</i> , us
	V.			V.	
	A.	<i>a Me</i> , from me		A.	<i>a Nobis</i> , from us
Singul.	N.	<i>Tu</i> , thou	Pluraliter,	N.	<i>Vos</i> , you
	G.	<i>Tui</i> , of thee		G.	<i>Vestm</i> , <i>vestr</i> , of you
	D.	<i>Tibi</i> , to thee		D.	<i>Vobis</i> , to you
	A.	<i>Te</i> , thee		A.	<i>Vos</i> , you
	V.	<i>o Tu</i> , o thou		V.	<i>o Vos</i> , o ye
	A.	<i>a Te</i> , from thee		A.	<i>a Vobis</i> , from you

Sing. } G. *Sui*, of himself, or
and } D. *Sibi*, themselves.
Plur. } A. *Se*
 } A. *a Se*

But it wants the
Nominat. and Voca-
tive cases in both
Numbers.

Of the se-
cond, *Ille*,
ipse, *iste*.

Ille, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*, and *quis* be of the second
Declension, and be thus declined.

Singulariter,	N.	<i>Iste</i> , <i>isto</i> , <i>istud</i>	Pluraliter,	N.	<i>Isti</i> , <i>ista</i> , <i>ista</i>
	G.	<i>Istius</i>		G.	<i>Istorum</i> , <i>istarum</i> , <i>istorum</i>
	D.	<i>Isti</i>		D.	<i>Istis</i>
	A.	<i>Istius</i> , <i>ista</i> , <i>istud</i>		A.	<i>Istos</i> , <i>istas</i> , <i>ista</i>
	V.			V.	
	A.	<i>Isto</i> , <i>isto</i> , <i>isto</i>		A.	<i>Istis</i>

Ille, and *ipse* are Declined like *iste*, saving that *ip*
in the Neuter gender, in the Nominative and the
Accusative case singular maketh *ipsum*.

Declinationes Pronominum sunt quatuor.

Pronomina quatuor habent Declinationes.

Genitivus Singularis Primæ Declinationis exit in *i*: Secundæ in *im*, vel *us*: Tertiæ in *i*, *a*, *i*: Quartæ in *at is*.

Ego, tu, sui, Primæ sunt Declinationis, & sic variantur.

Primæ sunt *Ego, tu, sui*.

Singulariter,	N.	Ego	Pluraliter,	N.	Nos
	G.	Mei		G.	Nostrum, vel Nostri
	D.	Mibi		D.	Nobis
	A.	Me		A.	Nos
	V.			V.	
	A.	à Me		A.	à Nobis

Singulariter,	N.	Tu	Pluraliter,	N.	Vos
	G.	Tui		G.	Vestrum, vel Vestri
	D.	Tibi		D.	Vobis
	A.	Te		A.	Vos
	V.	ô Tu		V.	ô Vos
	A.	à Te		A.	à Vobis

Sing. & Plur.	Gen.	Sui	}	Caret autem Nominativo & Vocativo utriusque Numeri.	
	Dar.	Sibi			
	Acc.	Se			
	Abl.	à Se			

Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, qui, & quis, secundæ sunt Declinationis, & sic variantur.

Secundæ, *Ille, ipse, iste*.

Singulariter,	N.	Ille, ista, istud	Pluraliter,	N.	Isti, ista, ista
	G.	istius		G.	Istorum, istarum, istorum,
	D.	isti		D.	Istis
	A.	Istui, ista, istud		A.	Istos, istas, ista
	V.			V.	
	A.	Isto, ista, isto		A.	Istis

Ille, & ipse variantur sicut *iste*, nisi quod *ipse* in Neutro genere in Nominativo & Accusativo singulari facit *ipsum*.

Hic

Hic, is

Hic is declined as is aforesaid in the Articles,
page 24.

Singular.	N.	Is, ea, id,	Plural.	N.	Ii, ea, ea
	G.	Ejus		G.	Eorū, earū, eorū
	D.	Ei		D.	Iis vel eis
	A.	Eum, eam, id		A.	Eos, eas, ea
	V.			V.	
	A.	Eo, ea, eo		A.	Iis vel eis

So also is the
Compound of *is*
and *demum* de-
clined.

Sing.	N.	Idem, eadem, idem.
	G.	Ejusdem
	D.	Eidem
	A.	Eundem, eandem, idem.

Singular.	N.	Qui, quā, quod,	Plural.	N.	Qui, quā, quā
	G.	Cujus		G.	Quorum, quarum, quorum
	D.	Cui		D.	Quibus vel queis
	A.	Quem quā, quod		A.	Quos, quas, quā
	V.			V.	
	A.	Quo } quā, quo,		A.	Quibus } Queis

After this manner also is declined *Quis, quā, quid,*

But its compound thus, { *N. Quisquis, quicquid,*
 A. Quicquid
 A. quoquo, quaquā, quoquo.

Of the third
Meus, tuus,
suus, noster,
vester, cujus.

Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester and *cujus*, be of the
third Declension, and are declined like Adjectives of
three Terminations on this manner.

Nominativo	<i>Meus, mea, meum</i>	Genitivo	<i>Mei, meae, mei</i>	And so in the other cases.
	<i>Tuus, tua, tuum</i>		<i>Tui, tuae, tui</i>	
	<i>Suus, sua, suum</i>		<i>Sui, suae, sui</i>	
	<i>Noster, nostra, nostrum</i>		<i>Nostri, nostrae, nostri</i>	
	<i>Vester, vestra, vestrum</i>		<i>Vestri, vestrae, vestri</i>	
	<i>Cujus, cuja, cujum</i>			

But *Meus* hath *Mi, mea, meum*, in the vocative ca:
singular.

No.

Of the Fourth, *Nostras, vestras* and *cujas*, be of the fourth Declension, and are declined like Adjectives of three Articles.

As, Nom. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nostras,} \\ \text{Vestras,} \\ \text{Cujas,} \end{array} \right\}$ Gen. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nostratis,} \\ \text{Vestratibus,} \\ \text{Cujatis,} \end{array} \right\}$ &c.

Pronouns are compounded,

1 Among themselves; as, *Ego-ipse, mei-ipsius, mihi-ipsi, illi & illi.*

Of the Composition of Pronouns.

Isti and *illi* be thus declined, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nom. } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Isti, iste, istoc vel istuc.} \\ \text{Acc. } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Istuc, istanc, istock, vel istat.} \\ \text{Abl. } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Istoc, istac, istoc.} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$
Plur. Nom. & Acc. *istec.*

2 With Nouns; as, *Aliquis, huiusmodi.*

3 With Verbs; as, *Quivis, quilibet.*

4 With Adverbs; as, *Nequis.*

So $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Eccum, eccam,} \\ \text{Eccos, eccas,} \end{array} \right\}$ of *ecce* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ellum, ellam,} \\ \text{Ellos, ellas,} \end{array} \right\}$ of *ecce* and *is*. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Elli,} \\ \text{Ella,} \end{array} \right\}$ & *ille*.

5 With a Conjunction; as, *Quisnam, siquis.*

6 With a Preposition; as, *Mecum, nobiscum.*

7 With Syllabical additions; *met, te, pte, ce, ciat*, of which *met*, is added to the first and second person; as, *Egom et, tuimet* & also we say *subimet* and *semet*, but we do not say *tumet*, lest it should seem a Verb of *tumeo* to swell.

Te is added only to *tu* and *te*; as, *Tute, tete.*

Pte is added to these Ablatives Feminine; *Mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*; as, *Meapte, tuapte, suaapte, nostraapte, vestraapte*; and sometimes to their Masculines and Neuters, as, *Meapte labore, suoapte jumento.*

Ce is added to all cases of these Pronouns, *Hic, ille, iste*, as oft as they end in *s*; as, *Huiusce, hoscce, hiscce*; we say also, *hicce, huncce*, and *ejusce*; and sometimes *hice* is read.

Nostras, vestras, & cujas, quartæ sunt Declinationis, Quartæ,
& variantur ad formam Adjectivorum trium Arti- *Nostras, vos-*
culorum. *stras, cujas.*

Ur, Nom. { *Nostras,*
 { *Vestras,* } Gen. { *Nostratis,*
 { *Cujas,* } { *Vestratis,* } &c.
 { *Cujatis,* }

Pronomina Componuntur,

1 Inter se; ut, *Ego-ipse, mei ipsius, mihi-ipsi, Iste,*
& *illuc.*

Iste & ille { Nom. } *Iste, iste, istoc, vel iste.*
 { Acc. } *Istuc, istuc, istoc, vel iste.*
 { Abl. } *Istoc, istuc, istoc.*
 Plur. Nom. & Acc. *iste.*

2 Cum Nominibus; ut, *Aliquis, hujusmodi.*

3 Cum Verbis; ut, *Quivis, quilibet.*

4 Cum Adverbiis; ut, *Nequis.*

Sic { *Eccum, eccam,* } ab ecce { *Ellum, ellæ,* } ab ecce
etiam { *Eccos, eccas,* } & is, { *Ellos, ellas,* } & ille

5 Cum Conjunctione; ut, *Quisquam, siquis.*

6 Cum Præpositione; ut, *Meum, nobiscum.*

7 Cum Syllabicis adjectionibus, *met, te, pte, ce, cine;*
quarum *met* adjicitur primæ & secundæ personæ; ut,
Egom, tuomet, sibimet, etiam & *semet* dicimus. Sed
tumet non dicimus, ne videatur esse Verbum à *tu-*
meo.

Te adjicitur tantum *tu* & *te*; ut, *Tate, tete.*

Pte apponitur istis Ablativis scemininis, *Meâ, tuâ,*
suâ, nostrâ, vestâ; ut, *M.âpte, tuâpte, suâpte, nostrâpte,*
vestâpte, & interdum eorundem masculinis & neutris;
ut, *Meâpte labore, suapte jumento.*

Ce adjicitur obliquis horum Pronominum, *Hic, ille,*
iste, quod in s desinunt; ut, *Hujusce, hoscce, hisce.*

Dicimus etiam *hice, huncce,* & *ejusce,* & interdum
hice legitur

Cine is put to the Nominative and Accusative of
Hic; as, *Hiccine, haccine, hoccine; Hunccine, hanccine;*
hoccine, &c.

Quis and *qui* are compounded on this manner,
Quis in composition is set after these particles,
 viz.

<i>Et,</i>	} as	<i>Ecquis, what one.</i>
<i>Ne,</i>		<i>Nequis, no one.</i>
<i>Alius,</i>		<i>Aliquis, some one.</i>
<i>Num,</i>		<i>Nunquis, whether any one.</i>
<i>Si,</i>		<i>Siquis, if any one.</i>

And these in the Feminine gender singular, and in
 the Neuter plural make *qua*, not *quæ*; as, *Siqua ma-*
lier, If any woman. Nequa flagitia, Not any bla-
my. But *Ecquis* makes *esqua* and *equa* in the Fe-
 minine gender.

Quis in composition is set before these particles,
 viz.

<i>Nam,</i>	} as,	<i>Quisnam.</i>
<i>Piam,</i>		<i>Quispiam,</i>
<i>Putas,</i>		<i>Quisputas,</i>
<i>Quam,</i>		<i>Quisquam,</i>
<i>Que,</i>		<i>Quisque.</i>

Qui in composition is set before these particles;
 viz.

<i>Dam,</i>	} as,	<i>Quidam, a certain one.</i>
<i>Vis,</i>		<i>Quivis, who you will.</i>
<i>Libet,</i>		<i>Quilibet, who that will.</i>
<i>Cunque,</i>		<i>Quicumque, whosoever.</i>

And these every where keep *que*; as, *Quarum do-*
*ctrina, what learning; quæcunque negotia, what-
 ever business.*

Cine apponitur casibus in e desinentibus, ut, *Hic cine*
ecine, hoc cine, hunc cine, hanc cine, hoc cine, &c.

Quis & qui in hunc modum componuntur.

Quis in compositione hisce particulis postponitur,

Et	} ut,	Ecquis
Ne		Nequis
Alius		Aliquis
Num		Nunquis
Si		Siquis

Et hæc tam in feminino singulari, quàm in neutro
 arali *qua* habent, non *quæ*; ut, *Siqua mulier, Ne-*
qua flagitia. Sed *Ecquis* habet *ecquæ & ecqua* in fer-

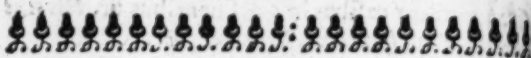
His autem particulis præponitur *Quis* in compo-
 sitione, viz.

Nam	} ut,	Quisnam
Piam		Quispiam
Putas		Quisputas
Quam		Quisquam
Que		Quisque

Qui in compositione præponitur his particulis;

Nam	} ut,	Quidam
Vis		Quivis
Libet		Quilibet
Cunque		Quicunque

Et hæc ubique *quæ* retinent; ut, *Quanam doctrina;*
cunque negotia.



III.

A Verb signifieth to be, to do, or to suffer, It is Personal,

or,

Impersonal.

There belong to a Verb, five Kindes. Active;

Passive,

Neuter.

Chap. 24. Of a Verb and its Kindes.

A Verb is a part of Speech which signifieth to do, or to suffer; as *Sum, I am, Amo, I love, Amor, I am loved.*

Personal, which is distinguished by three Persons in both Numbers; as, Singul. *Amo, I love, Amas, thou lovest, Amat, he loveth, Plur. amamus, we love, Amat is, ye love, Amant, they love,*

Impersonal, which hath no certain signification of Person or Number, unless it be by means of an oblique case; as, *Oportet me, It becometh me, oportet te, it becometh thee, statum me, it is stood of me, or I stand, statum thee, it is stood of thee, or thou standest.*

There belong to a Verb, 1. Kinde. 11. Tense. 11. Conjugation.

I. There be five Kindes of Verbs.

1 **Active**, which signifieth to do, and endeth in *as, Amo, I love*; and by taking to it *r*, may be made **Passive**, as, *Amor, I am loved.*

2 **Passive**, which signifieth to suffer, and endeth in *or*; and by taking away *r*, it may be made **Active**, as, *Amo, I love.*

3 **A Neuter**, endeth in *o* or *m*, and cannot take either to make it a **Passive**; as, *Curro, to run, Sum, I am.*

There be three kinds of **Neuters**, according to their signification.

Substantive, which signifieth the Being of a thing, as, *Sum, I am.*

Absolute, which by it self maketh up the sense, as, *Dormio, I sleep.*

Transitive, whose action passeth into a thing of another signification; as, *Curro stadium, I run a race.*

Cap. 24. De Verbo, & ejus Accidentibus.

III.

Verbum esse
agere, aut
pati signifi-
cat. Estque
Personalis;

VERBUM est pars Orationis; quæ esse ali-
quid agere vult; aut, pati significat, ut, *Sum, Amo,*
mor.

r Personale, quod tribus personis in utroque; nu-
mero distinguitur; ut, singul. *Amo, Amat,*
Amat. Plur. *Amamus, Amatis, Amant.*

vel; &

Impersonale, quod nullius personæ aut numeri
certam significationem, nisi ex adjuncto
casu obliquo, sortitur; ut, *Oportet me, oportet*
te; Statutur à me, flatur à te.

Verbo quidem accident, I. *Genus.* II. *Modus.* Accidunt

I. *Tempus.* IV. *Conjugatio.*

Verbo quin-
que genera.

I. Quinque sunt *Genera Verborum.*

1 *Activum*, quod *agere* significat, & in *o* finitur;
Amo, assumendo verò *Passivum* formare potest; *Activum;* 1
Amor.

2 *Passivum*, quod *pati* significat, & in *or* finitur, *Passivum;*
pro verò *r, Activi* formam resumere potest; ut, *A-*

3 *Neutrum*, quod in *o* vel *m* finitur, nec admittit
ut fiat *Passivum*; ut, *Curro, Sum.* Neutrum.

Neutrorum tria sunt genera secundum eorum signi-
ficationem.

Substantivum, quod substantentiam rei significat; ut,
Sum.

Absolutum, quod ipsum per se sensum absolvit; ut,
Dormio.

Transitivum, cujus actio in rem cognatæ signifi-
cationis transit; ut, *Curro stadium.*

- Deponent.** 4 A *Deponent* endeth in *or*, and hath either the Active signification; as, *Loquor verbum*, I speak words: or the Neuter; as, *Glorior*, I boast.
- Commune.** 5 A *Commune* endeth in *or*, and hath both the Active and Passive signification; as, *Osculor*, I kiss, *am dicto*.
- Four Moods** 11. There be four *Moods*.
- Indicative** 1 The *Indicative* simply sheweth a thing, or asketh a question; as, *Ego amo*, I love: *Amas tu?* lovest thou?
- Imperative** 2 The *Imperative* biddeth or intreateth; as, *Amas tu*, do thou love: *Da mihi*, give me:
- Subjunctive** 3 The *Subjunctive* is joyned with another Verb in the same sentence; as, *Cum amarem*, *eram miser*, *Subjunctive* I loved, I was a wretch. And this mood is called the *Optative*, when it is used in wishing; and the *Potential*, when it is construed by *may*, *can*, *would*, *should*, or *ought*.
- Infinitive.** 4 The *Infinitive* doth not define a certain person or number; as, *Amare*, to love. And to this Mood belong three *Gerunds*, which have their case or ending of a Noun; and their signification of a Verb.
- To which belong** G. *Di* } as, *Amandi*, of loving, or being loved.
D. Ab. *Do* } *Amando*, in loving, or being loved.
N. Ac. *Dum* } *Amandum*, to love, or to be loved.
- Three Gerunds,** *Di, do, dum.*
- Two Supines** 12 The first endeth in *um*, and signifies actively; as, *Amatum*, to love.
whereof The latter endeth in *u*, and signifies passively; as, *Amatu*, to be loved.
- Five Tenses,** 111. Verbs have five *Tenses*.
Present. Three only distinct; *Present*, *Preterperfect*, *Futur*.
1 The *Present tense* which speaketh of the time present, and signifies now to do, or to be done; as, *amo*, I love.

4 *Deponens*, quod in *or* finitum, vel activi significationem habet; ut, *Laquet verbum*; vel neutrius, ut, *lorior*.

5 *Commune*, quod in *or* finitum, tam Activam, quam Passivam significationem habet; ut *Osculor*.

II. *Modi Verborum* sunt quatuor :

Modi quatuor.

1 *Indicativus* simpliciter aliquid indicat, aut interrogat; ut, *Ego amo, amas tu?*

Indicativus.

2 *Imperativus* imperat aut rogat; ut, *Amatu, Da*

Imperativus

3 *Subjunctivus* subjungitur alteri Verbo in eadem sententiâ; ut, *Cum amarem, eram miser.*

Subjunctivus

Arque hic Modus dicitur *Optativus*, quando in opido usurpatur, *Potentialis* vero quando, per *Possu, volo, aut debeo* exponitur.

4 *Infinitivus* certam personam, aut numerum non designat; ut, *Amare*. Et ad hunc Modum pertinent *Gerundia* quæ à nomine casum, & à Verbo significationem accipiunt.

Infinitivus
Ad quem pertinent.

G. Di }
D. Ab. Do }
N. A. Dum }

Amandi
Amanda
Amandum

Gerundia,
Di, do, dum.

Supina, }
Primis exit in *um*, & Activè significat
ut, *Amatum*.
Posterior exit in *u*, & Passivè significat; ut, *Amatu*.

Supina duo
um & u.

III. *Tempore Verborum* sunt quinque,

Tempora quinque.
Præteritum, Præteritum, Præteritum.

1 *Præteritum* tantum distincta; *Præteritum, Præteritum, Præteritum*.
Præteritum, quod de tempore præteriti loquitur, & quid nunc agere vel fieri significat; ut, *Amo*.

Imperfect.

2 The *Preterimperfect tense* speaketh of the time not yet perfectly past; and signifieth a thing to be done, but not yet finished; as, *Amabam, I loved, I did love.*

Preterperfect.

3 The *Preterperfect tense* speaketh of the time perfectly past, and signifieth a thing to be now finished, as, *Amavi, I have loved.*

Preterpluperfect.

4 The *Preterpluperfect tense* speaketh of the time more than perfectly past, and signifieth a thing to be long since finished, as, *Amaveram, I had loved.*

Future.

5 The *Future tense* speaketh of the time to come and signifieth something to be done for the future; as, *Amabo, I will love.*

The *Future tense* of the *Subjunctive Mood* is called *Exact*; because it hath the signification both of the *Preter tense*, and *Future tense* together; as, *Amavero, when I shall have loved.*

Four Conjugations.

IV. Conjugation is the Varying of a Verb by Mood and Tenses.

Verbs have four *Conjugations*, which are known one from another by certain tokens, or characteristic letters.

Whereof the first hath a long.

1 The first Conjugation hath a long before *re* and *rius*; as, *Amare, amaris.*

Second a long.

2 The second Conjugation hath a long before *re* and *rius*; as, *Docere, doceris.*

Third a short

3 The third Conjugation hath a short before *re* and *rius*; as, *Legere, legeris.*

Fourth hath a long before *re* and *rius*.

4 The fourth Conjugation hath a long before *re* and *rius*; as, *Audire, audiris.*

in the Infinitive Mood
Present tense of Verbs
1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th person
Singular of the Indicative Mood
Present tense of the Indicative Mood
in or.

2. *Præteritum imperfectum*, de tempore nondum Imperfectum. Imperfectè præterito loquitur, & aliquid fieri, sed non-
um absolvi significat; ut, *Amabam*.

3. *Præteritum Perfectum* de tempore perfectè præ- Perfectum.
rito loquitur, & aliquid jam perfici significat; ut,
Amavi.

4. *Præteritum plusquam perfectum* de tempore plus- Plusquam
quam perfectio loquitur, & aliquid jamdiu perfectum perfectum,
significat; ut, *Amaveram*.

5. *Futurum* loquitur de tempore futuro, & aliquid Futurum.
futuro significat; ut, *Amabo*.

Subjunctivi Futurum dicitur *Exactum*, quod præ-
teriti simul & futuri significationem habet; ut, *Cum*
mauro.

IV. *Conjugatio* est variatio Verbi per Modos &
tempora.

Verborum quatuor sunt Conjugationes, que à se in- Conjugatio-
certis indicibus, sive literis caracteristicis di- nes quatuor.
tinguntur.

Prima Conjugatio habet a
productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *A-*
mare, Amaris.

2. Secunda Conjugatio habet
productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut,
Quære, Doceris.

3. Tertia Conjugatio habet
corruptum ante *re* & *ris*; ut,
Legere, Legeris.

4. Quarta Conjugatio habet
Productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut,
Audire, Audiris.

Prima habet
a longum,

in Infinitivo præ- Secunda e
senti Verborum longum.

in o, & in secunda
personâ singulari Tertia e bre-
Indicativi præsen-
tis Verborum in or.

Quarta i
longum ante
re & ris.

Chap. 25. Of the form of the first Conjugation.

Verba in (o) prima Conjugationis variantur sicut Amo.	Verbs in (o) of the first Conjugati- on bee varied like Amo, &c.	Verba in (or) prima Conjugationis va- riantur sicut A- mor.	Verbs in (or) of the first Conju- gation be va- ried like Amm.
--	---	--	---

Amo, amas amavi, amare, amatum,	A-	{ amaris } am- { sum } amai.
	mor,	{ amare, } { ui, } { fui, }

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense Plur. I Sing.	1 Amo I love	{ Amor } I am	{ Amaris } thou art	{ Amare } he is	{ Amatur } we are	{ Amamini } ye are	{ Amantur } they are
	2 Amas thou lovest						
	3 Amat he loveth.						
Plur. I Sing.	1 Amamus we	{ Amamus } we are	{ Amamini } ye are	{ Amantur } they are	{ Amantur } they are	{ Amantur } they are	{ Amantur } they are
	2 Amatis ye						
	3 Amant they						

Imperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Amabam I did	{ Amabar } I was	{ Amabaris } thou wast	{ Amabare } he was	{ Amabatur } we were	{ Amabamini } ye were	{ Amabantur } they were
	2 Amabas thou didst						
	3 Amabat he did						
Plur. I Sing.	1 Amabamus we did	{ Amabamus } we were	{ Amabamini } ye were	{ Amabantur } they were	{ Amabantur } they were	{ Amabantur } they were	{ Amabantur } they were
	2 Amabatis ye did						
	3 Amabant they did						

Perfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Amavi I have	{ Amavi } I have	{ Amavisti } thou hast	{ Amavit } he hath	{ Amavimus } we have	{ Amavistis } ye have	{ Amaverunt } they have
	2 Amavisti thou hast						
	3 Amavit he hath						
Plur. I Sing.	1 Amavimus we have	{ Amavimus } we have	{ Amavistis } ye have	{ Amaverunt } they have	{ Amaverunt } they have	{ Amaverunt } they have	{ Amaverunt } they have
	2 Amavistis ye have						
	3 Amaverunt they have						

Future Perfect.
Plur. 1 Sing.

1	<i>Amaveram</i>	I had
2	<i>Amaveras</i>	thou hadst
3	<i>Amaverat</i>	he had
1	<i>Amaveramus</i>	we had
2	<i>Amaveratis</i>	ye had
3	<i>Amaverant</i>	they had

lober

<i>Amatus</i>	<i>eram</i>	I had
	<i>fueram</i>	thou hadst
	<i>eras</i>	he had
<i>Amatus</i>	<i>fueras</i>	we had
	<i>erat</i>	ye had
	<i>fuerat</i>	they had

berles.D

Future
Plur. 1 Sing.

1	<i>Amabo</i>	I shall
2	<i>Amabis</i>	thou shalt
3	<i>Amabit</i>	he shall
1	<i>Amabimus</i>	we shall
2	<i>Amabitis</i>	ye shall
3	<i>Amabunt</i>	they shall

lober

<i>Amabo</i>	I shall be
<i>Amaberis</i>	thou shalt be
<i>Amabere</i>	
<i>Amabitur</i>	he shall be
<i>Amabimur</i>	we shall be
<i>Amabimini</i>	ye shall be
<i>Amabuntur</i>	they shall be

lober

The Imperative Mood hath one onely Tense,
viz. the Present Tense.

Present Tense
Plur. 1 Sing.

2	<i>Amare</i>	Love thou
3	<i>Amare</i>	let him love
1	<i>Amemus</i>	let us love
2	<i>Amare</i>	love ye
3	<i>Amant</i>	let them love

<i>Amare</i>	Be thou
<i>Amator</i>	let him be
<i>Ametur</i>	let us be
<i>Amamur</i>	be ye
<i>Amamini</i>	let them be
<i>Amantur</i>	let them be

lober

The

The Potential Mood.

Present tense Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Amem	I may	love	Amer	I may	be loved
	2 Ames	thou maist		Ameris	thou maist	
	3 Amet	he may		Ametur	he may	
	1 Amemus	we may		Amemur	we may	
	2 Amatū	ye may		Ameamini	ye may	
	3 Amant	they may		Amentur	they may	
Imperfect. Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Amarem	I might (est)	love	Amarer	I might	be loved
	2 Amares	thou might-		Amareris	thou might-	
	3 Amaret	he might		Amarere	(est)	
	1 Amaremus	we might		Amareretur	he might	
	2 Amaretis	ye might		Amaremur	we might	
	3 Amarent	they might		Amaremini	ye might	
				Amarentur	they might	
Preterperfect. Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Amaverim	I might	have loved	Amatus	I might	have been loved
	2 Amaveris	thou might- (est)		fuerim	thou might-	
	3 Amaveris	he might		fueris	(est)	
	1 Amaverimus	we (might)		fuerit	he might	
	2 Amaveritis	ye might		fueritis	we might	
	3 Amaverint	they might		fuerint	ye might	
				fuerint	they might	
Preterpluperfect. Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Amavissem	I might	had loved	Amatus	I might	have had been loved
	2 Amavisses	thou might- (est)		fuissem	thou might-	
	3 Amavisset	he might		fuisset	(est)	
	1 Amavissemus	we (might)		fuissemus	he might	
	2 Amavissetis	ye might		fuissetis	we might	
	3 Amavissent	they might		fuisissent	ye might	
				fuisissent	they might	

Future

Future
Plur. 1 Sing.Present
ImperfectPreterperfect
and
Preterperfect
FutureOf the
Future
Of the
Future

Future Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Amvero</i> I may	love hereafter	<i>Amatus</i>	<i>ero</i> I may	be loved hereafter
	2 <i>Amaveris</i> thou mayst			<i>fuero</i> thou mayst	
	3 <i>Amaverit</i> he may			<i>eris</i> he may	
	1 <i>Amaverimus</i> we may			<i>fueris</i> we may	
	2 <i>Amaveritis</i> ye may			<i>erit</i> ye may	
	3 <i>Amaverint</i> they may			<i>fuert</i> they may	
			<i>Amati</i>	<i>erimus</i> we may	
				<i>fucriinus</i> ye may	
				<i>eritis</i> ye may	
				<i>fuertitis</i> they may	
				<i>erint</i> they may	
				<i>fuertint</i>	

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect tense	<i>Amare</i>	to love	<i>Amari</i>	to be loved.
Præterperf. and Præterplup.	<i>Amavisse</i>	to have or had loved	<i>Amatum esse vel fuisse</i>	to have or had been loved
Future	<i>Amaturus esse</i>	to love hereafter	<i>Amatum iri, vel Amandum esse</i>	to be loved hereafter.

Gerunds.

Amandum, of loving, or of being loved.
Amando, in loving, or of being loved.
Amandum, to love, or to be loved.

Supines.

Amatum to love, *Amatu*, to be beloved.

Participles.

Of the Present tense	}	<i>Amans</i> , loving.
Future in <i>rim</i> .		<i>Amaturus</i> , to love.
Of the Preter tense		<i>Amatus</i> , loved.
Future in <i>du</i> ,		<i>Amandus</i> , to be loved.

Chap. 26. Of the forms of the Second Conjugation.

Verba in (o) se- Verbs in (o) of
cunda Conjugatione the second Con-
jugationis formantur jugation be for-
m'd like Doceo.

Verba in (or) se- Verbs in (or) of
cunda Conjugatione the second Con-
jugationis formantur jugation be for-
m'd like Doceor.

Doceo, docet, docui, docere, doctum.

Doceor { doctus, } do- { sum } docere
or, { docere, } {tus} {fui}

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense
Plur. 1 Sing.
1 Doceo
2 Doces
3 Docet

I teach
thou teachest
he teacheth

1 Docemus
2 Docetis
3 Docent

we teach
ye teach
they teach

Doceor

I am taught
thou art taught

{ Doceris }

{ Docere }

{ Docetur }

{ Docemur }

{ Docemini }

{ Docentur }

he is taught
we are taught
ye are taught
they are taught

Imperfect.
Plur. 1 Sing.

1 Docebam
2 Docebas
3 Docebat

I did
thou didst
he did

1 Docebamus
2 Docebatis
3 Docebant

we did
ye did
they did

Docebar

I was
thou wast

{ Docebaris }

{ Docebas }

{ Docebatur }

{ Docebamur }

{ Docebamini }

{ Docebantur }

he was
we were
ye were
they were

Preterperfect.
Plur. 1 Sing.

1 Docui
2 Docuisti
3 Docuit

I have
thou hast
he hath

1 Docuimus
2 Docuistis
3 Docuerunt

we have
ye have
they have

{ sum }

{ fui }

{ es }

{ fuisti }

{ est }

{ fuit }

{ sumus }

{ fuimus }

{ estis }

{ fuistis }

{ sunt }

{ fuerunt }

{ fuere }

I have
thou hast
he hath

we have
ye have

they have

Preter-

Preterperfect.
Plur. 1 Sing.

Future
Plur. 1 Sing.

Present tense.
Plur. 1 Sing.

Present tense.
Plur. 1 Sing.

Preterpluperf. Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Docueram	I had	taught	D ^{plur}	eram	I have	been taught
	2	Docueras	thou hadst			fueras	thou hadst	
	3	Docuerat	he had			fuerat	he had	
	1	Docueramus	we had			eramus	we had	
	2	Docueratis	ye had			fueratis	ye had	
	3	Docuerant	they had			erant	they had	

Future Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Docēbo	I will	teach	D ^{plur}	Docēbor	I will be taught	be taught
	2	Docēbis	thou wilt			Docēberis	thou wilt be taught	
	3	Docēbit	he will			Docēbitur	he will be taught	
	1	Docēbimus	we will			Docēbimur	we will be taught	
	2	Docēbitis	ye will			Docēbimini	ye will be taught	
	3	Docēbunt	they will			Docēbuntur	they will be taught	

The Imperative Mood.

Present tense. Plur. 1 Sing.	2	{	Docē	Teach thou	taught	{	Docēre	Be thou
			Docete				Docetor	
	3	{	Docēas	let him teach		{	Docēatur	let him be
			Docētis				Docetor	
	1	{	Docēamur	Let us teach		{	Docēamur	Let us be
			Docetis	teach ye			Docemini	be ye
	2	{	Docelote			{	Doceminor	
			Docelatis	let them teach			Docemini	let them
	3	{	Docent			{	Docentur	(be)

The Potential Mood.

Present tense. Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Docēam	I may	teach	D ^{plur}	Docēor	I may	be taught
	2	Docēas	thou maist			Docēaris	thou maist	
	3	Docēat	he may			Docēare		
	1	Docēamus	we may			Docēatur	he may	
	2	Docēatis	ye may			Docēamur	we may	
	3	Docēant	they may			Docēamini	ye may	
						Docēantur	they may	

Imper-

Imperfect. Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Docerem I might	teach	Do. erer I might	be taught
	2 Do. eres thou mightest		Doceris thou mightest	
	3 Doceret he might		Do. erere (est)	
	1 Doceremus we might		Doceretur he might	
	2 Doceretis ye might		Doceremur we might	
	3 Docerent they might		Doceremini ye might	
			Docerentur they might	

Preterperfect. Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Docuerim I might	have taught	Docui I might	have been taught
	2 Docueris thou mightest		fuerim	
	3 Docuerit he might		fueris (est)	
	1 Docuerimus we might		fuerit	
	2 Docueritis ye might		fueritis	
	3 Docuerint they might		fuerint	

Preterperfect. Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Docuissim I might	have had taught	Docuissim I might	have had been taught
	2 Docuisses thou mightest		Docuisses	
	3 Docuisset he might		Docuisset (est)	
	1 Docuissimus we might		Docuisset	
	2 Docuissetis ye might		Docuissetis	
	3 Docuissent they might		Docuissent	

Future Plur. I Sing.	1 Docuero	I may	teach hereafter	Deſu	ero	I may	be taught hereafter
	2 Docueris	thou mayest			ſuero	thou maſt	
	3 Docueris	he may			eris	he may	
	1 Docuerimus	we may			ſueris	we e may	
	2 Docueritis	ye may			erimus	ye may	
	3 Docuerint	they may			ſueritis	they may	

The Infinitive Mood.

Preſent and Imperfect tenſe } *Doceri* { to teach } *Doceri* { to be taught.

Preterp. and Preterpl. } *Docuiſſe* { to have or had taught } *Docuiſſe* { to have or had been taught.

Future } *Docſum eſſe* { to teach } *Docſum ire, vel Docendum eſſe* { to be taught hereafter.

Gerunds.

Docendi, of teaching, or of being taught.
Docendo, in teaching, or of being taught.
Docendum, to teach, or to be taught.

Supines.

Docſum, to teach, *Docſu*, to be taught.

Participles.

Of the Preſent tenſe } *Docens* { teaching } Of the Preter tenſe } *Docſus* { taught.

Of the Future in *ſus* } *Docſurus* { about to teach } Of the Future in *du* } *Docendus* { to be taught.

Chap. 27. Of the form of the Third Conjugation.

Verba in (o) ter-
tiae Conjugationis
formantur sicut *Legō.*

Verbs in (o) of
the third Con-
jugation be for-
med like *Legō.*

Verba in (or) ter-
tiae Conjugationis
formantur sicut
Legor.

Verbs in (or) of
the third Conju-
gation be for-
med like *Legor.*

legis, legere, lectum.

Legor {legeris} lectus {sum} {fui} {leis}.

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense Plur. I Sing.	1	<i>Ego</i>	I read	<i>Legor</i>	I am	}	read
	2	<i>Legis</i>	thou readest		thou art		
	3	<i>Legit</i>	he readeth				
	1	<i>Legimus</i>	we		he is		
	2	<i>Legitis</i>	ye		we were		
	3	<i>Legunt</i>	they		ye were		

Imperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1	<i>Legebam</i>	I did read	<i>Legebam</i>	I was	}	read
	2	<i>Legebas</i>	thou readest		thou wast		
	3	<i>Legebat</i>	he did read				
	1	<i>Legebamus</i>	we did		he was		
	2	<i>Legebatis</i>	ye did		we were		
	3	<i>Legebant</i>	they did		ye were		

Perfect tense Plur. I Sing.	1	<i>Legi</i>	I have	<i>Legi</i>	I have	}	been read
	2	<i>Legisti</i>	thou hast		thou hast		
	3	<i>Legit</i>	he hath		he hath		
	1	<i>Legimus</i>	we have		we have		
	2	<i>Legistis</i>	ye have		ye have		
	3	<i>Legerunt</i>	they have		they have		

Plur. 4 Sing.	1	Legeram	I had	quæ	Lectus	eram	I had	sem read
	2	Legeras	thou hadst			fueram	thou hadst	
	3	Legerat	he had			eras	he had	
	1	Legeramus	we had			fueras	we had	
	2	Legeratis	ye had			erat	ye had	
	3	Legerant	they had			fuerat	they had	
Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Legam	I will	read	Lecti	eram	I shall	be read
	2	Leges	thou wilt			fueram	thou shalt	
	3	Leget	he will			eras	he shall	
	1	Legemus	we will			fueramus	we shall	
	2	Legetis	ye will			eratis	ye shall	
	3	Legent	they will			fueratis	they shall	

The Imperative Mood.

Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Legere	Read thou	read	Legere	Be thou	4
	2	Legito	let him read		Legitor	let him be	
	3	Legat	let him read		Legator	let him be	
	1	Legamus	let us read		Legitor	let us be	
	2	Legite	read ye		Legamur	Be ye	
	3	Legant	let them read		Legimini	let them be	
Plur. 2 Sing.	1	Legite	let them read	read	Leguntur	let them be	4
	2	Legite	let them read		Leguntur	let them be	
	3	Legant	let them read		Leguntur	let them be	
	1	Legite	let them read		Leguntur	let them be	
	2	Legite	let them read		Leguntur	let them be	
	3	Legant	let them read		Leguntur	let them be	

The Potential Mood.

Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Legam	I may	read	Legar	I may	be read
	2	Legas	thou mayst		Legaris	thou mayst	
	3	Legat	he may		Legars	he may	
	1	Legamus	we may		Legatur	we may	
	2	Legatis	ye may		Legamur	ye may	
	3	Legant	they may		Legamini	they may	
Plur. 2 Sing.	1	Legam	I may	read	Legar	I may	be read
	2	Legas	thou mayst		Legaris	thou mayst	
	3	Legat	he may		Legars	he may	
	1	Legamus	we may		Legatur	we may	
	2	Legatis	ye may		Legamur	ye may	
	3	Legant	they may		Legamini	they may	

Imperfect. Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Legerem	I might
	2	Legeres	thou mightest
	3	Legeret	he might
	1	Legeremus	we might
	2	Legeretis	ye might
	3	Legerent	they might

read

Legerer	I might
Legereris	thou mightest
Legerere	est
Legeretur	he might
Legeremur	we might
Legeremini	ye might
Legerentur	they might

Preterperfect. Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Legerim	I might
	2	Legeris	thou mightest
	3	Legerit	he might
	1	Legerimus	we might
	2	Legeritis	ye might
	3	Legerint	they might

have read

fieri	I might
fuerim	
fis	thou mightest
fueris	est
fit	he might
fuerit	
simus	we might
fuerimus	
sitis	ye might
fueritis	
sint	they might
fuerint	

Preterpluperf. Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Legissem	I might
	2	Legisses	thou mightest
	3	Legisset	he might
	1	Legissemus	we might
	2	Legissetis	ye might
	3	Legissent	they might

have had read

essem	I might
fuissem	
esses	thou mightest
fuisset	est
esset	he might
fuisset	
essemus	we might
fuissemus	
essetis	ye might
fuissetis	
essent	they might
fuisissent	

Future. Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Legero	I may
	2	Legeris	thou maist
	3	Legerit	he may
	1	Legerimus	we may
	2	Legeritis	ye may
	3	Legerint	they may

read hereafter

ero	I may
fuero	
eris	thou maist
fueris	
erit	he may
fuerit	
erimus	we may
fuerimus	
eritis	ye may
fueritis	
erint	they may
fuerint	

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and
Imperfect
tense } *Legere* { to read } *Legi* { to be read.

Preterp. } to have or } *Legisse esse* } to have or had
and } had } vel *fuisse* } been read
Preterpl. } read }

Future } *Lecturum esse* } to read } *Lectum ire, vel* } to be read
 } } hereafter } *Legendum esse* } hereafter.

Gerunds.

Legendi, of reading, or of being read.

Legends, in reading, of of being read.

Legendum, to read, or to be read.

Supines.

Leſum, to read, *Leſu*, to be read.

Participles.

Of the Pre- sent tense	} <i>regens</i> {	standing	Of the Preter tense	} <i>latus</i> {	standing

Of the Fu- } *Legimus* } to read | Of the } *Legendus* } to be read,
ture in } *in die* }

Chap. 28. Of the form of the Fourth Conjugation.

Verba in (o) quartæ Conjugationis variantur sicut <i>Audio</i> .	Verbs in (o) of the fourth Conjugation be varied like <i>Audio</i> .	Verba in (er) quartæ Conjugationis variantur sicut <i>Audior</i> .	Verbs in (er) of the fourth Conjugation be varied like <i>Audior</i> .
--	--	--	--

Audio, audi, audire, auditum.

Ah- audis (audi- sum) audi- dibz, audire (es) fui (ti)

Present Imperf.
Plur. I Sing.

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Audis</i>	I hear	}	<i>Audior</i>	I am	}
	2 <i>Audu</i>	thou hearest		<i>Audis</i>	thou art	
	3 <i>Audit</i>	he heareth		<i>Audire</i>	he is	
	1 <i>Audimus</i>	we		<i>Auditis</i>	you are	
	2 <i>Auditis</i>	ye		<i>Audimini</i>	ye are	
	3 <i>Audiunt</i>	they		<i>Audiuntur</i>	they are	

Future
Plur. I Sing.

Present Imperfect Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Audiebam</i>	I did	}	<i>Audiebar</i>	I was	}
	2 <i>Audiebas</i>	thou didst		<i>Audiebaris</i>	thou wast	
	3 <i>Audiebat</i>	he did		<i>Audiebant</i>	they were	
	1 <i>Audiebamus</i>	we did		<i>Audiebamini</i>	ye were	
	2 <i>Audiebatis</i>	ye did		<i>Audiebantur</i>	they were	
	3 <i>Audiebant</i>	they did				

Present tense
Plur. I Sing.

Preterperfect Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Audivi</i>	I have	}	<i>sum</i>	I have	}
	2 <i>Audisti</i>	thou hast		<i>fui</i>	thou hast	
	3 <i>Audivit</i>	he hath		<i>fuisse</i>	he hath	
	1 <i>Audivimus</i>	we have		<i>fuit</i>	we have	
	2 <i>Audivistis</i>	ye have		<i>fuerunt</i>	ye have	
	3 <i>Audiverunt</i>	they have		<i>fuerunt</i>	they have	

Present tense
Plur. I Sing.

Preter

Or of
the Com-
be va-
ludin.

audin-
i.

Precerpt.
Plur. 1 Sing.

1	Audiveram	I had
2	Audiveras	thou hadst
3	Audiverat	he had
1	Audiverimus	we had
2	Audiveratis	ye had
3	Audiverant	they had

Audire	Audiram	I had
	Audiramus	thou hadst
	Audieras	he had
Audire	Audierat	we had
	Audieratis	ye had
	Audierant	they had

been heard

Future
Plur. 1 Sing.

1	Audiam	I shall
2	Audies	thou shalt
3	Audiet	he shall
1	Audiamus	we shall
2	Audietis	ye shall
3	Audient	they shall

Audiar	I shall be
Audieris	thou shalt be
Audietur	he shall be
Audiamur	we shall be
Audietis	ye shall be
Audiantur	they shall be

heard

The Imperative Mood.

Present tense
Plur. 1 Sing.

1	Audi	Hear thou
2	Audito	let him hear
3	Audiat	let us hear
1	Audiamus	hear ye
2	Audite	let them hear
3	Audiant	

Audi	Be thou
Auditor	let him be
Audiat	let us be
Audiamur	be ye
Audimini	let them be
Audiantur	

heard

The Potential Mood.

Present tense
Plur. 1 Sing.

1	Audiam	I may
2	Audias	thou mayst
3	Audiat	he may
1	Audiamus	we may
2	Audietis	ye may
3	Audiant	they may

Audiar	I may
Audiaris	thou mayst
Audietur	he may
Audiamur	we may
Audietis	ye may
Audiantur	they may

be heard

Imperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Audirem I might	hear	Audirer I might	Audireris thou might. (est) Audirere Audiretur he might Audiremur we might Audiremini ye might Audirentur they might
	2 Audires thou mightest			
	3 Audires he might			
Imperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Audirémus we might	have heard	Audivissim I might	Audivissim I might Audivissis thou might. (est) Audivissis he might Audivissis he might Audivissis he might Audivissis we might Audivissis ye might Audivissis they might Audivissis they might
	2 Audiretis ye might			
	3 Audirent they might			
Preterperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Audiverim I might	have heard	Audivissim I might	Audivissim I might Audivissis thou might. (est) Audivissis he might Audivissis he might Audivissis he might Audivissis we might Audivissis ye might Audivissis they might Audivissis they might
	2 Audiveris thou mightest			
	3 Audiveris he might			
Preterperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Audiverimus we might	have heard	Audivissim I might	Audivissim I might Audivissis thou might. (est) Audivissis he might Audivissis he might Audivissis he might Audivissis we might Audivissis ye might Audivissis they might Audivissis they might
	2 Audiveritis ye might			
	3 Audiverint they might			
Preterperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Audivissem I might	have heard	Audivissim I might	Audivissim I might Audivissis thou might. (est) Audivissis he might Audivissis he might Audivissis he might Audivissis we might Audivissis ye might Audivissis they might Audivissis they might
	2 Audivisses thou mightest			
	3 Audivisset he might			
Preterperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Audivissemus we might	have heard	Audivissim I might	Audivissim I might Audivissis thou might. (est) Audivissis he might Audivissis he might Audivissis he might Audivissis we might Audivissis ye might Audivissis they might Audivissis they might
	2 Audivissetis ye might			
	3 Audivissent they might			
Future Plur. I Sing.	1 Audivero I may	hear hereafter	Audivissim I might	Audivissim I might Audivissis thou might. (est) Audivissis he might Audivissis he might Audivissis he might Audivissis we might Audivissis ye might Audivissis they might Audivissis they might
	2 Audiveris thou maist			
	3 Audiverit he may			
Future Plur. I Sing.	1 Audiverimus we may	hear hereafter	Audivissim I might	Audivissim I might Audivissis thou might. (est) Audivissis he might Audivissis he might Audivissis he might Audivissis we might Audivissis ye might Audivissis they might Audivissis they might
	2 Audiveritis ye may			
	3 Audiverint they may			

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and
Imperfect
tense } *Audire* } to hear } *Audiri* } to be heard.

Præterperf.
and
Præterplup. } *Audivisse* } to have
heard } *Auditum
esse vel
fuisse* } to have or had been
heard.

Future } *Auditurum
esse* } to hear
hereafter } *Auditum iri, vel
Audiendum esse* } to be heard
hereafter.

Gerunds.

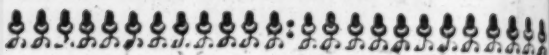
Audiendū, of hearing, or of being heard.
Audiendo, in hearing, or of being heard.
Audiendum, to hear, or to be heard.

Supines.

Auditum, to hear, *Auditu*, to be heard.

Participles.

Of the Present tense } *Audiens*, hearing.
Future in *rus*. } *Auditurus*, to hear.
Of the Præter tense } *Auditus*, heard.
Future in *urus*. } *Audiendus*, to be heard.



As in Praesenti.

OR,

WILLIAM LILIES Rules of the
Preterperfect tenses and Su-
pines of Verbs.

Chap. 29.

Of the Preterperfect tenses of Simple Verbs.

As in pra-
senti con-
tains Rules
of the
Preter ten-
ses of Sim-
ple Verbs.

I.
In the first
Conjugati-
on *As* ma-
keth *avi*.

I. **A**S in the Present tense, makes the Preterper-
fect tense in *avi*; as, *Nas*, to swim, *nata-*
vocito vocitas, to call often, *vocitavi*. Except 1. *Lavi*,
to wash: *juvo juvi*, to help: *nexo nexui*, to
knit: *seco secui*, to cut: *neco necui*, to kill: *mico mi-*
cui, to shine: *plico plivui*, to fold: *frico fricui*, to rub:
domo domui, to tame: *tono tonui*, to thunder: *son-*
sonui, to sound: *crepo crepui*, to crack: *velo velui*, to
forbid: *cubo cubui*, to lye down: which seldome
makes *avi*: *Do das*, to give, will make *dedit*: and
sto, stas to stand, *steti*.

2
In the se-
cond *Es*
makes *ui*.

II. **E**S in the Present tense, makes the Preterper-
fect tense in *ui*; as, *nigreo nigres nigrui*, to wax
black Except 1. *Jubeo jubes jussi*, to bid: *sorbeo sorbe-*
forbui & *sorpsi*, to sup: *mulceo mulci*, to allwage: *luc-*
luxi, to shine: *sedeo sedi*, to sit: *video vidi*, to see: *prae-*
deo prandi, to dine: *strideo stridi*, to make a noise: *su-*
deo suasi, to perswade: *video risi*, to laugh: and *arde-*
arisi, to burn.

2 The first syllable is doubled in these four fol-
lowing, *viz*. *Pendo pependi*, to hang: *mordeo mo-*
mordi, to bite.

Sponde

As in Prasenti.

SIVE,

GULIELMI LILII Regulæ
de Præteritis & Supinis
Verborum.

Cap. 29.

*De Præteritis Verborum Simplicium.*I. **A** Siu Prasenti perfectum format in avi ;
ut nō nas navi, vocito vocitas vocitavi.

1 Deme lavo lavi, juvo, javi, nexōque nexui ;

Et seco quod secui, neco quod necui, mie o verbum

Quod micui, plico quod plicui, frico quod fricui dat :

Sic domo quod donui, tono quod tonui, sono verbum

Quod sonui, crepo quod crepui, veto quod vetui dat :

Atque cubo cubui ; rari hęc formantur in avi.

2 Do das ritē dedi, sto stas, formare steri vult.

Regulæ de
Præteritis
Verborum
Simplicium.1.
In prima
Conjuga-
tione *as*
format *avi*.II. **E** Siu prasenti perfectum format ui dans,
ut nigreo nigres nigrui. 1 Jubeo excipe jussi,

Sorbeo sorbui habet sorpsi quoque, mulceo mulci ;

Luceo vult luxi, sedeo sedi, videoque

Vult vidi : sed prandeo prandi, strideo stridi,

Suado suasi, rideo risi, habet ardeo & arsi.

2 Quatuor his infra geminatur syllaba prima ;

Pendeo namque pependi, mordeo vultque momordi.

2.
In Secundo
format
ui.

Spondeo

*Spondeo, spondi, to promise : tondeo, tondi, to clip
or shear.*

3 If *l* or *r* stand next before *geo*, *geo* is turned into *gi*, as, *urgeo, urxi, to urge : mulgeo, mulsi, & mulxi, to milk ; frigeo, frixi, to be cold : lugeo, luxi, to lament, augeo & auxi, to encrease.*

4 *Fleo, fles, to weep, makes fleui : leo, les, to be-
smear, levi, and its compound deleo, makes deleui,
to blot out : pleo, ples, to fill, makes pleui.* 5. *Neo,
nes, to spin, nevi : maneo, to tarry, makes mansi.* 6 *Tor-
queo, to wrest, torxi.* 7 And *hereo, to stick, haxi.*

8 *Veo* is made *vi* ; as, *Ferveo, servi, to be hot :*
but *vivio, to wink, and its compound conniveo, to
close and open the eyes, makes vivi, and vixi : cico, to
trouble, makes civi : and vico, to bind, vievi.*

In the third,
to makes *bi*.

III. **T**He third Conjugation will form the Pre-
terperfect tense, as is plain here, *Bo* is made
bi, as, *Lambo, lambi, to lick, Except i Scribe, scripsi, to
write : nubeo, nupsi, to be married to a man : and cum-
bo, cubui, to lie down.*

Co, ci.

Co is made *ci*, as, *Vinco, vici, to overcome.* But *i Par-
co* makes *peperi* and *parsi, to spare : dico dixi, to say,
and duco, duxi, to lead.*

Do, di.

Do is made *di*, as, *mando mandi, to ent : but sciudo,
to cut, makes scidi : findo, fidi, to cleave : fundo, fudi
to pour out : tundo, tundi, to knock : pendo, pendi,
to weigh : tendo, tetendi, to stretch : pedo, ppedi, to
fart : cado, cecidi, to fall : cado cecidi, to beat : cedo,
cessi, to give place : vado, to go away : rado, to shave :
Lado, to hurt : ludo, to play : divido, to divide : cru-
do, to thrust : claudio, to shut : plaudo, to clap hands :
rodo, to gnaw : change alwayes *do* into *fi*.*

Go, xi.

Go is made *xi*, as, *jungo, to join, junxi : but i be-
fore go makes gi ; as, spargo, sparsi, to sprinkle : lego,
to read, makes legi : and ago, to do, egi : tango,
tetigi,*

Spondeo, habere spospondi; condeco, vultque conondi.

3 L vel r ante geo, si fiet, geo vertitur in si
Urgeo ut urfi; mulgeo, mulsi, dat quoque mulxi;
Frigeo, frixi; lugeo, luxi; habet augeo, & auxi.

4 Dat Fleo, fles, fleui; leo, les, leui; indeq; natum
Deleo, deleui; pleo, ples, pleui. 5 Neo, neui;
Amanco, mansi, formatur. 6 Torqueo, torxi.

7 Hæreo vult hæsi. 8 Veo fit vi; ut Ferveo, ferui,
Niveo, & inde satum possit conniveo, nivi,
Et nixi; cieo, civi; vicque vicui.

Tertia Præteritum formabit, ut hic manifestum. In Tertia,
Bo fit bi. Bo fit bi.
Bo fit bi; ut Lambo, lambi. Scribo excipe scrip-
Et nubo, nupsi; antiquum cumbo, cubui dat. (si;

Cos fit ci; ut Vinco, vici; vult pareo, peperci,
Et passi; dico, dixi; duco quoque duxi. Co, ci.

Do fit di; ut Mando, mandi; sed sciando, scidi, dat, Do, di.
Findo, fidi : fundo, fudi : tundo, turduque :
Pendo, pependi : tendo, retendi : pedo, pepedi :
Junge cado, cecidi; pro verbero cædo, cecidi :
Cedo pro discedere, siue locum dare cessi.
Vado, rado, lædo, ludo, divido, trudo,
Claudo, plaudo, rodo, ex do semper faciunt si.

Go fit xi; ut jungo, junxi : sed r ante go vult si : Go, xi.
Ut spargo, sparsi : lego, legi : & ago facit egi :

Dat

tetegi, to touch: *pungo*, to prick, makes *punxi* and *pupugi*: *frango fregi*, to break: *pango pepigi*, to make a bargain: *pango pegi*, to joyne: *pango panxi*, to sing.

Ho, xi.

Ho is made *xi*; as, *Traho*, *traxi*, to draw: and *veho* *uxi*, to carry.

Lo, ui

Lo is made *ui*; as, *Colo colui*, to till: but *Psallo*, to sing: and *sallo*, to sale, make *salvi*: *vello*, to pluck up, makes *velli* and *vulsi*: *fallo*, to deceive, makes *felli*: *cello*, to break, *ceculi*: and *pello*, to drive away, *puli*.

Mo, vi.

Mo is made *ui*, as, *Vomo vomui*, to vomit: but *emo*, makes *emi*, to buy: *como compsi*, to comb: *promp* *prompsi*, to draw: *demo dempsi*, to take away: *suo* *sumpsi*, to take: *premo pressi*, to press.

No, ui.

No is made *vi*; as, *sino sivi* to suffer. Except *Temo* *tempsi*, to despise: *sterno stravi*, to stress: *sperno* *sprevi*, to despise: *lingo levi*, *lini* and *livi*, to dawb: *cerno crevi*, to discern. *Gigno* makes *genui*, to beget: *pono posui*, to put: *cano cecui*, to sing.

Po, psi.

Po is made *psi*; as, *scalpo*, *scalpsi*, to scratch: *rumpo rupi*, to break: *strepo strepui*, to make a noise: *crepo crepui*, to crack.

Quo, qui.

Quo is made *qui*; as, *linquo liqui*, to leave. Except *coquo coxi*, to boil.

Ro, vi.

Ro is made *vi*, as, *sevo*, to plant or sow, makes *sevi*, which changing the signification, rather maketh *serui*: *verro*, to bruth. *verri* and *verxi*: *uro ussi*, to burn: *gero gessi*, to act, or bear: *quero quasivi*, to seek: *terro trivi*, to swear: *curro cucurvi*, to run.

So, sivi.

So will make *sivi*; as, *accerso*, to go to call, *arcesso*, to go to call: *incesso*, to rebile: and *lacecco sivi*, to provoke. Except *capesso*, to offer to take, which makes *capessi* and *capessivi*: *facecco*, to go about to do: and *viso*, to visit, makes *visi*: but *pinso*, to bake, will have *pinxui*.

Sco, vi.

Sco is made *vi*; as, *pasto pavi*, to feed: but *posco*, will have *poposci*, to require.

Disco,

Dat tango tetigi, pango punxi pupugique;
Dat frango fregi, cum signat pango pacisci
Vult pepigi, pro iungo, pegi, pro cano panxi.

Ho fit xi, traho ceu traxi, docet & veho vxi.

Ho, xi.

Lo fit ui, colo ceu colui: psallo excipe cum p
Et fallo fini p, nam falli format utranque;
Dat vello velli; vulsi quoque, fallo fefelli;
Cello pro frango ceculi; pello pepulique.

Lo, ui.

Mo fit ui, vomo ceu vomui: sed emō facit emi;
Como petit compsi, promo prompsi, adjice demō
Quod format dempsi, sumo sumpsi, premo pressi.

Mo, ui.

No fit vi, sino ceu fivi, temno excipe tempsi,
Dat sterno stravi, sperno spreui, lino levi;
Iaculum lini & livi, cerno quoque crevi:
Gigno, pono, cano, genui, posui, cecini. dant.

No, vi.

Po fit psi, ut scalpo scalpsi, rumpo excipe rupi,
Et strepo: quod format strepui, crepo quod crepui dnt.

Po, psi.

Qo fit qui, ut linquo liqui, coquo demito coxi.

Qo, qui.

Ro fit vi, sero ceu proplanto & semino sevi,
Quod serui melius dat mutans significatum,
Vult verro verti & versi, uro ulli, gero gelli,
Quiro quæsiui, gero trivi, curro cucurri,

Ro, vi.

So, velut atcerro, arcesso, incesso, atque lacecco,
Formabit livi, sed tolle capecco capecci,
Quodque capeccivi facit, atque lacecco facecci,
Sic viso visi, sed pinso pinsui habebit.

So, so.

Sco fit vi, ut pascō pavi, vult posco poposci;

Sco, vi.

Vult

Disco, didici, to learn, and quiesco, quexi, to nod with the head.

Fi, ti.

To is made ti; as, verto verti, to turn: Sisto, stiti, to make to stand: but mitto makes misi, to send: peto will form petivi, to ask: sterto, stertui, to snore: meto messui, to mow.

Esse, exi.

Esse is made exi; as, flecto, flexi, to bend: but pecto, to comb, makes pexi, and pexui: andnecto, to knit: nexi and nexui.

Vo, vi.

Xo, xui.

Vo is made vi; as, volvo, volvi, to twirl over: Except vivo, vixi, to live. Nexo, makes nexui, to knit: and texo, texui, to weave.

Cio, ci.

Cio is made ci; as, facio, feci, to make: jacio, jeci, to cast: but lacio, to allure, makes lexi: and specio, to behold, spexi.

Dio, di.

Gio, gi.

Pio, pi.

Dio is made di; as, fodio, to dig, makes fodi.

Gio is made gi; as, fugio, fugi, to avoid.

Pio is made pi; as, capio, cepi, to take, Except, cupio, cupivi, to desire: and rapio, rapui, to snatch: and sapio, sapui, or sapiivi, to be wise.

Rio, ri.

Tio, ti.

Rio is made ri; as, pario, peperio, to bring forth.

Tio is made ti; as, quatio, quassui, to shake: which preterperfect tense is seldom used.

Uo, ui.

Uo is made ui; as, statuo, statui, to appoint: but pluo, to rain, makes pluui and pluui: struo, struxi, to build: fluo, fluxi, to flow.

The fourth
makes iui.

IV. **T**He fourth Conjugation makes *ui* in the present tense, & *iui* in the preterperfect tense; as, scio, scis, scivi, to know. Except venio, veni, to come:ambio, ampsi, to exchange: rancio, ransi, to be hoarse: sarcio, sarfi, to stuff: sarcio, sarfi, to patch: sepio, sepsi, to hedge: sentio, sensi, to perceive: fulcio, fulsi, to nudge: prop: haurio, haufi, to draw: sancio, sanxi, to edify: vincio, vinxi, to bind: salio, salui, to leap: and amicio, amicui, to clothe. We seldom use, ambio, hauriui, amicitui, &c.

Chap.

Vult didici disco, quæxi formare quinisco.

To fit ti; ut verto verti, sed sisto noletur
 Prefacio stare Activum, nam jure stiri dat.
 Dat mitto misi, peto vult formare petivi.
 Sterro sterui habet, meto messi. Ab eâto fit exi;
 ut, besto, flexi: pecto dat pexui, habetque:
 Pexi; etiam pecto dat nexui, habet quoque nexi.

To, ti.

Ecto, exi.

Vo fit vi; ut, volvo volvi: vivo excipe vixi.
 Nexo ut nexui habet, sic texo texui habebit.

Vo, vi.

Xo, xui.

Fit cio, ci; ut, facio feci, jacio quoque jeci:
 Antiquum lacio lexi, specio quoque spexi.

Cio, ci.

Dio, di.

Gio, gi.

Fit dio, di; ut fodio, fodi. Gio, seu sugio, gi.

Fit pio, pi; ut, capio, cepi, cupio excipe pivi:
 Et rapio rapui, sapio sapui, atque sapivi.

Pio, pi.

Fit rio, ri; ut, pario, peperî. Tio sî Geminans:
 ut quatio quassi, quod vix reperitur in usu.

Rio, ri.

Tio, ti.

Denique uo fit ui; ut, statuo statui: pluo pluvi
 Format sivi pluvi: struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.

Uo, ui.

IV **Q**uarta dat is, ivi, ut monstrat scio scis tibi scivi In quarta
 Excipias venio dans veni, cambia campsi, u format sub

Raucio rausi, ferci. farsî, sarcio farsî,
 Sepio sepsi, sentio sensi, fulcio tulsî:
 Haurio item hausî, sancio sanxi, vincio vinxi:
 Pro salto salio salui, & amicio amiei dat.
 Partius utemur cambivi, haurivi, amicivi,
 Sepivi, sanxivi, sarcivi, atque salivi.

Cap.

Chap. 30.

Of the Preterperfect tense of Compound Verbs.

The simple
and Com-
pound
verbs have
the same
preterper-
fect tense.

Except
1. Words
that double
the first syl-
lable.

2 Plico.

3 Oleo.

4 Pungo.

5 Do, & Sto.

6 Verbs
changing
the first
vowel into e.

THE Simple and the Compound Verb have the same Preterperfect tense; as, *Docui*, *I have taught*: *edocui*, *I have fully taught*, but

1 The syllable, which the simple verb doubleth, is not alwayes doubled in the Compound, except in these three; *præcurro*, to run before: *excurro*, to run out: and *repungo*, to pick again: and in the Compounds of *Do*, to give: *disco*, to learn: *sto*, to stand: and *posco*, to require.

2 *Plico* compounded with *sub* or a Noun, will have *plicavi*; as, *supplico*, to supply: *multiplico*, to multiply: but *apporto*, to apply, *complico*, to fould up: *re-
plico*, to reply: and *explico*, to unfold, will end in *vi*, or *avi*.

3 Though *Oleo*, to smell, makes *olevi*, yet its compounds make rather *olevi*: but *Redoleo*, to smell strong, and *suboleo*, to smell a little, are formed like the simple Verb.

4 All the compounds of *Pungo*, to pick, make *punxi*: but *repungo*, to pick again, makes *repunxi* and *repunxi*.

5 The Compounds of *Do*, when they are of the third Conjugation, make *did*; as, *Credo*, to beleive: *edo*, to set forth: *dedo*, to peild: *reddo*, to restore: *perdo*, to destroy: *abdo*, to hide: *obdo*, to set against: *condo*, to build: *indo*, to put in: *trado*, to deliver: *prodo*, to betray: *vendo*, to sell: But *Abfcondo*, to hide, makes *Abfcondi*.

The Compounds of *Sto*, to stand, make *steti*.

6 These Simple Verbs being compounded do change the first vowel of the Present tense, and Preterperfect tense, and so of all other tenses into *e*, viz.

Dama

Cap. 30.

De Compositorum Verborum Præteritis.

Præteritum dat idem Simplex & Compositivum ;

Simplex &
Compositum
idem habent
Præteritum.

ut docui, edocui monstrat. 1 Sed syllaba semper

Excipe,
1 Geminan-
tia primam
syllabam.

Quam simplex geminat, compositio non geminatur ;

Præterquam tribus his, præcurro, excurro, repungo :

Atque à do, disco, sto, posco, rite creatis.

2 A plico compositum cum sub, vel nomine, ut ista

2 Plico,

applico, multiplico, gaudent formare plicavi :

applico, complico, replico & explico ni, vel in avi.

3 Quamvis vult oleo, simplex olui, tamen inde

3 Olei,

quodvis compositum melius formabit olevi :

simplicis at formam redolet sequitur subolētque.

4 Composita à pungo formabunt omnia punxi,

4 Pungo,

sunt unum pupugi, interdumque repungo repunxi.

5 Natum à do, quando est inflectio tertia, ut addo,

5 Do & su

credo, edo, dedo, reddo, perdo, abdo, vel obdo,

condo, indo, trado, prodo, vendo, didi : at unum

abscondo abscondi. Natum à sto, stas, stiti, habebis.

6 Verbi hæc simplicia præsentis præteritique,

6 Mutatis
primam vo-
calem in e

componantur vocalem primam in e mutant ;

K

Damno

Damno, to condemn: *lallo*, to gibe such: *sacro*, to dedicate: *fallo*, to deceive: *arceo*, to drive away: *traho*, to handle: *fatiscor*, to be weary: *partio*, to divide: *cargo*, to crop: *patro*, to commit: *scando*, to climb: *spargo*, to sprinkle: and *pario*, to bring forth young: whereof two Compounds, *Comperio*, to find out by search: and *reperio*, to find by chance: do make *peri*, and all the rest *perui*: as, *aperio*, to open: *operio*, to cover.

7 *Pasco*.

7 These two compounds of *Pasco*, viz. *Compesco*, to pasture together: and *dispesco*, to drive from pasture, will have *pesui*, the rest will have *pavi*: as, *epasco*, to eat up.

8 Verbs that change the first Vowel into *i*.

8 These Verbs being compounded do change the first vowel every where into *i*, viz. *habeo*, to have: *lateo*, to lye hid: *salio*, to leap: *statuo*, to appoint: *cado*, to fall: *ludo*, to hurt: *pango*, *pegi*, to joyn: *canto*, to sing: *quero*, to seek: *cado*, *cecidi*, to beat: *tango*, to touch: *ego*, to want: *teneo*, to hold: *taceo*, to keep silence: *sapio*, to be wise: and *rapio*, to snatch: as *rapio*, *rapui*, makes *eripio*, *eripui*: but the Compounds of *Cano*, make the preterperse & tense in *ui*; as, *concino*, to agree in one tune, *concinui*.

9 *Placeo*.

9. So of *Placeo*, cometh *displaceo*, to displease: but *complaceo*, to like well: and *perplaceo*, to please thoroughly, do follow the simple Verb.

10 *Pango*.

10 These four Compounds of *pango*, to joyn, do keep *a*, viz. *Depango*, to fasten down: *oppango*, to be fasten to: *circumpango*, to fasten about: and *repango*, to disjoyn.

11 *Maneo*.

11 These four Compounds of *Maneo* *mansui*, to tarry, do make *minui*, viz. *Præmineo*, to excell others: *emineo*, to appear before others: *promineo*, to hang out in sight: and *immineo*, to hang over: but the rest follow the simple Verb.

12 *Scalpo*,
caleo, *falto*.

12 The Compounds of *scalpo*, to scratch: *calco*, to tread: *falto*, to dance: change *a* into *u*; as, *exscal-*

Damno, laeto, sacro, fallo, arceo, tracto, fatiscor,

Partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo, patrioque,

Cujus nata peri duo, comperit & reperit dant;

Cetera sed perui, velut hac aperire, operire.

7 A Pasco, pavi tantum composita notentur

7 Pasco.

Hac duo, compesco, dispesco, pescui habere:

Cetera, ut epasco, servabunt simplicis usum.

8 Hac habeo, lateo, salio, statuo, cado, ludo,

8 Mutantia
primam voca-
lem in i.

Pango dant pegi, cano, quæro, cedo, cecidi,

Tango, egco, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapioque,

Si componantur, vocalem primam in i mutant,

ut rapio rapui; eripio eripui: à Cano natum,

Præteritum per ui, ceu concino, concinui dat.

9 A placeo, sic displiceo; sed simplicis usum

9 Placeo.

Hac duo complaceo, cum perplaceo, bene servant.

10 Composita à pango retinent, a quatuor ista;

10 Pango

Depango, oppango, circumpango, atque repango.

11 A manco mansi, minui dant quatuor ista;

11 Manco.

Præmineo, emineo, cum promineo, immineoque;

Simplicis at verbi servabunt cetera formam.

12 Composita à scalpo, calco, salto, a per u mutant;

12 Scalpo,
cal. o, salto.

po, to carbe : *inculco*, to inculcate ; and *resulto*, to rebound.

13 *Claudo*,
quatio, *lavo*.

13 The Compounds of *Claudo*, to shut: *quatio*, to shake : *lavo* to wash, do cast away a; as, *occludo* to shut fast : *excludo* to shut out, of *claudio*, *Percutio*, to smite, and *excutio*, to shake off, of *quatio* *Proluo*, is, *lui* to wash much : *diluo*, is, *lui*, to purge with washing, of *lavo*.

14 Verbs
that change
the first
vowel of the
present tense
into *i*, but
not of the
Preter tense.

14 These Verbs being compounded, change the first vowel of the Present tense into *i*; but not of the Preterperfect tense ; v. z. *Ago*, to do, *emo*, to buy, *jedio*, to sit, *rego*, to rule, *frango*, to break, *cipio*, to take, *jacio*, to cast, *lacio*, to allure, *specio*, to behold, *premo*, to press, as of *frango*, is made *refringo*, *refregi*, to break open : of *cipio*, *incipio*, *incepi*, to begin : but *perago*, to finish : *fatago*, to be busie about a thing, *coëmo*, to buy together, do follow their simple Verbs. And of *ago*, *dego* to lbe, makes *degi*, and *cogo*, to compel, *coëgi*, as also of *rego*, *pergo* to go forward, makes *perrex*; and *surg* to arise *surrexi*; the middle syllable of the Present tense being taken away.

15 *Facio*,

15 *Facio* changeth nothing, unless it have a Preposition before it, as, *Olfacio*, to smell, *calfacio*, to make hot, and *infacio* to infect.

16 *Lego*.

16 The Compounds of *Lego*, with *re*, *se*, *per*, *pra*, *sub*, *trans*; keep the vowel of the Present tense, the rest change it into *i*: of which *intelligo*, to understand, *diligo* to love, *negligo*, to neglect, make *lexi*, and all the rest make *legi*.

Id tibi demonstrant exculpo, inculco, refulto.

13 *Composita à claudio, quatio, lavo, rejiciunt a;*

13 *Claudio,
quatio, lavo.*

Id docet à claudio, occludo, excludo; à quatioque

P. recutio, excutio; à lavo, proluo, diluo, nata.

14 *Hæc si componas, ago, cmo, sedeo, rego, frango,*

14 *Mutantia
primam
vocalem
presentis in
s, sed non
preteriti.*

Et capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premio, semper

Vocalem primam presentis in i, sibi mutant,

Præteriti numquam, cum frango, refringe, refregi:

A capio, incipio, incepti. Sed pauca nocentur.

Namque suum simplex perago sequitur, satagoque:

Atque ab ago, dego dat degi, cogo cœgi;

A rego sic pergo perrexi, vult quoque surgo

Surroxi, mediâ presentis syllabâ ademptâ.

15 *Nil variat facio nisi præpositi o præeunte:*

15 *Facio,*

Id docet olfacio, cum calfacio, inficioque.

16 *A lego nata, re, se, per, præ, sub, trans, præeunte, 16 L. 50.*

Presentis servant vocalem, in i; cætera mutant;

De quibus hæc intelligo, diligo, negligo, tantum

Præteritum lexi faciunt; reliqua omnia legi.

Chap. 31.

Of the Supines of Simple Verbs.

The Supine
is formed of
the Preter
tense.

Bi, makes
tum

Ci, tum

Di, sum

The syllable
is not dou-
bled in the
Supines.

Gi, tum

Li, sum

Mi, }
Ni, }
Pi, }
Qui, }

Ri, sum

Si, sum

NOW learn to form the Supine from the Preter-
perfect tense thus: Bi makes tum; as, Bibi, bibi-
tum, to drink

Ci is made tum; as, vici, victum, to overcome: ici
ictum, to smite: feci, factum, to do: jeci, jactum, to cast.

Di is made sum, as, vidi, visum, to see: but so ne do
double ss; as, vandi, passum, to lay open: sedi, sessum, to
sit: scidi, scissum, to cut: fidi, fissum, to cleave: fodi, foss-
sum, to dig.

And here also you may observe, that the syllable
which is doubled in the Preterperfect tense, is not
doubled in the Supines; as, torondi, to creep, makes con-
sum: cecidi, to beat, casum: cecidi, to fall, casum: te-
tendi, to stretch, tensum and tenui: tutudi, to knock,
tunsum: pepedi, to fast, pedum: to which add dedi,
which makes datum.

Gi is made tum; as, legi, to read, lectum; pegi, to
join, and pepigi, to make a bargain, pactum: fregi, to
break, fractum: tetigi, to touch, tactum: egi, to do, actum;
pupugi, to prick, punctum; and fugi, to avoid, fugitum.

Li is made sum; as, falli, to reason with salt, falsum;
pepuli, to dye away, makes pullum; ceculi, to break,
culsum, seculi, to deceive, falsum; velli, to pluck up,
vulsum, and tuli, to suffer, latum.

Mi, ai, pi, qui, are made tum; as, emi, emptum to buy,
veni, ventum, to come, cecini, cantum, to sing: cepi, cap-
tum to take, cepi, captum to begin, rupi, ruptum, to
break; liqui, licitum, to leave.

Ri is made sum; as, verri, ve sum, to brush: excepte
peperi, partum, to bring forth

Si is made: sum; as, visi, visum, to visit, yet misi na-
ked

Cap. 31.

De Simplicium Verborum Supinis.

Nunc ex Præterito discas formare Supinum.
 Si sibi cura format : sic namque bibi bibitum fit.

Supinū for-
 matur ex
 Præterito.
 Bi, format
 tum

Ci fit Eum, ut, vici, victum, testatur & ici
 Dans ictum, feci factum, jeci quoque jactum.
 Di fit sum, ut vidi visum : quædam geminant si,
 ut pandi passum, sedi, sessum, adde scidi quod
 Dat scillum, atque fidi fissum, fodi quoque fossam.

Ci, Eum

Di, sum

Hic etiam advertas, quod syllaba prima Supinis, Syllaba non
 Quam vult præteritum geminari, non geminatur : geminatur
 Idque torondi dans consum docet, atque cecidi
 Quod cæsum, & cecidi, quod dat casum, atque terendi
 Quod tensum & tentum, tutudi tunsam, atque pepedi
 Quod format peditum, adde dedi quod jure datum vult.

Syllaba non
 geminatur
 Supinis.

Gi fit Eum, ut legi lectum, pegi pepigie
 Dat pactum, fregi fractum, tetigi quoque tactum;
 Egi actum, pupugi punctum, fugi fugitum dat.

Gi, Eum

Li fit sum, ut salli stans pro sale cond o salsum;
 Dat pepuli pulsum, ceculi culsum, atque tefelli
 Fallsum, dat velli vulsum, tuli habet quoque lacum.

Li, sum

Mi, ni, pi, qui, tum sunt, velut hic manifestum;
 Emi emprum, veni ventum, cecini à cano, cantum;
 A capio cepi dans captum, à cœpio cœptum,
 A runpo rupi ruptum, liqui quoque lictum :

Mi, }
 Ni, } tum
 Pi, }
 Qui, }

Ri fit sum, ut verri versum; pepereris excipe partum.

Ri, sum

Si fit sum, ut visi, visum; tamen s geminato,

Si, sum.

kech *missum*, to send, with a double *ss*: except *falsum*, to underprop, *hausum* *hausum*, to drinke, *farsum* *farsum*, to patch, *farsum* *farsum*, to stuff, *ussum* *ussum*, to burn, *gessum* *gessum*, to bear, *torsum* *torsum*, or *torsum*, to twist, *indulsum* *indulsum* or *indulsum*, to pamper.

Pf, *tum*,

Pf is made *tum*, as, *scripsi scriptum*, to write, except *campsi campsum*, to exchange.

Ti, *tum*,

Ti is made *tum*, as, *steti*, to stand, and *stiti*, to make to stand: makes *statum*, except *veriti verum*, to turn.

Vi, *tum*,

Vi is made *tum*, as, *flavi flatum*, to blow; except *pavi*, *pastum*, to feed, *lavi lotum*, *laatum* or *lavatum*, to wash, *potavi potum* & *potatum*, to drink, *cavi cautum*, to beware, *sevi satum*, to sow, *livi* or *lini litum*, to dawb, *solvi solutum*, to loose, *volvi volutum*, to robel, *singultivi singultum*, to sob, *venivi venum* to be sold, *sepelivi sepultum*, to bury.

Ui, *itum*,
utum,

Ui makes *itum*, as, *domui domitum*, to tame: except every verb in *uo*; because *ui* will alwayes make *utum*, as, *exui exutum*, to put off: but *rui* makes *ruitum*, to rush, so *secui sectum*, to cut, *neui nectum*, to kill, *fricui frictum*, to rub, *miscui mistum*, to mingle, *amicui amictum*, to clothe, *torui tostum*, to roast, *docui doctum*, to teach, *tenui tentum*, to hold, *consului consultum* to consult, *alui altum* or *alutum*, to nourish, *salui saltum*, to leap, *colui cultum*, to wor: ship, *occului occultum*, to hide, *pinsui pistum*, to bake, *rapiui raptum*, to snatch, *serui sertum*, to put to, *texui textum*, to weave. But these change *ui* into *sum*; for *censeo*, to think, maketh *censum*, *cellui celsum*, to breathe, *messui messum*, to mow, *nexui nexum*, to knit, *pexui pexum*, to comb, *parui passum*, to lie open, *cavui cassum* and *cavium*, to want.

[*sum*

Xi, *st m*.

Xi is made *stum*, as *vinxi vinctum*, to binde: but five lose *n*, viz. *finxi fictum*, to feign, *mixi mictum*, to piss, *pinxi pictum*, to paint, *strinxi strictum*, to tie, *rinxi rictum*, to grin.

And

Misi formabit missum, fulsi excipe fultum;
Haulsi hauustum, sarsi sartum, sarsi quoque sartum,
Ulsi ustum, gessi gestum, torli duo torum
Et torsum, indulsi indultum indultumque requirit.

Psi fit rum, ut scripsi scriptum, campsi excipe camp- *Psi, rum,*
(sum.)

Ti fit rum, a sto namque steti, a lisi oque stiti fit, *Ti, rum,*
Præterito, commune statum; veni excipe versum.

Vi fit rum, ut flavi flatum; pavi excipe pastum; *Vi, rum,*
Dat lavi lotum, interdum lautum atque lavatum,
Potavi porum, interdum facit & potatum:
Sed favi faustum, cavi cautum, a lero sevi,
Formes ritè satum, livi linique litum dat:
Solve a solvo solutum, volvi a volvo volutum:
Vult singulativi singultum, venio venis
Venivi venum, sepelivi ritè sepultum.

(quodvis

Quod dat ui dat itum, ut domui domitum, excipe *Ui, itum,*
Verbum in uo, quia semper ui formabit in utum; *utum,*

Exui ut exutum, a ruo deme rui ruitum datus:

Vult secui sectum, necui nectum, fricisque
Frictum, miscui item mistum, ac amicus dat amictum:

Torui habet tostum, doouisque doctum, tenuisque

Tentum consului consultum, aiui altum alitumque,
Sic salui salum, colui ocului quoque cultum:

Pisui habet pistum, rapui raptum, servi que
A lero vult sertum; sic texui habet quoque textum.

Hæc sed ui mutant in sum; nam censeo censum, *sum*

Cellui habet celsum, mero mellui habet quoque mellum;

Nexui item nexum, sic pexui habet quoque pexum;

Dat patui passum, carui cassum caritumque

Xi fit etum, ut vinxi victum, quinque abijciunt n, *Xi, etum,*

Nam finxi ficum, minxi mistum, inque Supino,

Dat pinxi pictum, strinxi, rinxi quoque rictum.

Xum

And these xi into *xum*, *Flexi flexum*, to bend, *plexi plexum*, to plait, *fixi fixum*, to fasten, *fluxi fluxum*, to flow.

Chap. 32.

Of the Supines of Compound Verbs, and of the Preterperfect tense of Verbs in *or*.

The Compound Supine is formed like the Simple.

E Very Compound Supine is formed as the Simple, though there remain not alwayes the same syllable in both.

The Compound of *tunsum*, to knock, *n*, being taken away, makes *tusum*; and of *ruitum*, to rush, *n* made *rutum*, *i* being taken away, and so of *salum*, to leap, is made *su/sum*.

When *fero* maketh *fatum*, its Compounds make *fitum*.

These Supines *captum*, to take, *factum*, to do, *jactum*, to cast, *vaptum*, to snatch, *cantum*, to sing, *partum*, to bring forth, *parsum*, to sprinkle, *carptum*, to crop, and *farum*, to stuff, change *a* into *e*,

The Verb *edo*, to eat, when it is compounded maketh not *estum*, but *esum*, only *comedo*, to eat up, maketh both.

Of *nosco*, to know, *cognitum*, to know, and *agnitum*, to acknowledge, are only used, the rest of its compounds make *notum*, for *noscitum* is not in use.

Verbs in *or*, make their Preterperfect tense of the latter Supine by putting to *s*, and *sum* vel *fui*.

II. V Erbs in *or* take their Preterperfect tense from the latter Supine, by changing *n* into *us*, adding *sum* vel *fui*; as of *lectu* is made *lectus sum* vel *fui*. But of these Verbs, sometimes a Deponent, sometimes a Commune is to be noted; for *labor*, to labour, makes *lapsus sum*, *pator*, to suffer, makes *passus sum*, and its compounds *compassior*, to suffer together, *compassus sum*.

Xum flexi, plexi, fixi dant & fluo fluxum.

Cap. 32.

De Compositorum Verborum Supinis, & De
Præteritis Verborum in or.

Compositū ut Simplex formatur quodque Supi- Compositū
supinum for-
matur ut
Simplex.
(num, Supinum for-
matur ut
Simplex.
quavis non eadem flet semper syllaba utriusque.

composita à tuncsum, dempta n, tuncsum, à rucum fit

media dempta rucum, & à falcum quoque sulcum,

à sero quando satum format, composita sicum dant.

Ita caprum, factum, jactum, raptum, a per e mutant,

et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, quoque farrum,

Verbum edo compositum non estum sed facit esum;

num duntaxat comedo formabit utrumque.

et nosco tantū duo cognitum & agnitum habentur,

cetera dant notum, nullo est jam noscitur in usu.

Verba in or admittunt ex Posteriori Supino
Præteritum, verso u per us, & sum consociato

vel fui; ut, à lectu, lectus sum vel fui. At horum

hic est Deponens, nunc est Commune notandum:

Nam labor lapsus, patior dat passus & ejus

ista, ut compator compassus, perpetiorque.

Formans

Verba in or,
admittunt
Præteritum
ex posteriore
supino, ad-
dendo s, &
sum vel fui.

So also *caveo*, to want, makes *cavi* and *cassus sum*; *prandeo*, to dine, *prandi* and *pransus*; *pateo*, to lie open, *patui* & *passus*; *placeo*, to please, *placui*, & *placitus*; *consuesco*, to accustom, *suevi* and *suetus*; *veneo* to be sold, *veni* and *venditus sum*; *nubo*, to be married, *nups* and *nupta sum*; *mereor*, to deserve, *merui* and *meritus sum*: to these add, *libet*, it liketh, *libet* and *libitū est vel fuit*; *licet*, it is lawful, *licuit*, and *licitum est vel fuit*: *tudet*, it irketh, *taduit*: and *pu-tasum est vel fuit*: *pudet*, it ashameth, *pu-duit*, and *puditum est vel fuit*: and *piger*, it irketh, which makes *piguit* and *pigitum est vel fuit*.

§ Variant,
as Neuter-
passives,

and

Neuter-passives are thus formed: viz. like Neuters in the present tense, and Passives in the preter tense: *Gaudeo*, to rejoice, *gavisus sum vel fui*; *fido*, to trust, *fisus sum vel fui*; *audco*, to be bold, *ausus sum vel fui*; *facio*, to be made or done, *factus sum vel fui*; *soleo*, to be wont, *solicus sum vel fui*; *mereo*, to be ashamed, *meritus sum vel fui*. But *PHOCAS* taketh *mustus* for a Noun Adjective.

Such as bor-
row their
Preterper-
fect tense.

Some verbs borrow their preterperfect tense from another verb; as a verb Inceptive ending in *scio* standing for the primitive verb, will have the preterperfect tense of the primitive verb; thus; *tepesco*, to begin to be warm, makes *tepu* of *tepes*, to be warm; *fervesco*, to begin to be hot, makes *fervi* of *ferveo*, to be hot; *ceceo*, to see, will have *vidi* of *video*, to see; *concutio*, to shake, *concussi* of *concutio*, to shake; *ferio*, to smite, *percussi* of *percutio* to smite; *meio*, to piss, will have *minxi* of *mingo*, to piss; *sido*, to settle, *sedi* of *sideo*, to sit; *tollo*, to lift up, will have *sustuli*, of *sustulo*, to bear; *sum*, I am, will have *fui*, of *fuo*, to be; *fero*, to bear, *tuli* of *tulo*, to bear; *fiso*, to make to stand, *steti* of *stio*, to stand; *furor*, to be mad, *insani* of *insanio*, to be mad.

Sic carco carui & cassus sum, prandeo prandi
 et pransus, patco parui & passus, placebque
 Dat placui & placitus, suesco, suevi atque suetus.
 Veneo pro vendor, venivi venditus & sum,
 Nubo nupsi nuptaque sum, mereor meritus sum
 Vel merui. Adde libet libuit libitum, & licet adde
 Quod licuit licitum, tædet quod tæduit & dat
 Perxsum; adde pudet faciens puduit puditumque,
 Atque piget, tibi quod format piguit pigitumque.

Neutro-passivum sic præteritum tibi format,
 Gaudeo gavissus sum, fido fissus, & audeo
 Ausus sum, fio factus, soleo solitus sum,
 Merco sum inestus; sed Phoca nomen habetur.

Variantia
 ut, I Neu-
 tro-passiva.

&

Quadam præteritum verba accipiunt aliunde,
 Incipit in sco, flans pro Primario, adoptat mutuania.

Præteritum

Præteritum ejusdem verbi; vult ergo tepesco

A tepeo tepui, fervesco à serveo, servi,

A video serno vult vidi, à concutio vult

Præteritum quatio concussi, à percutioque

Percussi ferio; à mingo vult meio minxi.

A sedeo fido vult sedi, à suffero rollo

Sustuli, & à suo sum sui; à tulo ricè fero tuli.

A sto sisto steteri, tantum pro stare; furoque

Insanivi à verbo ejusdem significati.

So also *vescor*, to eat, will have its preterperfect tense from *pascor*, to be fed, *medeor*, to heal, from *medicor* to heal, *liquor*, to be melted, from *liqueſco*, to be melted, *reminiſcor*, to remember, from *reſcorder*, to call to mind

3 Defective
1 In the
Preter tense.

T Heſe verbs want the preterperfect tense, *virga*, to bend, or look towards, *ambigo*, to doubt, *griſco* to grow, or encrease, *ſatiſco* to chink, *polleo*, to be able, *nideo*, to ſhine: to theſe add *pueraiſco*, to begin to be a child: and paſſives whoſe actives want the Supines, as, *metuor*, to be feared, *timeor*, to be feared; and all Deſideratives except *parturio*, to ſtrive bringing forth, and *eſurio*, to begin to be hungry, or to deſire to eat (with a few others) which have the preterperfect tense.

2 In the Supine.

T Heſe verbs ſeldome or never have the Supine: *lambo*, to lick, *mico*, to ſhine, *rudo*, to bray, *ſcalo* to climb, *parco*, to ſpare, *diſpeſco*, to drive from paſture, *poſco*, to require, *diſco*, to learn, *compesco*, to paſture together, *quiniſco*, to nod, *dego*, to live, *augo*, to bry, *ſugo*, to ſuck, *lingo* to lick, *ningo*, to ſnow, *ſatago* to be buſy about a thing, *pfallo*, to ſing, *volo*, to will, *nolo*, to be unwilling, *malo*, to be moze willing, *tremu* to tremble, *ſtrido*, to make a noiſe, *ſtrido*, to make a noiſe, *flaveo*, to be yellow, *liveo*, to be black & blew, *aveo*, to covet, *paveo*, to fear, *conniveo*, to wink, *ſerveo*, to be hot. The Compounds of *nuo*, to nod, as, *reſnuo*, to reſuſe. The Compounds of *cado* to fall, as, *incido* to fall into: Except *occido* to fall down, *occuſum* and *recido* *recaſum*, to fall back: *reſpuo* to reſuſe; *linquo* to leave, *luo*, to be puniſh'd, *metuo*, to fear, *cluo*, to gliſter, *frigeo*, to be cold, *caluo*, to be bald, *ſtereo*, to ſnoze, *timeo*, to fear, *luceo*, to ſhine, *arceo*, to drive away, whoſe compounds make *erutum*: the compounds of *gruo*, to cry like a Crane, as *ingruo*, to invade.

And

Sic possunt vescor, medeor, liquor, reminiscor:

Præteritum à pascor, medicor, liquefio, recordor.

P Præteritum fugiunt, vergo, ambigo, glisco, fatisco, 2 Defectiva
I Præterito

Polleo, nideo, ad hæc, Inceptiva, ut puerasco;

Et passiva, quibus cavere Activa supinis,

ut metuor, timeor. Meditativa omnia, præter

Paturio, esurio; quæ præteritum duo servant.

H Ac raro, aut nunquam retinebunt verba Supinæ 2 Defectiva
Supinis.

Lambo; mico micui, rudo, scabo, parco peperci,

Dispelco, posco, disco, compelco, quiniſco,

Dego; angō, lugo, lingo, ningo, saragōque;

Psallo, volo, nolo, malo, tremo, strideo, strido,

Flaveo, liveo, auct, paveo, conniveo, fervet;

Ad novo compositum, ut renuo; à cado, ut incido; præter

Occido, quod facit occasum, recidōque recasum;

Despuo, linquo, luo, metuo, cluo, frigeo, calvo;

Ad sterro, timeo, sic luceo; et arceo, cujus

composita erciturum habent; sic à gruo, ut ingruo natum.

L

Es

And all Verbs Neuters, of the second Conjugation that end in *ui*; except *oleo* to smell, *doleo* to grieve, *placeo* to please, *taceo* to hold ones peace, *pareo* to obey, *careo* to want, *noco* to hurt, *pateo* to lye open, *lateo* to lye hid, *valeo* to be able, *caleo* to be swarm; which will have the supines.

Chap. 34. Of Verbs that want certain Moods and Tenses.

3 Incertain
Moods and
Tenses as,
Aio.

These Verbs (more usually) are called Defectives which want certain Moods and Tenses, viz.

Indicative Mood } *Aio* I say, or quoth I. *As* thou
present tense } saist, *As* he saith, or quoth
he. Plur. *Aiunt* they say.
Imperfect. } *Aiebam* I did say, hath all persons in
both numbers.

Preterperfect. *Aisti* thou hast said.

Imperativus, *As* say thou.

Subjunct. } *As* thou maist say, *As* he may
present } say, Plur. *Aimus* we may say,
Aiant they may say.

Participium Presens, *Aien*, saying

Ausim.

Subjunct. } *Ausim* I dare, *Ausis* thou darest, *Ausit*
present } he dare. Plur. *Ausint* they dare.

Duim.

So also *Duim* I give, *Duis* thou givest, *Duit* he
giveth. Plur. *Duint* they give.

For the Ancients express the Subjunctive Mood in
im, hence we read *credim* for *credam*.

Salve.

Indicat. Futur. *Saltebis* thou shalt greet, or bid
God speed

Imperat. *Salve salvetote* greet you well, Plur. *Salve
te salvetote* greet ye well

Infinitive, *Salvere* to greet well.

Impe-

Et quæcumque in ui formantur æstivæ secundæ;
 Exceptis, oleo, dolco, placeo, taceoque,
 Pareo, item & careo, noceo, pareo, lateoque,
 Et valeo, calco; gaudent hæc namque supino.

Chap. 34.

De Verbis quæ deficiunt certis Modis
& Temporibus.

Verba (magis usitatè) Defectiva vocantur, quæ certis Modis & Temporibus deficiunt, ut,

Indicativus { *Aio, ais, ait, Plur. Aiunt.*

Imperfect. *Aiebam*, habet omnes personas utriusque numeri.

Perfect. *Aisi.*

Imperativus, *Ai.*

Subjunctivus { *Aias, aiat. Plur. Aiamus, aiant.*

Participium præsens, *Aiens.*

Subjunctivus { *Ausim, ausis, ausit. Plur. Ausint.*

Præsens { *Ausim.*

Sic *Duim, duis, duit, Plur. Duunt.*

Duim.

Veteres enim Subjunctiva per *im* efferebant, unde *credaim* pro *credam* legimus.

Indicat. Futur. *Salvebis.*

Salve.

Imperat. *Salve, salveto. Plur. Salvete, salvetote.*

Infinitivus, *Salvere.*

*Ave.*Imperative, *Ave, aveo, hail thou.* Plur. *Avetote.*Infinit. *Avere, to bid one hail.**Cedo,*Imperat. *Cedo, reach me.* Plur. *Cedite, anciently Certe, reach ye.**Faxo,*Indic. & Subjunct. Futur. *Faxo vel Faxim I shall bring to pass, Faxis thou wilt make, Faxit he will make.* Plur. *Faxint they will make.**Forem.*Subjunct. *Forem I should, or might be, Foret thou shouldst, or might be, Foret he should, or might be.* Plur. *Forent they might be.*Infinit. Futur. *Fore to be.**Quaeso.*Indic. praesens, *Quaeso I pray,* Plur. *Quaesunt we pray.**Infit.*Indic. praesens, *Infit he saith,* Plur. *Infiunt they say.* And *Desit it is wanting, Desiet it will be wanting, Desiat let it be wanting:* as also *desit to be wanting, Confieri to be done at once.**Confieri.**Inquam.*Indic. praesens, *Inquisio vel inquam I say,* *Inquit thou saist, Inquit he saith.* Plur. *Inquiunt they say.* Perfectum, *Inquisti thou hast said, Inquit he has said.* Plur. *Inquistis ye have said.*Futurum, *Inquies thou shalt say, Inquiet he shall say.* Plur. *Inquietis ye shall say, Inquiunt they say.*Imperat. *Inque, Inquito say thou.* Plur. *Inquitte say ye.*Subjunct. praesens, *Inqui it he may say.*Particip. praesens, *Inquiens saying.**Odi.**Capit.**Memini.**Odi I hate, capi I begin, memini I remember.* have only those tenses, which are formed of the Preter tense, viz. those that end in *ram, rim, sem, ro, sse*, save that *memini* hath in the Imperative mood singular, *Memento remember thou, mementote remember ye.**Dor,**For,*These simple Verbs : *For, dor, fer, der,* are

Grammatica Latina.

157

Imperativus, *Ave, aveto.* Plur. *Avete, avetote.* Ave.

Infinitivus, *Avère.*

Imperativus, *Cedo.* Plur. *Cedite, & apud Antiquos Cedo.*

Indicat. & Subjunct. Fur. *Faxi* vel *saxo, saxis, Faxo.*
Plur. *Faxint.*

Subjunct. *Forem, foret, foret.* Plur. *forent.*

Infinit. Futur. *Fore.*

Indicat. præsens, *Quæso.* Plur. *Quæsumus.* Quæso.

Indic. præsens, *Infit.* Plur. *Infiunt.* Et *Defit, defiet,* *Infit,*
Defit,
Confieri.

Indic. præsens, *Inquo vel inquam, inquis, inquit.* *Inquam.*
Plur. *Inquiunt.*

Perfectum, *Inquisti, inquit.* Plur. *Inquisti.*

Futurum, *Inquies, inquiet.*

Imperat. *Inque, inquito.* Plur. *Inquite.*

Subjunct. præsens, *Inquiat.*

Participium, *Inquiens.*

Odi, capi, meminî, habent ea solum tempora quæ à *Odi,*
Capi,
Memini.
preterito formantur; viz. in *ram, rim, ssem, ro, & sse*
definentia. Sed *memini* habet in imperativo singula-
ti, memento. Plur. *memenotote.*

Dor, for, der, fer, simplicia, non reperiuntur in *Dor,*
For,
primâ

found in the first person singular of the Present tense, but (almost) in all the rest.

Dic, due, fer, fac, are cut off by *Apocope*.

Sci,

Sci of *scio* to know, is not in use, nor *solebo* of *solere* to be wont, nor *suo* to be, an old verb.

Orior.

Orior *orieris* to arise, hath *oriri* in the Infinitive Mood, and *morior* maketh *mori* and *moriri*.

Morior.

Volo.

Nolo.

Malo.

Fero.

Feror.

Edo.

Volo I will, *nolo* I will not, *malo* I had rather, *fero* I bear, *feror* I am born, and *edo* I eat, have commonly a Syncope in many tenses; as, *Volo, vis, vult, Vultis. Nolo, non vis, non vult, Nolumus. Malo, mavis, mavult, Malumus. Fero, fers, fert. Feror, feror, vel ferre, fertur. Edo, edis vel es, edit vel est, &c.* of which *volo* and *malo* want the Imperative mood. *Nolo* makes the Imperative mood *noli nolitote* do not thou. Plur. *Nolite nolitote* do not ye.

Es & que.

Es I go, and *queo* I am able, make their Preter-imperfect tense *ibam* and *quibam*, and their Future *ibo* and *quibo*; and their Gerunds *eundi, eundo, eundum, Queundi, queundo, queundum*.

Sum,

Sum with its Compounds wants the Gerunds, Supines, and Participles of the Present tense, save that *absens, praesens*, come of *absum, praesum*, for *fui* is of *fui*, which was once the preter tense of the obsolete Verb *fuo*. *Possum* wants the Imperative Mood.

primâ personâ singulari præsentis, sed in cæteris (ferè) omnibus.

Dic, duc, fer, fac, per Apocopen concisæ sunt.

Sci à scio non reperitur; nec *solebo à solco*, nec *fuo Sci antiquum*.

Orior, oreris, & oriris, habet Infinitivum *oriri*, sic & *Orior, morior, mori, & moriri*. *Morier.*

Volo, nolo, malo, fero, feror, edo, Syncopen ferè admittunt in plerisque temporibus; ut, *Volo, vis, vult, Nolo, vultis, Nolo, non vis, non vult, nolupus, Malo, ma-* *Malo, vis, mavult, malumus. Fero, fens, ferit. Feror, feris, Fero, vel ferre feritur. Edo, edis vel es, edit vei est, &c. ex Edo,* quibus *volo & malo* carent Imperativo. *Nolo* facit Imperativum. *Noli, nolito. Plur. Nolite, nolitote.*

Eo & quo habent imperfectum *ibam & quibam*, *Eo & quo*, & futurum *ibo & quibo*, & Gerundia, *eundi, eundo, eundum. Queundi, queundo, queundum*.

Sum cum compositis carent Gerundiis, Supinis, & *Sum*, Participio præsentis, nisi quod ab *absens, præsens, veniunt absum, præsum*; nam *futurus* est à *sui*, quod præteritum olim obsoleti verbi *suo*. *Possu* caret Imperativo.

Cap. 35. Of the Forming of certain Verbs irregular.

Volo.

||

Indicativus.

Præsens Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Volo	I am	} willing
	2 Vis	thou art	
	3 Vult	he is	
Plur.	1 Volumus	we are	} willing
	2 Vultis	ye are	
	3 Volunt	they are	

Imperfect. — Volebam, I was willing: &c. ut, *Legebam.*Præterperfect. — Volui, I have been willing, &c. ut, *Legi.*Plusquamperfect. — Volueram, I had been willing, &c. ut, *Legeram.*Futurum — Volam, I shall be willing, &c. ut, *Legam.*Imperativo caret, cujus loco utimur præsentis Potentials, *Velis*, &c.

Potentialis.

Præsens Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Velim	I may	} be willing.
	2 Velis	thou mayst	
	3 Velit	he may	
Plur.	1 Velimus	we may	} be willing.
	2 Velitis	ye may	
	3 Velint	they may	
Præterimperfect. Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Vellem	I might	} be willing
	2 Velles	thou mightst	
	3 Vellet	he might	
Plur.	1 Vellemus	we might	} be willing
	2 Velleis	ye might	
	3 Vellent	they might	

Præterperf. — Voleverim, I might have been willing, &c. ut, *Legerim.*Plusquamperf. — Voluisset, I might have been willing, &c. ut, *Legisset.*Futurum — Voluero, I may be willing hereafter, &c. ut, *Legero.*

Infinitivus.

Præsens & Imperf. — Velle, To be willing.

Perfectum & Plusquam. — Voluisse, To have or had been willing.

Participium præsens — Volens, willing.

Note.

gular.

Nolo.

||

Indicativus.

Præsens	Sing.	1 Nolo	I am	} unwilling
		2 Non vult	thou art	
		3 Non vult	he is	
	Plur.	1 Nolumus	we are	
		2 Non vultis	ye are	
		3 Nolunt	they are	

Imperfect — Nolebam, I was unwilling : &c. ut, *Legebam.*Pluperfect — Noluī, I have been unwilling : &c. ut, *Legi.*Plusquamperfect — Noluēram, I had been unwilling : &c. ut, *Legeram.*Futurum — Nolum, I shall be unwilling : &c. ut, *Legam.*

Legeram,

lis, &c.

Imperativus.

Præf.	{ Noli	Be thou un-	{ Nolite	Be ye unwilling.
Sing.	{ Nolito	willing.	{ Nolito	

Potentialis.

Præsens	Sing.	1 Nolim	I may	} be unwilling
		2 Nolu	thou maist	
		3 Nolit	he may	
	Plur.	1 Nolumus	we may	
		2 Nolitis	ye may	
		3 Nolint	they may	
Præterperfect.	Sing.	1 Nollem	I might	} be unwilling
		2 Nolles	thou mightest	
		3 Nollet	he might	
	Plur.	1 Nollēmus	we might	
		2 Nollētis	ye might	
		3 Nollent	they might	

egerim.

Legissem.

egero.

Perfectum — Noluērim, I might have been unwilling : ut, *Legerim.*Plusquamperfect — Noluissē, I might had been unwilling : ut, *Legissem.*Futurum — Noluero, I may be unwilling hereafter : ut, *Legero.*

Infinitivus.

Præsens & Imperf — Nolle, To be unwilling.

Perfectum & Plusquam — Noluisse, To have or had been unwilling.

Participium Præsens, — Nolens, unwilling.

ing.

Noli,

Nale,

Malo.

Indicativus.

Præsens Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Malo	I am	} more willing
	2 Mavis	thou art	
	3 Mavult	he is	
Plur.	1 Malumus	we are	} more willing
	2 Mavultis	ye are	
	3 Malunt	they are	

Imperfect — Malui, I was more willing : ut, Legebam.

Præterperfect — Malui, I have been more willing : ut, Legi.

Plusquamperfect — Malueram, I had been more willing : ut, Legeram.

Futurum — Malam, I shall be more willing : ut, Legam.

Imperativo carer, cujus loco nitimur Malui, &c.

Potentialis.

Præsens Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Malim	I may	} be more willing.
	2 Malis	thou mayst	
	3 Malit	he may	
Plur.	1 Malimus	we may	} be more willing.
	2 Malitis	ye may	
	3 Malint	they may	
Præterimperfect. Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Mallem	I might	} be more willing.
	2 Malles	thou mightst	
	3 Mallet	he might	
Plur.	1 Mallimus	we might	} be more willing.
	2 Mallitis	ye might	
	3 Mallent	they might	

Perfectum — Maluerim, I might have been more willing : ut, Legi.

Plusquamperf. — Maluissim, I might have had been more willing : ut, Legissem.

Futurum — Maluero, I may be more willing hereafter, ut, Legam.

Infinitivus.

Præsens & Imperf. — Malle, To be more willing.

Perfectum & Plusqamp. — Maluisse, To have or had been more willing.

Sæpe leguntur, Mavolo, Mavelam, Mavelim, & Mavellem.

Fero. || Indicativus.

Præsens Plur. 1 sing.	1 Fero	I bear
	2 Fers	thou bearest
	3 Fert	he beareth
Plur. 1 sing.	1 Ferimus	we
	2 Fertis	ye
	3 Ferunt	they

} bear

Imperfectum — Ferebam, I did bear : ut, Legebam.

Perfectum — Tuli, I have born : ut, Legi.

Plusquamperf. — Tuleram, I had born : ut, Legebam.

Futurum — Feram, I will bear : ut, Legam.

Imperativus.

Sing.	Fer, } Bear thou	Plur.	Feramus } Bear we
	Ferto, }		Ferte } Bear ye
Plur.	Ferat } Let him bear	Plur.	Fertote } Let them bear
	Ferto, }		Ferant }

Potentialis.

Præsens — Feram, I may bear : ut, Legam.

Imperfectum — Ferrem, I might bear : ut, Legerem.

Perfectum — Tulerim, I might have born : ut, Legerim.

Plusquamperf. — Tulissem, I might had born : ut, Legissem.

Futurum — Tulerō, I might bear hereafter : ut, Legero.

Infinitivus.

Præsens & Imperf. — Ferre, To bear.

Perfectum & Plusquam. — Tulisse, To have or had born.

Futurum — Latum esse — To bear hereafter.

Gerundia { Ferendi Of bearing.
 Ferendo In bearing.
 Ferendum To bear.

Supina { Latum To bear.
 Latum To be born.Participia { Ferens Bearing.
 Laturus About to bear.

Fero

Fetor.

||

Indicativus.

Præfens Plur. I Sing.	1 Feror	I am boyn
	2 Ferris	thou art boyn
	3 Ferre	
	1 Ferris	he is boyn
	2 Ferimur	we } are boyn
	3 Ferimini	
	1 Feruntur	they

Imperfectum--- Ferabar, I was boyn : ut, Legebam.

Perfectum Latum sum vel fui, I have been boyn : ut, Lectus sum vel fui.

Plusquamperf.---Latus eram vel fueram, I had been boyn : ut, Lectus eram vel fueram.

Futurum---Ferar, I shall be boyn : ut, Legar.

Imperativus.

Præfens Sing.	Ferre,	} Be thou boy	} Plur.	Feramur	Be we boy
	Ferror			Ferimini	} Be ye boy
	Feratur	} be he boy		Ferminor	
	Ferror			Ferantur	} Let them be boy
			Ferantor.		

Potentialis.

Præfens---Ferar, I may be boyn : ut, Legar.

Imperfect.---Ferrer, I might be boyn : ut, Legeret.

Perfectum---Latus {sim } I might have been boyn : ut, Lectus {sim, vel fuerim,

Plusquamper- {Latus {essem } I might had been boyn : ut, Lectus {essem vel fuisset

fectum {fuissem,

Futurum---Latus {ero } I may be boyn hereafter : ut, Lectus {ero, vel fuero.

Infinitivus.

Præfens, & Imperfect.---Ferri, To be boyn.

Perf. & Plusq. Latum esse vel fuisse, To have or had been boyn.

Futurum---Latum ire, vel Ferendum esse, To be boyn hereafter.

Participia {Latus Boyn
{Ferendus To be boyn.

Edo. || Indicativus.

Sing.	Edo	I eat	Plur.	Edimus	We eat
	Es	thou eatest		Editis	ye eat
	Edis	he eateth		Edunt	they eat
	Est				

Imperfectum — Edebam, I ate : ut, Legebam.

Perfectum — Edi, I have eaten : ut, Legi.

Plusquamper. — Ederam, I had eaten : ut, Legeram.

Futurum — Edam, I will eat : ut, Legam.

Imperativus.

Pres. Sing.	Es	} Eat thou	} Plur.	Edamini	} Eat we	
	Esse			Edite		
	Ede			Esse		} Eat ye
	Edito			Esote		
	Edat			Edisote		
	} Let him eat			Esse		Edant
Edito		Edunto				

Potentialis.

Præsens — Edam, I may eat : ut, Legam.

Imperfectum — Ederem, I might eat : ut, Legerem, Essem à Sum.

Perfectum — Ederim, I might have eaten : ut, Legerim.

Plusquamper. — Edissem, I might have eaten : ut, Legissem.

Futurum — Edero, I may eat hereafter : ut, Legero.

Infinitivus.

Præsens & Imperf. — Edere vel esse, To eat.

Perf. & Plusq. — Edisse, To have or had eaten.

Futur. — Esurum esse, To eat hereafter.

Gerundia { Edendi Of eating.

{ Edendo In eating.

{ Edendum To eat.

Supina { Essum To eat.

{ Esu To be eaten

Parti- { Edens Eating.

cipia { Esurus About to eat.

Fio.

||

Indicativus.

Præfens — Fio, I am made: ut, Audip.

Imperfectum — Fiebam, I was made: ut, Audiebam.

Perfectum Factus sum, I have been made: ut, Lectus sum,

Plusquamperf. — Factus eram, I had been made: ut, Lectus eram,

Futurum — Fiam, I shall be made: ut, Audiam.

Imperativus.

Præfens Sing.	{	<i>Fi,</i>	{	Be thou made	{	Plur.	{	<i>Fiamus</i>	{	Be we made	
		<i>Fito,</i>						<i>Fite,</i>			<i>Be ye made</i>
		<i>Fiat,</i>						<i>Filote,</i>			
		<i>Fito,</i>						<i>Fiant,</i>			<i>Let them be made</i>

Potentialis.

Præfens — Fiam, I may be made: ut, Audiam.

Imperfect. — Fierem, I might be made: ut, Audirem.

Perfectum — Factus sum, I might have been made: ut, Lectus sum,

Plusquamperf. — Factus essem, I might had been made: ut, Lectus essem,

Futurum — Factus ero, I may be made hereafter: ut, Lectus fuero

Infinitivus.

Præfens, & Imperfect. — Fieri, To be made.

Perf. & Plusquamperf. — Factum esse, To have or had been made.

Futurum — Factum iri, To be made hereafter.

Participia — Faciendum esse, To be made.

Eo. II

Indicativus.

Præsens Plur. I Sing.	1 Ego	I go	
	2 Is	thou goest	
	3 Ille	he goeth	
	1 Imus	we	} go
	2 Iis	ye	
	3 Eunt	they	

Præterimperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Ibam	I did	} go
	2 Ibas	thou didst	
	3 Ibat	he did	
	1 Ibamus	we did	} go
	2 Ibatis	ye did	
	3 Ibant	they did	

Præteritum Plur. I Sing.	1 Ivi	I have	} gone
	2 Ivisi	thou hast	
	3 Ivit	he hath	
	1 Ivimus	we have	} gone
	2 Ivistis	ye have	
	3 Iverunt	they have	
	Ivère		

Plusquamperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Iveram	I had	} gone
	2 Iveras	thou hadst	
	3 Iverat	he had	
	1 Iveramus	we had	} gone
	2 Iveratis	ye had	
	3 Iverant	they had	

Futurum Plur. I Sing.	1 Ibo	I will	} go
	2 Ibis	thou wilt	
	3 Ibit	he will	
	1 Ibimus	we will	} go
	2 Ibitis	ye will	
	3 Ibunt	they will	

Imperativus

Eo. II

Imperativus.

Praesens Plur. I Sing.	I,	Go thou
	Ito,	
	Eat,	Let him go
	Ite,	
	Eamus	Go we
	Ite,	Go ye
	Itoe,	
	Eant,	Go they
	Ennto	

Potentialis.

Praesens Plur. I Sing.	1 Eam	I may	} go
	2 Eas	thou mayest	
	3 Eat	he may	
	1 Eamus	we	} may go
	2 Eatis	ye	
	3 Eant	they	

Imperfectum Plur. I Sing.	1 Irem	I might	} go
	2 Ires	thou mightest	
	3 Iret	he might	
	1 Iremus	we might	} might
	2 Iretis	ye might	
	3 Irent	they might	

Perfectum Plur. I Sing.	1 Iverim	I might	} have gone
	2 Iveris	thou mightest	
	3 Iverit	he might	
	1 Iverimus	we might	} have gone
	2 Iveritis	ye might	
	3 Iverint	they might	

Plusquamperfect.

Plusquamperfect. Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Ivissem	I might	} have had gone
	2	Ivisset	thou mightest	
	3	Ivisset	he might	
	1	Ivissimus	we might	}
	2	Ivissetis	ye might	
	3	Ivissent	they might	

Futurum. Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Iverem	I may	} go hereafter.
	2	Iveris	thou mayest	
	3	Iverit	he may	
	1	Iverimus	we may	}
	2	Iveritis	ye may	
	3	Iverint	they may	

Infinitivus.

Præsens & Imperfect. } Ire, } to go.

Perfectum & Plusquamperfect. -Ivisse, To have or had gone.

Futurum — Iturum esse — To go hereafter.

Gerundia { Eundi Of going
Eundo In going
Eundum To go

Supina { Itum, } To go
Ilu, } To be gone

Participia { Gen. Euntis, &c. Going.
Iturus, About to go.

Ad hunc modum etiam variantur Quo, nisi quod Impera. Quo.

Chap. 36.

Of forming the Verb Sum.

The Verb *Sum* hath a manner of declining which belongs only to its self.

Verbum *Sum* peculiarem Conjugandi rationem sibi postulat.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus.

The Indicative Mood | The Potential Mood.

Present tense Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Sum, Possum</i> I am	<i>Sim, Possim</i> I may
	2 <i>Es</i> thou art	<i>Sis</i> thou mayst
	3 <i>Est</i> he is	<i>Sit</i> he may
	1 <i>Sumus</i> we are	<i>Simus</i> we may
	2 <i>Estis</i> ye are	<i>Sitis</i> ye may
	3 <i>Sunt</i> they are	<i>Sint</i> they may

Preterimperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Eram, Poteram</i> I was	<i>Essem, Possem</i> I might
	2 <i>Eras</i> thou wast	<i>Esset</i> thou mightest
	3 <i>Erant</i> he was	<i>Essent</i> he might
	1 <i>Eramus</i> we were	<i>Essemus</i> we might
	2 <i>Eratis</i> ye were	<i>Essetis</i> ye might
	3 <i>Erant</i> they were	<i>Essent</i> they might

Preter tense Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Fui, Potui</i> I have	<i>Fuerim, Potuerim</i> I might
	2 <i>Fuisti</i> thou hast	<i>Fueris</i> thou mightest
	3 <i>Fuit</i> he hath	<i>Fuerit</i> he might
	1 <i>Fuimus</i> we have	<i>Fuerimus</i> we might
	2 <i>Fuistis</i> ye have	<i>Fueritis</i> ye might
	3 <i>Fuerunt</i> they have	<i>Fuerint</i> they might

Preterplup. tense Plur. I Sing.	1	Fueram, potueram	I had	been	Fuisse, potuisse	I might	have been
	2	Fueras	thou hadst		Fuisses	thou mightst	
	3	Fuerat	he had		Fuisset	he might	
	1	Fueramus	we had		Fuissemus	we might	
	2	Fueratis	ye had		Fuissetis	ye might	
	3	Fuerant	they had		Fuisissent	they might	
Future Plur. I Sing.	1	Ero, Potero	I shall	be	Fuero, potuero	I may	be hereafter
	2	Eris	thou shalt		Fueris	thou mayst	
	3	Erit	he shall		Fuerit	he may	
	1	Erimus	we shall		Fuerimus	we may	
	2	Eritis	ye shall		Fueritis	ye may	
	3	Erint	they shall		Fuerint	they may	

The Imperative Mood || The Infinitive Mood.

Present tense, Plur. I Sing.	2	Sis, es esto	Be thou	Present and Imperfect. } <i>Esse</i> to be
	3	Sit, esto	be he	
	1	Simus	Be we	
	2	Sitis, este, estote	be ye	
	3	Sint, sunt	be they	
Future				Perfect and Preterplup. } <i>Fuisse</i> to have been
Future				Future } <i>Futurum</i> to be hereafter

So likewise are its compounds declined. *Absum*, to be absent, *Desum*, to be wanting, *Præsum*, to be before, *Obsum*, to be against, but *Prosum*, to profit, takes *d* between two vowels, and *Possum*, to be able. (of *potis* able, and *sum* to be) before a vowel, and instead of *f* keeps *t*, but changeth it into *s* before *s*.

Sic variantur & ejus composita, *Absum*, *d. sum*, *præsum*, *obsum*; *prosum* recipit *d* inter duas vocales, & *Possum* (*ā potis* & *sum*) ante vocalem & prof retinet *t*, mutat autem in *s* ante *s*.

Chap. 37.

Of Verbs Impersonals and Derivatives.

Impersonals be Declined throughout all Moods and Tenses in the voice of the third person singular only.

And they be either

- 1 Of the Active voice, which end in *t*; as, *deceat it becometh*, *decebat*, *decurit*, *decurerat*, *decebit*. *Deceat*, *deceret*, *decurrit*, *decere*.
- 2 Of the Passive voice, which end in *tur*; as, *Studetur it is studied*, *studebatur*, *studium est vel fuit*, *studium erat vel fuerat*, *studebitur*, *studeatur*, *studeretur*. *studium fit vel fuerit*, *studium esset vel fuisset*, *studium erit vel fuerit*, *studeri*.

And they be of the 1 Active voice.

Impersonals want (for the most part) Gerunds, *Supines*, and *Participles*.

The Participles by which we express the Preter tense, are put Substantively in the Neuter gender.

Impersonals of the active voice are these eleven, which (almost) alwayes remain Impersonals, viz. *Deceat it becometh*, *libet it listeth*, *licet it is lawful*, *liquet it is clear* (whose Preter tense is not extant) *Libet it listeth*, *miseret it pittieth*, *oportet it behoobeth*, *poenitet it repenteth*, *piget it itketh*, *pudet it ashameth*, and *taedet it itketh*, which are also sometimes found in the third person plural; as, *decent*, *oportent*, *pudent*.

To these are reckoned some personals (which are found absolutely in the third person without a nominative case, having an Infinitive mood presently after them) Such are

In the first Conjugation, *delectat it delighteth*, *iuvat it helpeth*, *prostat it is better*, *restat it remaineth*, *stat it is resolved on*, *constat it is manifest*, *vacat I am at leisure*.

Cap. 37.

De Impersonalibus & Derivativis.

Impersonalia conjugantur in tertiâ personâ singulari per omnes modos & tempora.

Impersonalia conjugantur in tertiâ singulari.

Sunt autem duplicia

1. Activæ vocis, quæ in *t* desinunt; ut, *deceat, decebat, decuit, decuerat, decebit, deceat, deceret, decuerit, decuisset, decuerit, decere.*
2. Passivæ vocis, quæ in *tor* desinunt; ut, *studetur, studebatur, studitum est vel fuit, studitum erat vel fuerat, studebitur, studeatur, studeretur, studitum sit vel fuerit, studitum esset vel fuisset, studitum erit vel fuerit, studeri.*

Impersonalia Gerundiis, & Supinis, & Participiis plerumque carent.

Sunt autem
1. Activæ

Participia, per quæ Præterita circumloquimur, Substantivè ponuntur in neutro genere.

Impersonalia Activæ vocis sunt hæc undecim, Conjugationis secundæ, quæ semper (ferè) manent Impersonalia, viz. *Decet, libet, licet, liquet* (cujus non exstat præteritum) *lubet, miseret, oportet, poenitet, piget, pudet, cadet*, quæ interdum etiam inveniuntur in tertiâ plurali, ut, *decent, oportent, pudent.*

His accensentur quædam Impersonalia (quæ absolute inveniuntur in tertiâ personâ absque nominativo, sequente mox Infinitivo) Cujusmodi sunt,

In prima Conjugatione, *delectat, juvat, præstat, restat, stat, constat, vacat.*

In the Second, *apparet*, it appeareth, *attinet*, it belongeth, *debet*, it ought, *pater*, it is evident, *placet*, it pleaseth, *solet*, it is wont.

In the Third, *Accidit*, it befalleth, *cæpit*, it beginneth, *conducit*, it belongeth to, *contingit*, it hapneth, *definit*, it ceaseth, *incipit*, it beginneth, *sufficit*, it sufficeth.

In the Fourth, *Convenit*, it agreeth, *evenit*, it falls out, *expedit*, it is expedient.

Among the irregular verbs, *est*, it is, *interest*, it concerneth, *prodest*, it doth profit, *potes*, it may, *fit*, it is done, *refert*, it concerneth.

Likewise verbs of an exempt power (i. e. that signifie an action not of any humane power) come near the nature of Impersonals; as, *Fulgurat*, it lightneth, *pluit*, it raineth, *lucescit*, it waxeth light.

Or
The Passive voice.

2 Impersonals of the Passive voice have no certain number, because they come of all verbs, actives, and some neuters; as, *Legitur*, it is read, *curritur*, it is run.

Lastly, no verb (almost) is so far a personal, as that it cannot take upon it the form of an Impersonal; and some Impersonals turn again sometimes into Personals.

A verb impersonal may indifferently be taken to be of any person in both numbers, viz by reason of an oblique case adjoynd; as, *me oportet*, I must, *te oportet*, thou must, *illium oportet*, he must. *Oportet nos*, we must, *oportet vos*, ye must, *oportet illos*, they must. *Statur à me*, I stand, *statur à te*, thou standest, *statur ab illo*, he standeth, *statur à nobis*, we stand, *statur à vobis*, ye stand, *statur ab illis*, they stand.

Verbs Derivatives are

Derivative Verbs are very often used for their Primitives; as, *Timeſco* for *timeo*, to fear, *hiſco* for *bio*, to gape.

1 Inchoatives.

There be five kinds of Derivative Verbs.

1 Inchoatives, or Augmentatives, which signifie begin-

In Secunda, *Apparet, attinet, debet, pater, placet, solet.*

In Tertia, *Accidit, capit, conducit, contingit, desinit, incipit, sufficit.*

In Quarta, *Convenit, evenit, expedit.*

Inter anomala, *est, interest, prodest, potest, fit, refert.*

Ad Impersonalium etiam naturam quodammodo accedunt verba exempta potestatis, viz actionem significancia non humanæ potestatis, ut, *Fulgurat, pluit, luescit, &c.*

2 Impersonalia Passivæ vocis certum numerum non habent, quia fiunt ab omnibus verbis Activis, & quibusdam neutris, ut *Legitur, curritur.* Vel 2 Passivæ vocis.

Denique nallum ferè verbum est tam personale, ut non idem impersonalis formam possit induere; atque nonnulla Impersonalia remigrant aliquando in Personalia.

Verbum Impersonale, pro singulis personis utriusque numeri indifferenter accipi potest, viz. ex vi adjuncti obliqui, ut,

Oportet	me	}	Oportet	nos
	te			vos
	illum			illos
Statutur	à me	}	Statutur	à nobis
	à te			à vobis
	ab illo			ab illis.

Derivativa sæpissime pro ipsis primitivis usurpantur, ut, *Timeſco* pro *timeo*, *hiſco* pro *hio*. Derivativa sunt,

Derivatorum quinque sunt genera.

1 Inchoativa sive Augmentativa, quæ inchoativa,

- beginning or augmentation, and end in *ſco*; as, *Luceſco* to begin to be light, *ardeſco* to be hotter & hotter.
- 2 *Frequentatives*, which ſignifie a certain affiduity or endeavour; and end in *to, ſo, xo, or tor*; as, *Viſito* to viſit often, *viſo* to go to ſee, *nexo* to tye often, *ſector* to endeavour to follow.
- 3 *Deſideratives*, or *Meditatives*, which ſignifie a certain deſire or ſtriſe, and end in *urio*; as, *Lecturio* to ſtriſe to read, *canaturio* to deſire a ſupper.
- 4 *Diminutives*, which ſignifie the leſſening of its Primitive, and end in *lo* or *ſſo*; as, *Sorbillo* to ſup often, *pitillo* to ſipple, or ſup a little.
- 5 *Imitatives*, which ſignifie imitation, and end in *iſſo*, and in *or*; as, *Patriſſo* to reſemble a father, *vulpinor* to play the fox.
- 6 *Apparatives*, which ſignifie a preparation to, and end in *co*; as, *Vellico* to pluck, *fodico*, to dig.
- 7 *Denominatives*, which come from Nouns, and have no proper appellation; as, *Lignor* to purbey wood, *ruſlicor* to live in the Country.

Chap. 38. Of a Participle.

A Participle
taketh part
of a Noun
and part of
a Verb.



PARTICIPLE is a part of Speech derived of a Verb, which taketh part of a Noun as well as of a Verb; as, *Amans* loving.

A Participle hath from a Noun, gender, case, and declension; from a Verb, tense and ſignification; from both theſe number and figure.

According to tenſe there be four kinds of Particles.

1 A Participle of the preſent tenſe hath the ſignification of the preſent tenſe, and endeth in *ans, ens, and ign*; as, *Amans, docens, legens, audiens*.

There be
four kinds
of Particles.
1 Of the
Preſent
tenſe.

as, *Luc-*
 & *hotte*
 in assidui-
 as, *Vifi-*
 e *often*,

signific a
Lecturio
 per.

ing of its
 to to sup

nd end in
 her, vul-

ich signi-
 to pluck;

n Nouns,
 to purbey

r of Speech
 th part of
 as, *Aman-*

oun, gen-
 and signi-

of Parti-

the signi-
 a *ans*, *ens*,

But

nem aut augmentationem significant, & in *seo* desi-
 nunt; ut, *Lucesco*, *ardesco*.

2 *Frequentativa*, quæ assiduitatem quandam, vel 2 *Frequen-*
 conatum significant, & in *to*, *so*, *xo*, aut *tor* desinunt; *tativa*.
 ut, *Visto*, *viso*, *uxo*, *sektor*.

3 *Desiderativa* sive *Meditativa*, quæ appetentiam 3 *Desidera-*
 quandam, aut studium significant, & desinunt in *io*; *tiva*.
 ut, *Lecturio*, *cœnatio*.

4 *Diminutiva*, quæ diminutionem sui Primitivi 4 *Diminu-*
 significant, & desinunt in *lo* vel *ssio*; ut, *Sorbillo*, *tiva*.
missio.

5 *Imitativa*, quæ imitationem significant, & desi- 5 *Imitativa*:
 nunt in *isso* & *or*; ut, *Patrisso*, *vulpinor*.

6 *Huc* pertinent & *Apparativa*, quæ apparatus 6 *Apparati-*
 significant, & in *co* desinunt; ut, *Vellico*, *sodico*. *va*.

7 Item *Denominativa*, quæ à nominibus veniunt, 7 *Denomi-*
 & propriam appellationem non habent; ut, *lignor*, *nativa*.
rassior.

Cap. 38. De Participio.



PARTICIPIUM est pars Orationis à
 Verbo derivata, tam à Nomine quam à
 Verbo partem capiens; ut, *Amans*.

Participium
 partem ca-
 pit a Nomi-
 ne, & Verbo

Participium habet genera, casus, & declinationem
 à nomine; tempora & significationem à Verbo; nume-
 rum & figuram ab utroque.

Secundum tempus, species Participiorum sunt qua-
 tuor.

1 Participium *Præsentis*, habet significationem
 præsentis, & desinit in *ans*, *ens*, & *iens*; ut, *Amans*,
docens, *legens*, *audiens*.

Cæterum

Species par-
 ticipiorum
 sunt quatuor
 I Præsentis.

But *iens* of *eo* is seldome read in the Nominative case, but *euntis*, &c. in the oblique cases. But its compounds have the Nominative case in *iens*, and the Genitive in *euntis*, except *Ambiens*, *ambientis*.

2 Of the
Preter tense

2 A Participle of the Preter tense signifieth the time past, and endeth in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, as, *Amatus*, *lobatus*, *visus*, *senex*, *nexus*, *knit*; and one in *uus*, as, *mortuus*, **Dead**.

3 Of the
Future in
tus.

3 A participle of the Future in *Rus* hath the signification of the Future tense of its Infinitive Mode Active; as, *Amaturus*, **about to love**, *Docturus*, **about to teach**.

4 Of the
Future in
dus.

4 A Participle of the Future in *Dus* hath the signification of the Future tense of the Infinitive Passive; as, *Amandus*, **to be loved hereafter**.

How Partic-
iples are
formed.

The Participle of the Present tense is formed of the Preter imperfect tense by changing the last syllable into *ns*; as of *Amabam*, *amans*.

The Participle of the Preter tense is formed of the later Supine, by putting to *s*; as of *Amatu*, *amatus*.

The Participle of the Future in *rus*, is formed of the latter Supine, by putting to *rus*; as of *Amatu*, *amaturus*.

The Participle of the Future in *dus* is formed of the Genitive case of the Participle of the Present tense by changing *tis* into *dus*; as of *Amantis*, *amandus*.

These participles are derived of their verbs, beside the common rule; *Pariturus*, **about to bring forth**, *nasciturus*, **to be born**, *soniturus*, **to sound**, *arguiturus*, **to reprove**, *moriturus*, **to dye**, *luciturus*, **that shall prosper**, *oscurus*, **to suffer punishment**, *nosciturus*, **to know**, *oscurus*, **to hate**, *futurus*, **to be**, *oriturus*, **to arise**.

These be like participles, but are derived of Nouns; *Tunicatus*, **coated**, *togatus*, **gowned**, *personatus*, **personated**, *larvatus*, **masked**, &c.

From

Exerum iens ab eo raro legitur in Nominativo, *entis*, &c. in obliquis. Composita verò Nominivum habent in *iens*, & Genitivum in *entis*, præ-
Ambiens, *Ambientis*.

Participium *Præteriti*, significat tempus præ-
teritum, & desinit in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, ut, *Amatus*, *visus*, ³ *Præteriti*,
us, & unicum in *uus*, ut, *mortuus*.

Participium *Futuri in Rus*, habet significationem ³ *Futuri in*
sentis Infinitivi sui Activi; ut, *Amaturus*, *doctu-* *rus*.

Participium *Futuri in Dus*, significationem ha- ⁴ *Futuri in*
Infinitivi sui Passivi; ut, *Amandus*. *dus*.

Participium Præsentis formatur ab imperfecto mu- De modo
do ultimam syllabam in *us*; ut, ab *Amabam*, Participia
us. formandi.

Participium præteriti formatur à posteriori Supi-
addendo *s*; ut ab *Amatu*, *amatus*.

Participium Futuri in *rus* formatur à posteriori
o, addendo *rus*; ut, ab *Amatu*, *amaturus*.

Participium Futuri in *Dus*, formatur à Genitivo
cipii præsentis mutando *tis* in *dus*; ut, ab *Aman-*
amandus.

Hæc participia præter *Analogiam* à verbis suis de-
cuntur; *Pariturus*, *nasciturus*, *soniturus*, *arguitu-*
moriturus, *luicurus*, *nosciturus*, *osurus*, *saturus*, *o-*
urus.

Tunicatus, *togatus*, *personatus*, *lavatus*, &c. similia
cipiis sunt, à nominibus verò deducuntur.

Ab

And of what
Verbs they
come.

From Actives and Neuters, which have the
pines, come two Participles, one of the Present tense
and another of the Future in *rus*; as of *Amo*, *amans*
amaturus, of *Curro*, *currens*, *curus*.

But of some Neuters are found also Participles
rus; as, *Dubitandus* to be doubted, *vigilandus* to
watched, *cavendus* to be wanted, *dolendus* to
grieved. And of those which make their Preterite
fect tense in manner of Passives, is made also a Participle
of the Preter tense; as, *gaudeo gavisus* glad,
juratus sworn; so likewise from Impersonals into
as of *Aratur*, *aratus* plowed.

Of Verbs Passives come two Participles, one of the
Preter tense, the other of the Future in *rus*; as of
amor cometh *Amatus*, *amandus*.

Of Verbs Deponents come three Participles, one of the
Present tense, of the Preter tense, and of the Future
in *rus*; as of *Auxilior* to aid, cometh *auxiliatus*,
auxiliatus, *auxiliaturus*.

To many also belongeth a Participle in *rus*, especially
to such as govern an Accusative case, as
Loquor to speak, cometh *loquens*, *loquutus*, *loquutus*,
loquendus.

Of Verbs Commune come four Participles, one of the
Largio to bestow, or be bestowed, cometh *largitus*,
largitus, *largitus*, *largitus*.

There be no Participles extant from Verbs Impersonals,
except *Pœnitens* repenting, *deceus* coming,
libens & *lubens* willing, *pertusus*, *iratus*,
panitendus to be repented, *pudens* shaming, *pudendus*
to be ashamed, *pigendus* to be irked.

Nouns Participles.

Participles are turned into Nouns Participial.
1 When they govern another case than the
Verb doth govern; as, *Amans pecunie* loving
money.

2 When they are compounded with words, which

their verbs will not be compounded withal; as, *Infans*, an infant, *Indotus*, unskilfull.

3 When they be compared; as, *Amans*, loving, *Amantior*, more loving, *Amantissimus*, very loving.

When they signifie no time; as, *Sapiens*, wise, *Sponsa*, a bride.

Participles of the present tense very often become Substantives, sometimes of the Masculine gender, as, *Oriens*, the East: sometimes of the Feminine gender, as, *Accidens*, an accident: sometimes of the Neuter gender, as, *Appetens*, a greedy of.

Participles of the Present tense be declined like *Felix*. And of other tenses like *Bonus*.

Participles of the present tense are declined with three Articles; as, *hic*, *hec* & *hoc*, *Amans*, like *Felix*.

Participles of other tenses are declined with other terminations; as, *Amatus*, *ta, sum*; *Amaturus*, *ya, rum*; *Amandus*, *da, dum*, like *Bonus*.

Chap. 39.

Of an Adverb.

V.
An Adverb explaineth a Verb.

AN ADVERB is a part of Speech added to other words (but especially to the Verb) to declare and perfect their sense and signification.

The significations of Adverbs are many, whose variety must be gathered out of the Circumstances of the Verbs.

us ipsorum verba componi non possunt; ut, *Infans*,
Infans doctus.

3 Cùm comparantur; ut, *Amans*, *amantior*, *aman-*
issimus.

4 Cùm tempus non significant; ut, *Sapiens*,
Sapientia.

Participia præsentis temporis non raro sunt Sub-
 antiya, modò, masculini generis; ut, *Oriens*: mo-
 gendò feminini; ut, *Consonans*: modò neutrius; ut,
 icidens: modò communis; ut, *Appetens*.

Participia præsentis variantur tribus Articulis; Participia
 t, *hic hac*, & *hoc*, *amans*, sicut *Felix*.

Participia reliquorum temporum variantur tribus
 minationibus; *Amatus*, *ta*, *tum*, *Amaturus*, *ta*,
 um; *Amandus*, *da*, *dum*, sicut *Bonus*.

Præsentis
 variantur
 sicut *Felix*.
 Reliquorum
 verò tempo-
 rum, sicut
Bonus.

Cap. 39.

De Adverbio.

ADVERBIUM est pars Orationis adjecta
 aliis vocibus (sed præcipuè Verbis) ad sensum
 significationem earum perficiendum & explanan-
 dum.

V.
 Adverbium
 explanat
 Verbum.

Significationes Adverbiorum sunt multæ, quarum
 varias ex Verborum circumstantiis colligenda
 sunt.

Secundùm

There be
33 kinds
of Adverbs

According to their signification some are called Adverbs of

- In a place; as, *hic, here, illic, there.*
- Place and signification { To a place; as, *huc, hither, illuc, thither*
From a place; as, *hinc, hence, thence.*
By a place; as, *hac, this way, illa, that way.*
- Time; as, *nunc now, tunc then, hodie to day, usque until, or as far as*, is both of time and place
- Number, as, *Semel once, bis, twice, ter thrice, iterum again.*
- Order; as, *Indè after that, denique lastly, demum lastly.*
- Asking; as, *cui, why & quare, wherefore? unde whence?*
- Calling; as, *heus, ho, & eho so ho.*
- Affirming; as, *certè truly, &e truly, profectè truly scilicet yes.*
- Denying; as, *non not, haud not, minime no.*
- Swearing; as, *Pol by Apollo, adipol Apollo's Temple, Hercle, by Hercules.*
- Exhorting; as, *age go to, sodes, if you dare, scilicet if you will.*
- Granting; as, *licet it may be so, esto be it so, sit sane be it indeed so.*
- Forbidding; as, *nè not, non not.*
- Flattering; as, *amabè precher.*
- Wishing; as, *utinam would to God, & si that*
- Gathering together; as, *simul together, undè one, pariter alike.*
- Parting; as, *sorsim severally, gregatim by flocks, bifariam two wayes.*
- Choosing; as, *potius rather, imò yea rather, satius better.*
- Excluding; as, *Tantum only, modò only, solum only.*
- Including or denying only; as, *non modò not only, non solum not only, nedum much less.*

Diver-

Species Ad-
verbiorum
sunt 33.

Loci { In Loco; ut, *Hic, illic,*
ad Locum; ut, *Huc, illuc,*
câque { A Loco; ut, *Hinc, illinc.*
Per Locum; ut, *Hac, illac.*

Temporis; ut, *Nunc, tunc, hodie, usq;* Temporis
& Loci est.

Numeri; ut, *Semel, bis, ter, iterum.*

Ordinis; ut, *Indè, denique, demum.*
Interrogandi; ut *Cur ? quare ? unde ?*

Vocandi; ut, *Heus; ô cho.*
Affirmandi; ut, *Certè, na, profectò, scilicet.*

Negandi; ut, *Non, haud, minimè,*
Jurandi; ut, *Pol, ædipol, hercle.*

Hortandi; ut, *Agè, sodes, sùltis,*

Concedendi; ut, *Licèt, ssto, sit-sane.*

Prohibendi; ut, *Nè, non.*
Adulandi; ut, *Amabò.*
Optandi; ut, *utinam, ô st.*
Congregandi; ut, *Simul, undè, pariter.*

Segregandi; ut, *Seorsim, gregatim, bisariam.*

Eligendi; ut, *Potius, imò, satius.*

Excludendi; ut, *Tantum, modò, solum.*
Includendi, sive negææ solitudinis; ut, *Non mo-
dò, non solum, nedum.*

According to their signification some are called Adverbs of

Diversity, as, *Aliter*, otherwise, *secus* otherwise.
Propinquity or nearness, as, *obviam* meeting,
præsto at hand.

Intending or Increasing; as, *Valde* very, *nimirum*
too much *funditus* utterly, *omnino* altogether.

Remitting or diminishing, as, *Vix* scarce, *agere*
hardly, *paulatim* by little and little, *pedetentim*,
foot by foot.

Restraining, as, *Quatenus* as far as, *quoad* as
much as concerneth, *in quantum* in as much as.
Of a thing not finished, as, *Pene* almost, *semita*
in a manner.

Explaining, as, *Putà* suppose *utpote* as, *nimirum*
to wit, *id est* that is, *videlicet* to wit, *quasi*
dicat as if one should say.

Doubling, as, *Forſan* perhaps, *forſitan* perhaps
so, *forſaſſis* if it be so.

Chance, as, *Fortè* as it falls out, *fortuito* by
chance, *fortè* fortune by fortune.

Shewing, as, *En* lo, *ecce* behold, *sic* thus, *ita* so.

Likeness, as, *Sic* so, *sicut* as, *ceu* as, *tanquam* as,
ita as.

Quantity, as, *Parum* a little, *minimè* very little,
ſatis enough *abunde* in abundance.

Quality, as, *Bene* well, *malè* ill, and such as end
in e, and come of Adjectives of three termina-
tions, as, *Doctè* learnedly, *Pulcrè*, bravelly; al-
so such as end in er, and come of Adjectives of
three Articles; as, *graviter* heavily, *feliciter*
happily.

Comparing, as, *Tam* as well, *quàm* as, *minùs*
less, *aque* as well as, *magis* atq; rather than.

Adverbs derived of Adjectives are compared like
Adjectives, and differ only in termination, as, *Doctè*
learnedly, *doctius* more learnedly, *doctissime* most
learnedly, *fortiter* strongly, *fortius* more strongly,
fortissime most strongly. Like

Diversitatis, ut, *Aliter, secus.*

Propinquitatis, ut, *Obviam præstō.*

Intendendi, ut, *Valde, nimis, funditus, omnino.*

Remittendi, ut, *Vix, egre, paulatim, pedetentim,*

Restringendi, ut, *Quatenus, quoad, inquantum.*

Rei non peractæ, ut, *Penè, ferme.*

Explicandi, ut, *Putā, utpote, nimirum, i. e. (id est) viz. (videlicet) q. d. (quasi dicat.)*

Dubitandi, ut, *Forsan, forsitan, fortassis.*

Eventus, ut, *Fortè fortuitò, forte fortunā.*

Demonstrandi, ut, *En, ecce, sic, itā.*

Similitudinis, ut, *Sic, sicut, ceu, tanquam, velut.*

Quantitatis, ut, *Parum, minimè, satis, abunde,*

Qualitatis, ut *Bene, male,* & quæ in e desinunt, ab Adjectivis trium terminationum: ut, *Docte, pulcre* : item in er ab Adjectivis trium Articulorum, ut, *Graviter, feliciter.*

Comparandi, ut, *Tam, quam, minùs, æque, magis atque.*

Adverbia ab Adjectiva derivata more Adjectivorum comparantur ; sed solâ terminatione differunt ; *doctè, doctius, doctissimè, fortiter, fortius, fortissime.*

Likewise Bene well melius better, optimè very well: Sæpi often, sæpius more often sæpiusmè very often: Nuper lately, nuperimè very lately, with many others.

Sometimes Adjectives of the Neuter Gender take upon them the nature of Adverbs, in imitation of the Greeks, as, *Recentius* for *recenter* newly, *Torvum* for *torvè* frowningly

Chap. 40. *Of a Conjunction.*

VI.
A Conjunction con-
joyneth
words and
sentences.
Its kinds
according to
signification
are 17.

A CONJUNCTION is a part of Speech which fully joyneth words and sentences together.

Copulatives, which couple both the sense and the words; as, *Et* and, *que* and, *et* not.

Suspensives, which stay the speech, or make another thing to be expected; as, *Cum* both, *both*, & *both*, *vel* *either*, *nec* *neither*, being set together.

Disjunctives, which sever the sense and couple
the words, as, *Aut* 02, *five* 02, *vel* 02.

Causale, which give the reason of the former sentence, as, *Nam* for, *enim* for, *quia* because.

Diferetives, which make a difference; as, *So*
but, verò but, al but,

Conditionals, which imply a condition, as, *Si* if
fin but if, *n: si* except, *dum* so that.

Exceptives, which except some thing, as, *Ni un-*
less, nisi except, quin but, alioquin otherwise

Interrogatives, which ask a question, as, **whether? an whether? utrum whether?**

Dubitatives, which propound a doubt, as, *whether or no?* *whether or no, nunquid*
what?

Rationals, or Illatives, which infer the conclusion

Similiter & Bene, melius, optime : sape, sapius, se-
ssime : nuper, nuperrime, cum paucis aliis.

Alquando Neutra Adjectiva induunt formam Ad-
verbiorum, ad Græcorum imitationem; ut, Recens
præceter : Torvum pro torvè.

Cap. 40. De Conjunctione.

CONJUNCTIO est pars Orationis, quæ vo-
ces & sententia ap. è connectit.

VI.

Conjunctio
voces & sen-
tentias con-
jungit.
Species ejus
quoad signi-
ficationem
supra 17

Copulativa, quæ & sensum & verba copulant,
ut, Et, que, nec.

Suspensiva, quæ orationem suspendunt, sive
aliud expectari faciunt, ut, Cum, cum, &, vel,
nec, geminatae.

Disjunctivæ, quæ sensum disjungunt, verba ve-
rò copulant, ut, Aut, sive, vel.

Causales, quæ causam reddunt superioris sen-
tentia, ut, Nam, enim, quia.

Discretivæ, quæ discretionem faciunt, ut, Sed,
verò, at, atque.

Conditionales, quæ conditionem implicant, ut,
Si, si, nisi, dum.

Exceptivæ, quæ aliquid excipiunt, ut, Nisi, nisi,
quin, alioquin.

Interrogativæ, quæ interrogant, ut, Nè, an, u-
tràm,

Dubitativæ, quæ dubitant, ut, An, num, num-
quid.

Rationales, sive Illativæ, quæ ex ratione pro-
posita

According to their signification some be

According to their
Order some beAccording
to its Order
four.

tion from the reason set down, as, *Ergò therefore, idèd therefore, itaque therefore.*

Continuatives, which continue the members of a speech in order, as, *deinde after, porro furthermore, proinde thereupon, insuper moreover.*

Concessives or Adversatives, which grant somewhat which the following sentence may oppose, as, *Et si although, quanquam although, licet though, tametsi although, quamvis although.*

Redditives to the same, which being referred to their Concessives, make a sentence diverse from the former, as, *tamen yet, attamen but yet, verùm but, veruntamen. yet notwithstanding.*

Electives, which shew the former member of the sentence to be preferred, as, *Quàm as, ac as, atque as.*

Diminutives, which lessen the sense, as, *saltem at least, vel even.*

Expletives or Compleives, which fill up a sentence for ornaments sake, as, *Quidem indeed, autem and, scilicet, forsooth, enim vero truly.*

Conjunctions adverbial, or Adverbs conjunctive which with a very little difference are discerned from Adverbs, as, *Quando when, seeing that, proinde therefore or then.*

Prepositives, which are set in the beginning of sentences, as, *nam for, quare wherefore, atque.*

Subjunctives, or Postpositives, which have the second, third, or fourth place in a clause, as, *Quidem indeed, quoque also, verò indeed, enim for.*

Commons, which may indifferently be set before or after, as, *Ergò therefore, igitur therefore, itaque therefore sed but.*

Et

Quoad potestatem five significationem Conjunctionum alia sunt

Quoad ordinem sunt

posita conclusionem inferunt, ut, *Ergo, ideo, itaque,*

Continuativæ, quæ membra orationis ordine continuant, ut, *Deinde, porro, proinde, insuper*

Concessivæ, sive Adversativæ, quæ aliquid concedunt, cui posterior sententia adversetur, ut, *Esse, quanquam, licet, tametsi, quavis.*

Redditivæ earundem, quæ ad Concessivas relatæ diversam sententiam superiori reddunt, ut, *Tamen, attamen, veruntamen.*

Electivæ, quæ ostendunt præcedens membrum sententiæ præferri, ut, *Quam, ac, atque.*

Diminutivæ, quæ diminuunt sensum, ut, *Saltem, vel.*

Expletivæ, vel Completivæ, quæ ornatu gratiæ sententiam complent; ut, *Quidem, autem, scilicet, enimvero.*

Conjunctiones adverbiales, vel adverbia conjunctiva, quæ tenui discrimine ab adverbis discernuntur, ut, *Quando, proinde.*

Præpositivæ, quæ in sententiarum exordio ponuntur, ut, *Nam, quare, at.*

Quoad Ordinem quatuor.

Subjunctivæ, sive postpositivæ, quæ secundum, tertium, vel quartum locum in clausula occupant, ut, *Quidem, quoque, verò, enim.*

Communes, quæ indifferenter & præponi & postponi possunt, ut, *Ergo, igitur, itaque, sed.*

{ Encliticals, or Inclinatives, which are annexed to the former word, and incline or turn back their accent into the last syllable of it; as, *Que, nē, vēr, dum, sis, nam.*

Chap. 41. Of a Preposition.

VII,
A Preposition is set before other words.
There be
34 Prepositions, some of which are
1 Separable.

A PREPOSITION is a part of Speech which is set before other words,
either { Apposition; as *Ad scholam, to the School.*
in { Composition; as, *Advenio. to come to.*

Prepositions are either { 1 Separable,
Or,
2 Inseparable.

Separable Prepositions are used both in and out of Composition; of whose regiment we shall treat, *Lib. 3. Chap. 8.*

For thirty one of these govern an Accusative case, *viz.*

<i>Ad to</i>	<i>Erga towards</i>	<i>Præter besides</i>
<i>Apud at</i>	<i>Extra without</i>	<i>prope nigh (of</i>
<i>Adversus } against</i>	<i>Infra below</i>	<i>Propter because</i>
<i>Adversum }</i>	<i>Inter between</i>	<i>Secundum ac-</i>
<i>Ante before</i>	<i>Intra within</i>	<i>cording to</i>
<i>Cis } on this</i>	<i>juxta by</i>	<i>Secus by</i>
<i>Citra } side</i>	<i>Ob for</i>	<i>supra above</i>
<i>Circum } about</i>	<i>Penes in the power</i>	<i>Trans beyond</i>
<i>Circa }</i>	<i>Per by</i>	<i>Versus to=</i>
<i>Circiter }</i>	<i>Ponè behinde</i>	<i>wards</i>
<i>Contra against</i>	<i>Post after</i>	<i>Ultra beyond</i>

Which sence have comprised in these four Verses.

Ad, penes, adversus, cis, circa, circum, extra,
Erga, apud, ante, cœus, trans, supra, versus, ob, infra,
ultra,

Encliticæ sive Inclinativæ, quæ affixæ præcedenti voci, accentum suum in ejus ultimam syllabam inclinant; ut, *Que, nè, ve, dum, sis, &c.*

Cap. 41. De Præpositione.

PRÆPOSITIO est pars Orationis quæ aliis vocibus præponitur,

vel in { Appositione; ut, *Ad Scholam.*
 { Compositione; ut, *Advenio.*

Præpositiones sunt vel { ¹ Separabiles,
 { Sive,
 { ² Inseparabiles,

¹ Separabiles sunt, quæ & in & extra Compositionem usurpantur; de quarum regimine dicemus, *Lib. 3. cap. 8.*

Ex his enim Triginta una Accusativum regunt, viz.

<i>Ad</i>	<i>Erga</i>	<i>Præter</i>
<i>Apud</i>	<i>Extra</i>	<i>Prope</i>
{ <i>Adversus</i>	<i>Infra</i>	<i>Propter</i>
{ <i>Adversum</i>	<i>Inter</i>	<i>Secundum</i>
<i>Ante</i>	<i>Intra</i>	<i>Secus</i>
{ <i>Cum</i>	<i>Juxta</i>	<i>Supra</i>
{ <i>Citra</i>	<i>Ob</i>	<i>Trans</i>
{ <i>Circum</i>	<i>Penes</i>	<i>Versus</i>
{ <i>Circa</i>	<i>Per</i>	<i>Ultra</i>
{ <i>Circiter</i>	<i>Ponè</i>	
<i>Contra</i>	<i>Post</i>	

Quas aliqui quatuor vel tribus complectuntur.

Ad, penes, adversus, cum, citra, circiter, extra,
Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus, ob, infra,
ultra,

VII.
 Præpositio a
 aliis vocibus
 præponitur.
 Præpositio-
 nes sunt 34
 Quarum a-
 liæ sunt
 I Separabi-
 les.

ultra, post, præter, propter, prope, pone, secundum
Per, circum, circa, contra, juxta, inter, & intra.

And twelve govern an Ablative case, viz. *A, ab, abs*
from, absque without, coram before, cum with, de, ex
of, præ before, pro for, sine without.

Five govern both these cases; viz. *Clam* *privily,*
in in, sub & subter under, super above; only, *tenus,*
up to. Will have an Ablative case singular, and Geni-
 tive plural.

Others Inseparable. Inseparable Prepositions are such as are never found
 without Composition, viz.

<i>Am</i>	as,	<i>Ambio</i> to go about.
<i>Di</i>		<i>Diduco</i> to bring unto sundry parts.
<i>Dis</i>		<i>Distrabo</i> to distract.
<i>Re</i>		<i>Recipio</i> to receive.
<i>Se</i>		<i>Sepono</i> to set aside.
<i>Con</i>		<i>Convivo</i> to live together.
<i>Ve</i>		<i>Vesanus</i> outrageous.

The signification of Prepositions is not so much
 to be learned by rules, as by daily use of reading and
 writing.

Some Prepositions are wont to be set after their
 cases; viz. *Cum, as, quibuscum with whom, tenus, as,*
pube tenus up to the privy parts, versus, as, Londinum
versus towards London; to which usque may be ad-
ded, as ad Orientem usque, as far as th: East.

Prepositions, when they be put without a case be-
 come Adverbs; as, *Coram laudare, clam vituperare*
to praise one in presence, and dispraise privily.

Some Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Prepositions, ac-
 cording to their several significations, are judged
 sometimes Prepositions, sometimes Adverbs, and some-
 times Conjunctions.

Some Prepositions do make Adjectives of the Com-
 parative and Superlative degree, as in chap. 17. l. 2.
 Chap.

*ultra, post, præter, propter, prope, pone, secundum,
Per, circum, circa, contra, iuxta, inter, & intra.*

Duodecim verò regunt Ablativum; *A, ab, abs, absque, coram, cum, de, è, ex, præ, pro, sive.*

Quinque serviunt utrique casui, *clam, in, sub, subter, super*: unicum *tenus* gaudet Ablativo singulari, & Genitivo plurali.

2 *Inseparabiles* sunt, quæ nunquam extra compositionem inveniuntur. 2 *Aliæ Inseparabiles.*

<i>Am</i>	}	}	<i>Ambio</i>
<i>Di</i>			<i>Diduco</i>
<i>Dis</i>			<i>Distraho</i>
<i>Re</i>			<i>Recipio</i>
<i>Se</i>			<i>Sepono</i>
<i>Con</i>	}	}	<i>Convivere</i>
<i>Ve</i>			<i>Vesanus.</i>

Præpositionum significatio non tam regulis, quàm assiduo legendi ac scribendi usu discenda est.

Quædam Præpositiones suis casibus postponi solent; *viz. cum, ut quibuscum; tenus, ut, pube tenus; versus, ut, Londinum versus*: quibus addi potest *usque*; *ut, ad Orientem usque.*

Præpositiones cum sine casu ponuntur sunt Adverbia; *ut, coram laudare, & clam vituperare.*

Quædam Adverbiorum, Conjunctionum, & Præpositionum, pro variâ eorum significatione, modò Adverbia, modò Conjunctiones, modò Præpositiones censerî possunt.

Quædam Præpositiones procreant Adjectiva Comparativi & Superlativi gradus, *ut videre est, cap. 17. Lib. 2.*

Cap.

Chap. 42.

Of an Interjection.

AN *Interjection* is a part of Speech interposed among other, which significeth a passion of the mind suddenly breaking forth.

There be so many *Interjections* then, as there are motions of a troubled mind, viz. of

Rejoycing; as, *Evax hey brave, vah how, io o fine.*

Sorrowing; as, *Heu alas, hei : hai welladay o ah ah.*

Dreading; as, *Atat out alas.*

Marvelling; as, *Pape O strange.*

Disdaining; as, *Hem oh, vah away with it.*

Shunning; as, *Apage a haunt, apagite be gone.*

Calling; as, *Eho ho, ho, io so ho.*

Praising; as, *Euge well done, eja a ha.*

Scorning; as, *Hui swhe.*

Exclaiming; as, *Proh o.*

Cursing; as, *Malum with a mischief, va malum, wo with a mischief.*

Disliking; as, *Phy out upon it.*

Threatning; as, *Væ wo.*

Laughing; as, *Ha, ha, he.*

Silence; as, *An'tt who'sht, pax peace.*

Sometimes Nouns, Verbs, and other words are put into a Speech in manner of Interjections; as, *insan- dum* not to be spoken, *Amabè* of all loves, or as thou lovest me, *Malum* with a mischief, *mirabile* & *tu* wonderful to be said, &c.

Cap. 43.

De Interjectione.

Interjectio est pars Orationis quæ subito prorumpentem animi affectum demonstrat.

Noti igitur sunt Interjectiones, quot sunt animi perturbati motus, viz.

Exultantis; ut, *Evax, vah. io.*

Dolentis; ut, *Heu, hoi, hei, oh.*

Timentis; ut, *Atar.*

Admirantis; ut, *Papa.*

Indignantis; ut, *bem, vah.*

Vitantis; ut, *Apage, apagite.*

Vocantis; ut, *Eho, ho, io.*

Laudantis; ut, *Euge, eja.*

Deridentis; ut, *Hui.*

Exclamantis; ut, *Oh, proh.*

Imprecantis; ut, *Malum, va malum.*

Fastidientis; ut, *Phy.*

Minantis; ut, *Vae.*

Ridentis; ut, *Ha, ha, he.*

Silentium orationi injungentis; ut, *An'fi, par.*

Aliquando Nomina, Verba, & aliae voces interjiciuntur, more Interjectionum; ut, *Infandum, amabo, malum, mirabile dictu, &c.*



LIB. III.

OF SYNTAX.

Syntax
teacheth the
due joyning
of words
By Rules.

SYNTAX, or Construction, is the third part of Grammar, which teacheth the due joyning of words together.

And that is the due joyning of words which the most approved among the antients have used both in writing and speaking.

There be two parts of Syntax,	} Concordance, and Government,	Chap. 1.
		Chap. 2.

Chap. 1.

Of Concordance.

Of Concordance.

Concordance is the construction of words according to their agreement in some of the things that belong unto them.

▲ There be three Concords	}	<i>The first</i> between the Nominative case and the Verb. Sect. 1.
		<i>The second</i> between the Substantive and the Adjective. Sect. 11.
		<i>The third</i> between the Antecedent and the Relative. Sect. 111.

To which may be added the rules	}	Of the case of the Relative. Sect. IV.
		Of the word that asketh, and the word that answereth to the question. Sect. V.

Sect.

LIB. III.

DE SYNTAXI.

SYNTAXIS, five Constructio, est tertia pars Grammatices, quæ debitam partium Orationis inter se Compositionem docet.

Ita vero est debita Compositio, quæ veterum promississimi, tum in scribendo, tum in loquendo sunt Per Regulas.

Syntaxeos partes	} <i>Concordantia.</i>	Cap. 1.
duæ sunt		
	&	
	} <i>Regimen</i>	Cap. 2.

Cap. 1.

De Concordantiâ.

Concordantia est dictionum constructio secundum earum in accidentibus quibusdam convenienciam.

Sunt autem Concordantiæ tres	}	<i>Prima</i> inter Nominativum & Verbum. Sect. I.
		<i>Secunda</i> inter Substantivum & Adjectivum. Sect. II.
		<i>Tertia</i> inter Antecedens & Relativum. Sect. III.

Quibus adiungi possunt Regulæ	}	De casu Relativi. Sect. IV.
		De Interrogativo & Reddito. Sect. V.

Sect.

§. I. The Rule of the first Concord.

A Verb Personal agreeth with its Nominative in case in Number and Person : as,

The Master readeth, and yet neglect.

Whilest the Cat sleepeth, the Mice dance.

1 *Obs.* The Nominative case of the first or second person is very seldom set down ; as,

Without God (we) can do nothing.

1 *Exc.* Unless it be for differencing sake, *i. e.* when we signifie several employments ; as,
thou playest, I ply my looke.

2 *Exc.* Or for Emphasis sake, *i. e.* when we mean more than we speak expressly ; as,

Thou art our Patron, thou art our Father, if thou forsakest us, we are undone.

1 *Obs.* The Verb Substantive is very often understood ; as, *There (is) no safety in War.*

Such a Master, such a Man.

3 *Obs.* Oft times other Verbs (also) are understood ; as, (** To pick out*) *the Ravens eyes.*

The Sow († will return to the mire.)

§. II. The Rule of the second Concord.

THe Adjective agreeth with its Substantive in case, gender, and number ; as,

True faith is a rare bird in the earth, and very like to a black Swan.

An hasty bitch bringeth forth blind whelps.

1 *Obs.* An Adjective put like a Substantive doth supply the place of a Substantive, as,

A learned poor man is better than an unlearned rich man.

All evil things are to be avoided.

A good man is a common good.

§. I. Regula prima Concordantiæ.

L

III

Verbum Personale cœheret cum Nominativo
Numero & personâ; ut,

Præceptor legit, vos verò negligitis.

Dum felis dormit, saluant mures.

Obs. Nominativus primæ vel secundæ personæ rari-
ssimè exprimitur; ut,

Absque Deo nihil possumus.

Exc. Nisi causâ discretionis, viz. cum diversa
studia significamus.

Tu ludis, ego studeo

Exc. Aut Emphasis gratiâ; viz. cum plus significamus,
quàm expressa dicimus; ut,

Tu es Patronus, tu Pater; si deseris tu, perimus.

Obs. Verbum Substantivum sæpissimè subauditur,
ut, *Nulla salus bello.* (* est)

Qualis Dominus, talis Servus.

Obs. Sæpe reticentur & alia verba; ut,

Corvici oculum. (* configere)

Sus ad lutum. († redibit)

§. II. Regula secunda Concordantiæ.

II

Adjectivum cum Substantivo, genere, numero
& casu consentit; ut,

Rara avis in terris, nigròque simillima cygno.

Vera fides.

Canis festinans cæcos parit catulos.

1. Obs. Adjectivum Substantive positum supplet lo-
cum Substantivi; ut,

Doctus pauper indocto divite præstantior est.

Omnia mala sunt fugienda.

Vir bonus est commune bonum.

O

§. III.

III.

III.

§. III. The Rule of the third Concord.

3 The third.

THe Relative (*qui*) agreeth with its Antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,

The man is wise that speaketh few words.

The first hour that gave life, took from it.

The burden is made light, which is well born.

N. B. The Antecedent (most commonly) is a word that goeth before the Relative, and is rehearsed again of the Relative.

The Nominative case, the Substantive, and the Antecedent be called *Suppositives*, because in Concordance they be as it were put under the Verb, Adjective, and Relative (which also by some are called *Apposites*) and bear them up; hence

1 *Obs.* In speeches which belong only to men, the *Supposite* is often understood; as,

Thus (men) say commonly.

Good (boyes) learn diligently.

A good (woman) come of good parents.

(He) that maketh too much hast, dispatcheth too late.

(Things) which hurt us, teach us.

2 *Obs.* Sometimes a whole clause, a member of a sentence, a Verb of the Infinitive mood, an Adverb with a Genitive case, or a word put for it self, do supply the place of *suppositives*; as,

To-have-faithfully-learned-the Liberal-Arts, doth qualifie mens manners.

To-rise-early is very wholesome.

Part of the Ensigns are burnt.

I-came-in-season, which is the chiefeft of all things.

Farewel being often said, I again spake many words.

§. III. Regula tertia Concordantia.

Relativum (*qui*) cum Antecedente concordat III.
genere, numero, & personâ; ut, 3 Tertiz.

Vir sapiens, qui pauca loquitur.

Prima, quæ viram dedit, hora carpsit.

Leve fit, quod bene fertur onus.

N. B. *Antecedens* (ferè) est dictio quæ Relativum antecedit, & à Relativo refertur.

Nominativus, Substantivum, & Antecedens dicuntur *Supposita*, quia Verbo, Adjectivo & Relativo (quæ etiam à quibusdam *Apposita* vocantur) in Concordantia quasi supponuntur atque ea sustentant: hinc

1 *Obs.* In orationibus quæ ad homines tantum pertinent *Suppositum* sæpe subauditur; ut,

Sic vulgò dicunt.

Boni discunt seduli.

Bona bonis prognata.

Qui nimium properat, seriùs absolvit.

Quæ nocent, docent.

2 *Obs.* Aliquando oratio, membrum orationis, verbum Infiniti modi, Adverbium cum Genitivo, aut dictio pro se posita, suppleant locum *Suppositorum*; ut,

Leniuas didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores.

Diluculo surgere saluberrimum est.

Partim signorum sunt combusta.

In tempore venit, quod omnium rerum est primum.

Sæpe vale dicto, rursus sum multa loquutus.

3 *Obs.* The Verb, Adjective or Relative, sometimes agree with the Supposite in sense rather than words; as,

A company rush. Both are deluded, or mocked.

An armed Nation fight.

Where is that rogue that hath undone me?

I also am undone too, which is dearer to me.

4 *Obs.* i Verb, Adjective or Relative set between two suppositives of divers numbers or genders, may agree with either of them; as,

The falling out of lovers is the renewing of love.

Poverty seemeth a great burthen,

A living creature full of reason, whom we call a man,

A bird which is called a Sparrow.

The City Lutetia which we call Paris.

5 *Obs.* Many Suppositives Singular, having a Conjunction Copulative between them, will have a Verb, Adjective, or a Relative plural, and these will agree with the more worthy Supposite; as,

I and thou, who ply our books diligently, are in safety.

Thou and he, who sit so negligent, take heed you be not whipt.

6 *Obs.* The Relative and the Antecedent agree also in case, if they be joyned to the same Verb; as,

What City I build, it is yours.

That what Comedies he made might please the people.

N.B. The worthinesse of a Supposite is considered according to its

{	1 Gender,
	or,
	2 Person.

1 The first Person is more worthy than the Second or Third; and the Second more worthy than the third.

2 The Masculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine, or Neuter, and the Feminine is more worthy than the Neuter.

Except. But in things not apparent to have life the Neuter Gender is more worthy; as,

The

3 Obs. Verbum, Adjectivum aut Relativum quandoque cum Supposito sensu magis quam voce convenit; ut,

Turba ruunt. uterque deludantur.

Gens armati pugnant.

Vbi illic scelus est qui me perdidit?

Ego etiam una pereo, quod mihi est carius.

4 Obs. Verbum, Adjectivum aut Relativum inter duo supposita diversorum numerorum, aut generum collocatum, cum alterutro convenire potest; ut,

Amantium iræ amoris, redintegratio est.

Paupertas visum est magnum onus.

Animal plenum rationis, quam vocamus hominem.

Avus (qui vel) quæ passer appellatur.

Urbs Lutetia (quam vel quæ Parisior dicimus).

5 Obs. Plura Supposita singularia per Conjunctionem copulata sæpe Verbum, vel Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale exigunt, atque hæc cum Supposito digniore quadrabunt; ut,

Ego & tu, qui sumemus seduli sumus in tucos.

Tu atque ille, qui sedetis iam supini, extete ne vapuletis.

6 Obs. Relativum & antecedens etiam in casu conveniunt, si eidem verbo jugantur; ut,

Urbem, quam statuo, vestra est.

Populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas.

N.B. Suppositi dignitas } 1 Genus,
aut,
spectatur secundum } 2 Personam.

1 Dignior enim est persona prima quam secunda, aut tertia, & dignior secunda quam tertia.

2 Dignius etiam est masculinum genus quam femininum, aut neutrum, & dignius femininum quam neutrum.

Exc. At in rebus inanimatis neutrum genus adhibetur tanquam dignius; ut,

*The Bows and the Arrows are good,
Thy rod and thy staff (these) have comforted me,
6 Obs. When the Verb or Adjective answereth to
many Suppositives, it agreeth expressly with that which
is nearest to it, and with the rest by supplying it; as,
Thou lyeest where I (lye) thou suppest when we (sup.)
The Husband and the Wife is angry.*

*Exc. Yet when there is a comparison or likeness,
the Verb or Adjective agreeth with the Supposite,
which is further from it; as,*

I write better than thou (writest.)

Gods Law is sweet, as hony is (sweet.)

*7 Obs. A Pronoun Primitive seems to be included
or understood in a Possessive, and therefore the Rela-
tive or adjective do oft agree with such a primitive; as*

It concerneth not me, who am the eldest.

*Seeing no body readeth my writings, fearing to re-
cite them publickly.*

§. IV. Rule, Concerning the case of the Relative.

To which
add.

* The case
of the Re-
lative.

When there cometh no Nominative case^{at}
between the Relative and the Verb, the^{at}
Relative shall be the Nominative case to the Verb;^{at}
as,

*He that bewareth not afore, shall be sorry after-
ward. That which (is) rare, (is) dear.*

*He may easily find a stick, who desires to beat a
dog.*

But if there do come a Nominative case between^{at}
the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be^{at}
governed of the Verb, or of some other word in the^{at}
same sentence; as,

*Oft times thou maist conquer by patience, whom,
thou canst not conquer by force.*

Artes & calami sunt bona.

Virga tua & baculus tuus (ipsa) me consolata sunt.

6 *Obs.* Cum Verbum vel Adjectivum pluribus Suppositis responder, cum viciniore convenit expresse, cum reliquis per supplementum; ut,

Cubas ubi ego, cœnas, quando nos.

Maritus & uxor est irata.

Exc. Attamen quando est comparatio vel similitudo, Verbum vel Adjectivum convenit cum remotiore Supposito; ut,

Ego melius, quam tu, scribo.

Divina lex, sicut mel, dulcis est.

7 *Obs.* Pronomen Primitivum includi vel subintel- ligi in Possessivo videtur, ideoque Relativum aut Adjectivum cum tali Primitivo sæpe concordant; ut,

Nil meâ refert, qui sum natu maximus.

Scripta cum mea nemo legat, vulgo recitare timen- tu.

§. IV. Regula, De casu Re- lativi.

Quoties nullus Nominativus interseritur inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit Ver-
Quibus ad-
das,
 bo Nominativus : ut,

Qui ante non cavet, post dolebit.

Quod rarum charum,

Facile inveniat baculum qui cepit cedere canem.

4 De casu
Relativi.

*At si Nominativus Relativo & Verbo interpona-
 tur, Relativum regitur à Verbo, aut ab alia dictio-
 ne in eadem oratione; ut,*

Sæpe vincas patientiâ, quem non vincas imperu.

Chap. 2.

Of the Government of Nouns.

2 Of Construction.

Government is the Construction of words, according to which every foregoing word governeth a certain case, or mood, of the word which followeth it.

Government is	{	Of Nouns	{	Substantives,	Chap. 2.
				Adjectives,	Chap. 3.
	{	Of Pronouns,			Chap. 4.
		Of Verbs,			Chap. 5.
		Of Participles,			Chap. 6.
		Of Adverbs,			Chap. 7.
		Of Conjunctions,			Chap. 8.
		Of Prepositions,			Chap. 9.
	{	Of Interjections,		Chap. 10.	

For all parts of Speech govern cases except a Conjunction, which yet will have certain moods and tenses.

1 Of Nouns.	Nouns govern four cases:	{	A Genitive,	Scct. VII.
			A Dative,	Scct. VIII.
			An Accusative,	Scct. IX.
			An Ablative,	Scct. X.

VI.

§. VI. Rule, Of Nouns Substantives.

1 Substantives.

“Substantives govern a Genitive case,
 “For when two Substantives come together betokening diverse things, the latter of them shall be in the Genitive case; as,
The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.
Gods Word remaineth for ever.
 1 Obs. But if two or more Substantives belong to one thing, they shall be put in the same case; as,

My

Cap. 2.
De Regimine Nominum.

2 Regimi-
nis.

Regimen est constructio dictionum, secundum quam præcedens quæque dictio regit certum nomen, vel modum sequentis

Nominum	Substantivorum, Cap. 1.
	Adjectivorum, Cap. 3.
Pronominum,	Cap. 4.
Verborum,	Cap. 5.
Participiorum,	Cap. 6.
Adverbiorum,	Cap. 7.
Conjunctionum,	Cap. 8.
Præpositionum,	Cap. 9.
Interjectionum,	Cap. 10.

Omnes enim partes orationis regunt casus, excepta Conjunctione, quæ tamen certos modos & tempora postulat.

Nomina regunt quatuor casus: viz.	Genitivum,	Sect. VII.	1 Nominum
	Dativum,	Sect. VIII.	
	Accusativum,	Sect. IX.	
	Ablativum,	Sect. X.	

§. VI. Regula, De Nominibus Substantivis.

VL

Substantiva Genitivum regunt.

Quam enim duo Substantiva diversæ significationis concurrant, posterius in Genitivo ponitur;

Timor Domini est initium sapientiæ.

Verbum Dei manet in æternum.

1 Obs. Sin duo vel plura Substantiva sunt ejusdem generis, in eodem casu ponentur; ut,

Pater

1 Substanti-
vorum.

My Father being a man, loveth me a child.

Mark Tully Cicero the Prince of Orators

2. *Obs.* The Genitive case of the owner is changed into an Adjective Possessive; as,

My Fathers house.

My Masters Son.

3. *Obs.* The former Substantive is sometime understood by an Ellipsis or defect of a word; as,

To * St. Marie's.

* Church

I saw this mans † Eyrhia.

† Servant

The * third of the Kalends,

* Date.

4. *Obs.* An Adjective of the Neuter gender, being put without a Substantive, will have a Genitive case; as,

As much money as any man keeps in his chest, much credit he hath.

We do not see that (end) of the wallet which is on the back.

So also will others after the Greek fashion; as,

Black Wool will take no dye.

Sneaking dogs clap the tail under the belly,

5. *Obs.* Words importing any quality to the praise or dispraise of a thing, coming after a Noun or Verbe Substantive, shall be put in the Ablative or Genitive case, as,

A child of an ingenious look, and an ingenious blaspemy.

Every basest fellow is of a most lavish tongue.

6. *Obs.* Opus and usus when they be Latine for need will have an Ablative case, as,

What need words?

He hath need of twenty pounds.

But Opus necessary, admits of diverse cases, as,

A guide is necessary for us.

Get such things as are necessary for you.

7. *Obs.* Substantives derived of Verbs, do sometime govern the cases of their Verbs, as,

A man banished from his Country.

Pater meus vir amat me puerum.

Marcus Tullius Cicero Princeps Oratorum.

2 Obs. Genitivus possessoris sapissime in Adjecti-
vi possessivum mutatur; ut,

Patris domus, vel Paterna domus.

Heri filius, vel herilis filius.

3 Prius Substantivum quandoque per Ellipsin sub-
iudicatur, ut,

Ad * *Stæ. Maria.* * *Templum.*

† *Hujus video Byrrhiam.* † *Servum.*

Tertio * *Kalendarum.* * *Die.*

4 Adjectivum in neutro genere absque Substantivo
positum Genitivum postulat; ut,

Quantum quisque sua nummorum servat in arca.

Tantum habet & fidei.

Non videmus id mantica quod in tergo est.

Sic & alia Græcorum imitatione, ut,

Nigra lanarum nullum bibunt colorem.

Canum degeneres caudam sub alvum reflectunt.

5 Obs. Nomina qualicet denotantia ad laudem
vel vituperium rei effereantur in Ablativo vel Genitivo
post nomen vel Verbum Substantivum, ut,

Ingenui vultus puer, ingenuique pudoris.

Contemptissimus quisque solutissima est lingua.

6 Obs. *Opus & usus* pro *necesse*, gaudent Ablativo,

Quid verbis opus est?

usus est viginti minis.

Opus vero pro necessarius variè construitur, ut,

Dux nobis opus est.

Quæ tibi opus sunt para.

7 Obs. Substantiva verbalia verborum suorum casus
interdum regunt.

Exul. à Patria.

Obedience to the Laws.

What have you to do to mind this matter ?

Chap. 3.

VII.

§ VII. Rule, Of Adjectives governing a Genitive case.

2 Adjectives
1 With a
Genitive
case.

Adjectives also govern a Genitive case, that signify desire, knowledge, remembrance; care, fear, or such like passions of the mind; as,
The nature of man is eager of news.
The mind is fore-sighted of that which is to come.
Live mindful of death. Fearful of a storm.
Ignorant of learning.

III. Adjectives derived of Verbs that end in *ar*; as, Virtue is an abandoner of Vices.

Time is a consumer of things.

IV. Nouns Partitives; as, Some of you.

Take *whether* of these thou wilt.

V. Nouns being put partitively, viz. having after them this english of or among, such as are,

1 Certain Interrogatives; as, Which of the brethren?

Is there any among men so miserable as I am?

2 Certain nouns of Number; viz. Cardinals and Ordinals; as, Four of the Judges.

It is not yet apparent who was the eighth of the wise men.

3. Nouns of the Comparative and Superlative degree; as,

Of the hands the right is the stronger.

The middle finger is the longest among the fingers.

1 Obs. Yet these in another sense will have an Ablative case with a Preposition; as,

The first from Hercules. The third from Aeneas.

2 And in another sense a Dative; as,

Second to none in godliness.

3 They

Obtemperatio legibus.

Quid tibi curatio est hanc rem ?

Cap. 3.

§. VII. Regula, De Adjectivis Genitivum regentibus.

VII.

Genitivum etiam regunt Adjectiva quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, curam, tuiorem, aut ejusmodi animi affectionem significant; ut, *Est natura hominum novitatis avida.*

Mens est *presaga futuri.*Vive *memor mortis.* *Timidus procella.**Rudis literarum.*III. Verbalia in *ax*, ut,Virtus est *vitiorum fugax.*Tempus *edax rerum.*IV. Partitiva; ut, *Aliqua vestrum.**Myum horum* mavis accipe.V. Partitivè posita; viz. quæ per *de*, *è*, *ex*, aut

inter exponuntur, cujusmodi sunt,

1 Interrogativa quædam; ut, *Quis fratrum ?**An quisquam hominum* est æquè miser ut ego ?

2 Certa Numeralia; viz. Cardinalia & Ordinalia;

ut, *Quatuor judicum.**Sapientum octavus* quis fuerit nondum constat,

3 Comparativa & Superlativa; ut,

Manuum fortior est dextra.*Digitum* medius est *longissimus.*

1 Obs. Hæc tamen in alio sensu Ablativum exigunt cum præpositione; ut,

Primus ab Hercule. *Tertius ab Aneâ :*

2 In alio verd sensu Dativum ; ut,

Nulli pietate *secundus.*

2. Usur.

3 They are used also with the Prepositions, by which their Genitive case is explained, as,
One of you is a god. One alone of a great many. The chief amongst all.

VI. Besides a great company of other Adjectives (*viz. Compos, reus, exfors, particeps, and the like*) which may better be learned by frequent reading, as,
That hath got his desire. Accused of tht. Exempted from all fault. Partaking of his counsel.

Touching which see LINACER'S and DIS-PAUTER'S Grammars.

VIII.

§. VIII. Rule of Adjectives governing a Dative case.

A Dative.

THese govern a Dative case,
 "1. Adjectives that betoken
 Profit or Disprofit, as,

O be good and favourable to thine own!

Fit for the Country, profitable for the field.

Around grievous to the peace, and enemy to gentle rest.

2 Likeness or Unlikeness, as,

A Poet is very near to an Orator. Equal to Hector.
 Disagreeing to the truth.

3 Pleasure, as, Pleasant to all persons.

4 Submitting, as, Beseeching his Father.

5 Belonging to any thing, as,

Idleness will be troublesome to thee.

There is no way unpassable for virtue.

6 Hitherto are referr'd nouns compounded with
 Con, as, *Cognatus mihi*, akin to me.

Obs. Yet some of these which signifie Likeness may have a Genitive case; as,

Thou art like thy Master.

He was equal to this man, Partaker of his vogue.

3 Usurpantur etiam cum Præpositionibus per quas Genitivus exponi solet; ut,

Est Deus *e vobis* alter. *Solus de plurimis.*

Primus inter omnes.

VI. Ingens præterea Adjectivorum turba (*viç. Compos, reus, exfors, particeps, &c.*) crebrâ lectione melius addiscenda; ut,

Compos voti. Reus furti. Omnis culpa exfors.

Illius consilii particeps.

De quibus videtis LINACRUM & DESPAUTERIUM.

§. VIII. Regula, De Adjectivis Dativum regentibus.

VIII.

Dativum regunt :

¶ Dativos

1. Adjectiva quibus significatur;

1 Commodum aut Incommodum; ut,

Sis bonus, & felixque tuis.

Patriæ idoneus, utilis agro.

Turba gravis paci, placideque inimica quieti.

2 Similitudo aut Dissimilitudo; ut,

Est finitimus Oratori Poëta. Aqualis Hætori;

Veritati dissentaneum.

3 Voluptas; ut, *Jucundus omnibus.*

4 Submissio; ut, *Parenti supplex,*

5 Relatio ad aliquid; ut,

Otium tibi molestum erit.

In via virtuti nulla est via.

6 Huc referuntur ex *Con* Præpositione composita;

Mihi cognatus.

1 Obs. Quædam tamen ex his quæ similitudinem significant, Genitivo gaudent; ut,

Domini similis es.

Par bujus erat. Affinis sceleris vel sceleris.

R

2 Obs.

2 Obs. *Communis, alienus, immunis, proprius, conscius* and superlatives will have diverse cases; as,

Common to all living creatures.

Death is common to all men,

This is common betwixt me and thee.

We meet for the purpose. Far from ambition.

Estranged from Scævola's studies.

Free from this evil. Free to all.

We are free from those evils.

It's proper to fools. Proper to me.

I am guilty to my self of no fault.

He was privy to the prank.

He out-lived his honour.

That surviveth all other things.

3 Obs. *Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus, ineptus, par, equalis*, will have sometimes an Accusative case with a Preposition; as,

Born to glory. Shoes fit for the feet.

A man good of no side.

Virtues are equal and even amongst themselves.

„ II, Nouns Adjectives derived of Verbs, and of the passive signification in *bilis*; as,

He is dead, being to be lamented of all good men.

And more to be lamented by none than thee.

IX.

§. IX. Rule, Of Nouns that govern an Accusative case.

3 An Accusative.

„ A Djectives govern an Accusative, which signifies the measure of length, breadth, or thickness of any things; as, *A foot high. An hand broad.*

Three fingers thick. Seven foot long.

But they sometimes also govern

{ A Genitive case, as, *Border ten foot broad.*
 { An Ablative; as, *A well three foot wide.*

See

2 Obs. *Communis, alienus, immunis, proprius, conscius & superstes* variis casibus serviunt; ut,
Commune animantium omnium.

Mors omnibus communis est.

Hoc mihi tecum commune est.

Alienum consilii. Alienus ambitioni.

Alienus à Scævola studiis.

Immunis huius mali. Omnibus immunis.

Immunes ab illis malis sumus.

Proprium est stultorum. Mihi proprium.

Mihi nullius culpa conscius sum.

Is conscius ille facinori fuit.

Superstes dignitati suæ vixit.

Superstes omnium rerum.

3 Obs. *Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, iniuri-
 us, vehemens, aptus, ineptus, par, equalis*, interdum
 cum Accusativo cum Præpositione junguntur; ut,

Natus ad gloriam. Calcei ad pedes apti.

Homo ad nullam partem utilis.

Virtutes ipsæ inter se æquales & pares.

Cic.

II. Verbalia in *bilis* accepta passivè; ut,

Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit.

Nulli flebilior, quam tibi.

§. IX. Regula, De Nominibus Accu- sativum regentibus.

IX.

Adjectiva regunt Accusativum significantem 3 Accusativum
 longitudinem, latitudinem, aut crassitiam; ut, vus.

Altus pedem. Latus manum.

Crassus tres digitos, Septem pedes longus.

Sed interdum } Genitivum; ut, *Aræ latæ pedum*
 regunt } *denum.*
 } Ablativum; ut, *Fons latus pedibus*
 } *tribus.*

X.

§. X. Rule, Of Nouns governing an Ablative case.

4 An Ablative.

„ I. **T** Hese govern an Ablative case
 „ I Nouns and Adverbs of the Comparative degree, having *than*, *by* or *in* after them; as,
Silver is baser than Gold, and Gold than Virtue.
No Theatre to truth is greater than Conscience.
Higher by a foot. To excel in strength.

1 Obs. *Tantò, quantò, multò, pauò, nimìò, ed, quò, bñc, etate, natu,* are joyned to both degrees of comparison; as,

He is far more skilful than the rest, but not much better.

By how much one is less learned, by so much he is more impudent. The greatest in age, i. e. The eldest. The least by birth, i. e. The youngest.

„ II. These Adjectives *dignus, indignus, praeclivus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus*; as,

Thou art worthy of hatred.

unbefitting the gravity of a wise man.

Endued with every vertue. Deprived of eyes.

Get thee hence, content with thy condition.

Banish'd from his own house. Trusting to thy clemency.

1 Obs. But *dignus*, and *indignus* will have sometimes a Genitive case; as, *A warfare worth thy labour.*

Not unworthy of his great Ancestors.

„ III. Nouns of diversity will have an Ablative case with a Preposition; as, *Another thing from this. Another man from him.*

„ And sometimes a Dative; as, *Different from this thing.*

„ IV. Adjectives and Verbs that signify plenty

„ want, will have an Ablative, and sometimes a Genitive case; as, *Love is very full both of honey and gall.*

Love is a thing full of thoughtful fear.

§. X. Regula, De Nominibus Ablativum regentibus.

x.

Ablativum regunt,
 I Comparativa (Nomina, Verba, & Adverbia) quum exponuntur per *quàm*, aut post se habent nomen significans mensuram excellit; ut,
Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.
Nulium Theatrum veritati conscientia majus est.
uno pede altior. Viribus prestare.
 I Obs. Tantùm, quantùm, multùm, paulùm, nimis, eò, quò, hòc, etate, natu, utriq; gradui apponuntur.

4 Ablativo.

Longè cæteris peritior est, sed non multùm melior.

Quò quis indoctior, eò impudentior.

Maximus etate. Minimus natu.

II. Dignus, indignus, prædictus, captus, contentus; extorris, fretus; ut,

Dignus es odio.

Indignum sapientis gravitate.

Omni virtute præditus. Captus oculis.

Sorte tuâ contentus abi.

Extorris suâ domo. Fretus tuâ clementiâ.

» I Obs. Dignus & indignus interdum etiam Genitivum vendicant; ut *Militia operis digna tui.*

Magnorum non indignus avorum.

III. Nomina diversitatis, Ablativum sibi cum Præpositione subjiunt; ut, *Aliud ab hoc. Alter ab illo.*

Et nonnunquam Dativum; ut, *Huic diversum.*

IV. Adjectiva & verba quæ ad copiam egestatémve pertinent, interdum Ablativo, interdum & genitivo prægaudent; ut, *Amor & melle & felle est fecundissimus.*
Res est solliciti plena timoris amor.

The Latine Grammar.

*Thou aboundest in love. Thou wantest virtue.
Rich in white cattle. Rich in grounds.
Void of guile. Blessed with grace.
Go on or increase in virtue, upright in life.*

„ 1 *Obs.* Some of these will have also an Ablative case
„ with a Preposition; as, *Void of anger.*

„ V. Any Adjective or Verb will have an Ablative case
1 Of the Instrument; as, *Stout at the Sword.
Better at Oars. Jesus vanquished the Devil, not
with weapons, but with death.*
2 Of the Cause; as, *Pale with anger.
Worse for too much liberty.*

3 Of the Circumstance, of the manner of doing, or
of the thing; as,

*An envious man groweth lean at the prosperity of a-
nother. By name a Grammarian, but indeed a Bar-
barian. A Trojan by birth, a Syrian by nation.*

Crooked old age will come by & by with a still pace.

1 *Obs.* But sometimes the Ablative case of the cause
or manner of doing, will have a Preposition; as,
Unprovided of money.

He used the man with a great deal of courtesie.

„ VI. Adjectives and Verbs of buying and selling will
„ have an Ablative case of the price; as,

*Cheap at twenty pounds. Dear at a farthing.
Not to be sold for pearls, or purple, or gold.
That victory cost much blood, and many wounds.
He taught for wages. Wheat is sold at a low rate.
To hire for a penny. To let for a shilling.
He lives at ten pounds rent.*

1 *Obs.* Yet these words, when they are without
Substantives, are put after Verbs in the Genitive
case; viz. *Tanti, quanti, plus, minoris*; as,

I sell not for more than others, but for less.

Things are so much worth, as they may be sold for.

„ VII. Adjectives, and Verbs Pessives and Neutrons

Amore abundas. Cares virtute.

Dives nivei pecoris. Dives agris.

Expers fraudis. Gratiâ beatus.

Macte sis virtute. Integer vita.

1 Obs. Ex his quædam junguntur Ablativo cum Præpositione; ut, *Vacuus iræ, irâ, ab irâ.*

V. Quodvis Nomen aut Verbum admittit Ablativum

1 Instrumenti; ut, *Ense validus. Melior remis.*

Dæmona non armis, sed morte subegit Ielus.

2 Causæ; ut, *Palidus irâ.*

Deteriores licentiâ.

Invidus alterius rebus macrescit opimis.

3 Circumstantiæ modi actionis aut rei; ut,

Nomine Grammaticus, re Barbarus.

Trojanus origine, Syrus natione.

Tam veniet tacito curva senecta pede :

1 Obs. Sed Ablativo causæ aut modi aliquando additur Præpositio; ut,

Imparatus à pecuniâ.

Cic.

Summâ cum humanitate tractavit hominem.

VI. Adjectiva & Verba mercandi regunt Ablativum pretii; ut,

Vilis viginti minis. Asse carus.

Nec gemmis, nec purpurâ venale, nec auro.

Multo sanguine ac vulneribus ea victoria stetit,

Mercede doctus. Vili venit triticum.

Addicere denario. Locare solidò.

Habitat decem minis.

1 Obs. Hæc tamen sine Substantivis posita, Verbis subjiciuntur in Genitivo; viz. *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*; ut,

Non Vendo pluris quàm alii, sed minoris.

Tanti valent res, quanti vendi possunt.

VII. Adjectiva, & Verba Passiva, Neutralia, significancia

that signifie some property or passion, will have an Accusative case, or Ablative, signifying the part or place wherein the property or passion is; as,

He is diseased in his feet. He is sick in mind rather than in body.

He hath red hair. Red-haired.

1 *Obs.* But the part affected is sometimes put in the Genitive case; as, *O thou! that hast a happy wit.*

Thou troublest thy self in mind.

2 *Obs.* These be Greek phrases:

Merry as concerning other things. Like in other things. Like him both in speech and colour.

XL

§. XI. Rule, Of the Ablative case Absolute.

N.B. **A** Noun or Pronoun Substantive, joyned with a Participle, expressed or understood, and having no other word whereof it may be governed, shall be put in the Ablative case Absolute; as,

The King coming, the enemies ran away, i. e. When the King comes. I being Captain.

And it may be resolved by *whilest, when, if, &c.*

Chap. 4.

Of the Government of Pronouns.

§ Of Pronouns.

THese Genitive cases of the Primitives *Mei, tui, nostri* and *vestri*, be used when suffering or passion is signified; but *Meus, tuus, meus, noster* and *vester* be used when action or possession is signified; as,

Part of thee, Thy part. The image of us, Our image. The love of himself, His own love.

1 *Obs.* Possessives are sometimes put for Primitives as, *He did it for my sake.*

2 *Obs.* *Nostri* and *vestri* be used after Distributives, Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives; as,

Some

nificantia aliquam proprietatem vel passionem, possunt regere Accusativum, vel Ablativum, significantem partem in qua est proprietas aut passio; ut,

Ager pedes, vel pedibus. Agrotat animo magis quàm corpore.

Rubet Capillos. Ruber crine.

1 *Obs.* Sed pars affecta interdum in Genitivo ponitur; ut, *O te ! felicem cerebri.*

Angia te animi.

2 *Obs.* Græcæ phrasæ sunt,

Cætera latus. Cætera similis.

Huic vocemque colorémque similis est.

§. XI. Regula, De Allativo absolutè posito.

XI.

N.B. **A**blativus absolutè ponitur expresso Participio, vel subaudito; ut,

*Rege veniente hostes fugerunt,
Me duce.*

Et resolvitur per *Dum, cùm, si, &c.*

Cap. 4.

De Regimine pronominum.

M*Ei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri,* ponuntur cùm passio; sed *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester,* cùm actio vel possessio significatur, ut, 2 Pronomina.

Pars tui, pars tua. Imago nostri, Imago nostra.

Amor sui, Amor suus.

1 *Obs.* Possessiva verò interdum pro Primitivis usurpantur; ut, *Meâ causâ fecit, i. e. mei.*

2 *Obs.* *Nostram & vestram* sequuntur Distributiva, Partitiva, Comparativa & Superlativa, ut,

Aliquis

Some of you. The bigger of you. The eldest of us.
 3 Obs. *Mens, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, will have certain Genitive cases after them, viz *Ipsius, solius, unus, duorum, trium, &c. omnium, plurium, paucorum*, and the Genitives of participles, which are referred to the Primitive, understood in the Possessive; as,

Thou mayest guess out of thine own mind.

Thou hast seen the eyes of me weeping.

II. *Ipse* and *idem* may be joyned to all persons.

I my self will see. Thou thy self go on to do it.

Plato himself said. He himself did it.

Idem governeth sometimes a Dative case; as,

He that saveth a man against his will, doth the same as he that kills him.

But more commonly an Ablative case with a Preposition; as, *The same with it.*

III. *Ille* noteth the eminency or worth of a thing; and *Iste* the baseness or contempt of it; as,

That brave Alexander the great. That mean fellow.

Hic is for the most part referred to the later Antecedent, and the nearer to its self; *Ille* to the former, and the further from it; as,

The Husbandmans aim is contrary to the shepherds, he looks for profit from his land, and he from his stock of cattle.

Cap. 5.

Of the government of Verbs.

V	Erbs governa	Nominative	} Cases	Se&. XII.
		Genitive		Se&. XIII.
		Dative		Se&. XIV.
		Accusative		Se&. XV.
		Ablative		Se&. XVI.

Aliquis *vestrū*. Major *vestrū*. Maximus natu *no-*
strū.

3 *Obs*, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noſter*, *veſter*, quosdam Ge-
nitivos poſt ſe recipiunt ; viz. *Ipfius*, *ſolius*, *unius*, *duo-*
rum, *trium*, *omnium*, *plurimum*, *paucorum*, & Genitivos
Participiorum qui referuntur ad Primitivum in Poſ-
ſeſſivo incluſum; ut,

Extui ipſius animo conjecturam feceris.

Noſtros vidisti *ſentis* ocellos.

II. *Iſpe* & *idem* omnibus perſonis adjungi poſſunt; ut,

Ego ipſe videbo. *Idem* perge facere.

Iſpe Plato dixit. *Hic idem* fecit.

Idem regit aliquando Dativum; ut,

Invitum qui ſervat, *idem* facit *occidenti*.

Sed frequentius Ablativum cum Præpoſitione ; ut,

Idem cum illo.

III. *Ille* eminentiam rei denotat ; *Iſpe* verò con-
temptum; ut,

Alexander ille. *Iſpe* homuncio.

Hic ad poſterius & propius antepoſitum; *Ille* ad
prius & remotius uſitatiſſimè refertur; ut,

Agricolæ contrarium eſt *Pæſtoris* propoſitum;

ille fructum è terrâ ſperat; *hic* è pecore.

Cap. 5.

De Regimine Verborum.

V	Erba re- gunt	{	Nominativum	{	Calm.	Seſt. XII.
			Genitiyum			Seſt. XIII.
			Dativum			Seſt. XIV.
			Accuſativum			Seſt. XV.
			Ablativum			Seſt. XVI.

Quibus

To which also belong the Rules	Of Verbs passives;	Sect. XVII.
	Of such as have a diverse } construction, }	Sect. XVIII.
	Of the Infinitive mood,	Sect. XIX.
	Of the Gerunds, and Supines,	Sect. XX.
	Of the Gerunds in { Di, Do, Dum,	Sect. XXI.
		Sect. XXII.
		Sect. XXIII.
	Of the first Supine,	Sect. XXIV.
	Of the latter Supine,	Sect. XXV.
	Of time,	Sect. XXVI.
	Of Space,	Sect. XXVII.
	Of Place,	Sect. XXVIII.
	Of Impersonals,	Sect. XXIX.

XII.

§. XII. Rule, Of Verbs governing a Nominative case.

1 Of Verbs with, 1 A Nominative.

Verbs Substantives, certain Passives, & Verbs of Gesture will have a Nominative case after them, as well as before them; as,
God is the chiefest good.
Faith is accounted the foundation of our Religion.
An evil shepherd sleepeth void of care.
He will become a learned man.

1 Obs. All manner of Verbs (almost) will have after them a Nominative case of the Noun Adjective that agreeth with the Nominative case of the Verb, in Case, Gender, and Number; as,
The earth remaineth unmoveable. I write very seldom.
Good boyes learn diligently. I speak often.

XIII.

§. XIII. The Rule of Verbs governing a Genitive Case.

1 A Genitive

These Verbs govern a Genitive case :
 1. *Sum*, when it betokeneth possession, or otherwise

Quibus accidunt Regulae	De Verbis Passivis,	Sect. XVII.
	De variam constructionem habentibus,	Sect. XVIII.
	De modo Infinitivo,	Sect. XIX.
	De Gerundiis & Supinis,	Sect. XX.
	De Gerundiis in	Sect. XXI.
		Sect. XXII.
		Sect. XXIII.
	De priore Supino,	Sect. XXIV.
	De posteriore Supino,	Sect. XXV.
	De Tempore,	Sect. XXVI.
	De Spatio,	Sect. XXVII.
	De Loco,	Sect. XXVIII.
	De Impersonalibus.	Sect. XXIX.

§. XII. Regula, De Verbis Nominativum regentibus.

XII

Verba Substantiva, passiva quædam, & Verba gestû, utrinque Nominativum expetunt; ut, I Verborum cum, I Nominativo.

Deus est summum bonum.
Fides Religionis nostræ fundamentum habetur.
Malus pastor dormit supinus.
Hic evadet vir doctus.

Obs. Omnia scilicet Verba post se Nominativum habebunt Adjectivi nominis, quod cum Supposito Verbi, casu, genere, & numero concordat; ut,

Terra manet immobilis. Scribo rarissimus.
Boni discunt seduli. Loquor frequens.

§. XIII. Regula, De Verbis Genitivum regentibus.

XIII

Genitivum regunt:

I. Sum, quoties significat possessionem aut ad aliquid

2 Genitivo;

otherwise pertaining to a thing, as a property or duty; as, *This house is my Fathers house.*

It is (the duty) *of a young man to reverence his elders.*

It is (the property) *of a good shepherd to shear his sheep, not to pill them.*

1 *Obs.* But some Adjectives, as *meum, tuum, humanum*, &c. are put in the Nominative case, where *officium* or *munus* (a duty) seems to be understood by an Ellipsis; as,

It is not my duty to speak against the Authority of the Senate.

It is incident to a man to be angry, but a beastly part to rage.

It is a Kingly part to do well.

„II. Verbs that betoken to esteem or regard; as, *Honesty is reckoned little worth.*

Money is every where much regarded.

I care not this for thee, who valuest mee but an hair.

I take it in good part.

1 *Obs.* But *estimo* will have an Ablative case; as, *Virtue is much to be esteemed.*

He valued it at three-pence.

2 *Obs.* *Valeo* will have a Genitive, an Accusative, or an Ablative case; as, *It is so much worth.*

It is worth two farthings.

3 *Obs.* We say also, *I account, or esteem it as nothing.*

„III. Verbs of accusing, condemning, warning, or acquitting, will have a Genitive case of the crime or punishment; as, *It behooveth him to look to himself, that accuseth another of dishonesty.*

They condemned most innocent Socrates to lose his life.

He admonished me of a mistake.

He is acquitted of theft.

1 *Obs.* And this Genitive case is turned sometimes

aliquid pertinere; ut,

Hæc domus est patris.

Adolescentis est majores natu revereri.

Boni Pastoris est rondere pecus, non deglubere.

I Obs. At hi Nominativi *meum, tuum, humanum,* &c. usurpantur ubi *officium* aut *munus* subintelligi videtur per *Ellipsin*; ut,

Non est *meum* contra *Authoritatem* Senatûs dicere.

Humanum est irasci; *Belluinum* verò sævire.

Regium est benefacere.

II. Verba æstimandi; ut,

Parvi penditur probitas.

Plurimi passim sit pecunia.

Non *hujus* te facio, qui me *pili æstimas.*

Aqui, boni consulo vel facio.

I Obs. *Ætimo* Ablativum etiam adsciscit; ut,

Magno virtus æstimanda est.

Tribus denariis æstimavit.

2 Obs. *Valeo* cum Genitivo, frequentius autem cum Accusativo, & Ablativo junctum reperitur; ut,

Tanti valet. Valet duos asses, vel duobus assibus.

3 Obs. Dicimus etiam, *Pro nibilo puto, habeo, daco, &c.*

„ III. Verba accusandi, damnandi, monendi, & absolvendi, Genitivum criminis, vel pœnæ postulant; ut, *Qui alterum incusat probri,* cum ipsum se intueri oportet.

Socratem innocentissimum capitis condemnabant, Admonuit me errati.

Furti absolutus est.

I Obs. Vertitur hic Genitivus aliquando in Ablativum vel cum Præpositione, vel sine Præpositione; ut,

into an Ablative either with, or without a Prepositi-
on; as, *I will condemn thee of the same fault.*

Is he accused of theft, or dishonesty? Of both.

*I thought that thou wert to be admonished of that
matter.*

„ IV. *Satago, misereor and miseresco,*
He is busie about his own matters. Pity the pains.
Pity thine own stock.

I Obs. But *misereor* and *miseresco*, are sometimes
read with a Dative case; as,

Pity this man. Have compassion on the bad.

„ V. *Reminiscor, obliviscor and memini;* as,
He remembreth his promise. It is the property of
fools to see other mens faults and forget their own.
I will make thee to remember me alwayes.

I. Obs. And these will have also an Accusative case;
as, *I remember my lesson. I forget the song.*

„ VI. Some also after the manner of the Greeks
will have a Genitive case; as,

Cease thy womanish complaints.

It is time to give over the fight.

*He is worthy of all mischief, that blusheth at his
fortune.*

XIV.

§. XIV. Rule, Of Verbs governing a Dative case.

3 Dative.

„ **A**LL manner of Verbs put acquisitively (*i. e.*
„ which are known commonly by these tokens
„ to or for after them) will have a Dative case; as,
I have it for this man, and not for thee.

*I sleep not to all men. Neither is there sowing nor
mowing for me there.*

And to this rule do also belong Verbs that beco-
ken,

„ I To

civum vel cum Præpositione; vel sine Præpositione;
ut, *Condemnabo te eodem crimine.*
Accusatur furti, an stupri? Utroque, vel de utroque.
Puravi eâ de re admonendum esse te.

IV. *Satago, misereor miseresco; ut,*
Is rerum suarum satagit, Miserere laborum.
Generis miseresce tui.
1 Obs. At *misereor* & *miseresco* rariùs cum Dativol
leguntur; ut,

Huic misereor. Miseresce malis.

V. *Reminiscor, obliviscor, & memini; ut,*
Data fidei reminiscitur. Proprium est stultorum;
aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum.
Faciam ut me semper memineris.

1 Obs. Et hæc Accusativum etiam desiderant; ut;
Reminiscor lectionem. Obliviscor carmen.

VI. Quædam etiam, more Græcorum, Genitivum
admittunt; ut,

Desine mollium querelarum.

Hor.

Tempus desistere pugne.

Virg.

Dignus est omni malo, qui erubescit fortune. Curt.

§. XIV. Regula, De Verbis Dativum
regentibus.

XIV. 1

(i. e.
tokens
; as,
ag nos
bero-
s 1 To

Dativum regunt,
Omnia Verba acquisitivè posita; ut,
Huic habeo, non tibi.
Non Omnibus dormio.
Mihi istic nec feritur, nec metitur.

3 Dativu

Atque huic regulæ appendent Verba.

Q

1 Sig-

- 1 To profit or disprofit; as,
It cannot profit or disprofit me.
He hurteth the good, who spareth the bad.
- 2 To compare; as,
To compare great things with small.
He made himself equal to his brother.
Obs. But these will have sometimes an Accusative or an Ablative case with a Preposition; as,
If he be compared to him, he is nothing.
I compare Virgil with Homer.
- 3 To give or to restore; as, *Fortune hath given too much to many, enough to none.*
He is ungrateful that requites not a favour to him that deserveth it.
- 3 To promise or pay; as,
I promise thee these things.
He hath payed the debt unto me.
- 5 To command or to shew; as,
Money hoarded up, commandeth or serveth every body.
Take heed oft-times what thou sayest of any body and to whom.
- 6 To trust; as, *Believe not a woman, no though she seem dead. I commit this to thy trust.*
- 7 To obey, or to be against; as,
A dutiful Son always obeyeth his Father.
Fortune resisteth fluggish prayers.
- 8 To threaten or to be angry with; as,
He threatened death to them both.
I am angry with thee.
- 9 *Sum* with its Compounds, except *possum*; as,
He is a father to the City, and a husband to the City.
Many things are wanting to them that desire nothing.
Obs. Likewise *Sum* and *Suppetit* signifying *I have*; as, *Every man hath his own liking.*
We have mellow apples.

1 Significantia Commodum aut Incommodum;
ut,

Non potest mihi *commodare* nec *incommodare*.

Bonis nocet, qui malis parcat.

2 Comparandi; ut,
Parvis componere magna.

Fratri se adæquavit.

1 Obs. His autem interdum additur Accusativus

ut Ablativus cum Præpositione; ut,

Si ad eum comparatur, nihil est.

Comparo Virgilium cum Homero.

3 Dandi & reddendi; ut, *Fortuna multis nimium
dedit, nulli satis.*

Ingratus est qui gratiam bene merenti non reponit;

4 Promittendi ac solvendi; ut, *Hæc tibi promitto.*

Æ alienum mihi numeravit.

5 Imperandi aut nuntiandi; ut,

Imperat, aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.

Quid de quoquo viro, aut cui dicas, sæpe caverò.

6 Fidendi; ut, *Mulierì nē credas, nē mortuæ quī-
dem. Hoc tuæ mando fidei.*

7 Obsequendi & repugnandi; ut,

Semper obtemperat pius filius patrì.

Iguavis precibus fortuna repugnat.

8 Minandi & Irascendi; ut,

utrique mortem minatus est.

Irascor tibi.

9 Sum euan compositis, præter possum; ut,

urbi pater est, urbiq; maritus.

Multa petentibus desunt multa.

Obs. Item Sum & suppetit, pro habeo; ut,

Velle suum cuique est.

Sunt nobis vitia poma.

He is not poor, *who hath the use of things.*

2 *Obs.* *Sum*, with many others will have a double Dative case; as,

The Sea is a destruction to greedy seamen.

A good King is an ornament to the Common-wealth.

Thou hopest it will be a praise to thee, which thou
imputest as a fault to me.

13 Verbs compounded with the Adverbs, *Satis*,
bene, *male*, and the Prepositions, *Pro*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*,
ante, *post*, *ob*, *in*, and *inter*; as,

He hath done good to many, he hath done ill to none.
I prefer no man before thee.

A new relator addeth something to things he hath
heard.

1 *Obs.* A few of these sometimes change their Dative
case into another case; as,

One man excels another in wit.

I forbid thee fire and water.

2 *Obs.* But *Præco*, *præcedo*, *præcurro*, with some
other Compounds of *præ*, will have rather an Accu-
sative case; as, Thou shalt go before me.

3 *Obs.* There is oft-times a Pleonasm or redun-
dancy of the Dative cases, *Mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*; as,

I slay this man with his own sword.

N. B. Sometimes a Dative case is put figurative-
ly in stead of an Accusative or Ablative with a Prepo-
sition; and of some it is called the eighth case; as,

The cry goeth unto heaven. Keep the heart from
the evil.

xv.

§. XV. Rule, Of Verbs governing an
Accusative case.

4 An Accu-
sative,

Verbs Transitives, are all such as have
them an Accusative case of the doer or
ferer; as, Fear God. Honour the King.

Pauper non est cui rerum suppetit usus.

2 Obs. Sum cum multis aliis geminum adsciscit
Dativum; ut,

Existio est avidis mare nautis.

Rex pius est Reipublicæ ornamento.

Speras tibi laudi fore, quod in hi vitio vertis.

3, 10 Composita cum Adverbii, Satis, bene, male,
& Præpositionibus, præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in,
inter; ut,

Benefecit multis, malefecit nulli.

Neminem tibi antepono.

Auditis aliquid novus adjicit Autor.

1 Obs. Pauca ex his mutant Dativum aliquoties in
aliu casum; ut,

Præstat ingenio alius altum.

Interdico tibi aquâ & igni.

2 Obs. Sed Præco, præcedo, præcurro, & quædam a-
lia Composita cum præ Accusativo potius junguntur;
ut, Præbis me.

3 Obs. Sæpe fit Pleonasmus sive redundantia Da-
tivorum, Mihi, tibi, sibi; ut,

Suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio.

N. B. Aliquando Dativus figuratè ponitur pro Ac-
cusativo aut Ablativo cum Præpositione; & a non-
nullis dicitur octavus casus; ut,

It clamor cælo, pro ad cælum.

Solstitium pecori defendite, pro à pecore.

§. XV. Regula, De Verbis Accusativum
regentibus.

XV.

Verba Transitiva exigunt Accusativum; ut,

4 Accusati-
vo.

Deum time. Regem honora.

It's a sons duty to reverence his Parents.

The fierce Lionelle followeth the wolf, and the Wolf the Kid.

1 Obs. Verbs absolute may have an Accusative case of their own signification, and sometimes an Ablative; as, *I live a life. To live a life long.*

Thou sleepest Endymions sleep. They rejoyced with exceeding great joy. To go a long way. To go the right way. He died a sudden death.

2 Obs. Some Verbs will have an Accusative case figuratively; as, *He smells like a Goat. Thy voice sounds like a man. He offends in the same thing. They counterfeited sober men, and live riotously.*

3 Verbs of asking, teaching, and arraying, will have two Accusative cases, one of the Person, and another of the Thing; as,

Do thou only ask God leave.

Hunger teacheth a man many things.

He put on his shoes which he had first put off.

4 But some of these sometimes change the one Accusative case into the Dative or Ablative; with, or without a Preposition; as, *I put on thy coat, or I put thy coat on thee. He informeth the Senate of his journey. Let us intreat leave of him.*

§ XVI.

§. XVI. Rule, Of Verbs governing an Ablative case.

§ Ablative.

These govern an Ablative case, 1

I. All Verbs, so that the Ablative case be,

1 Of the Instrument.

2 Of the Cause.

3 Of the manner of doing.

II. Verbs of price.

III. Verbs that signifie some property or passion.

Concerning which we have spoken before in the Regiment of Nouns, p. 218

IV.

Fili est, revereſci parentes.

Torva Lexena *Lupum* ſequitur, *Lupus* ipſe *Capellam*.

1 *Obſ.* Verba abſoluta Accuſativum admittunt cognatæ ſignificationis & aliquando Ablativum; ut, *Vivo vitam. Vitâ diu vivere.*

Endymionis ſomnum dormis.

Gaudebant gaudium valde magnum.

Longam ire viam. Iereclâ oâ.

Morte obiit repentinâ.

2 *Obſ.* Quædam etiam figuratè Accuſativum habent; ut,

Olet hircum. Vox ſonat hominem

Eadem peccat. Curioſi ſimulant & Brechinalia vivunt.

3 Verba rogandi, docendi, veſtiandi, duplicem regunt Accuſativum; unam perſonæ, alterum rei; ut,

Tu modò poſce Deum veniam.

Multa hominem fames docet.

Induit ſe calceos quos priùs exuerat.

4 Sed interdum mutant alterum Accuſativum in Dativum vel Ablativum, cum, vel ſine Præpoſitione; ut,

Induo te tunica, vel tibi tunicam. Senatum edocet de itinere. Veniam oremus ab ipſo.

§. XVI. *Regula, De Verbis Ablativum regentibus.*

XVI.

Ablativum regunt

I. Quodvis Verbum; modò ſi Ablativus ſit,

1 *Instrumenti,*

2 *Cauſæ.*

3 *Modi Actionis,*

II. Verba pretii.

III. Verba proprietatem vel ſiſtentionem ſignificantia.

§ Ablativo.

De quibus in Regimine Nominum ſupra dictum eſt, p. 219.

Q 4

IV.

IV. Verbs of plenty or scarcenesse.

V. Some certain Deponents and Neuters, viz.

<i>Fangor,</i>	}	They that would get true glory,
<i>Fruor,</i>		must discharge the duties of Justice
<i>utor,</i>		It's the best to make use of ano-
<i>Vescor,</i>		thers madnesse.
<i>Nitor,</i>		It helpeth in a bad matter, if thou
		canst use a good courage.
		I eat flesh.
		I trust to my strength. It becometh
		one to rely on his virtue, not his
		blood. (honour.
<i>Dignor,</i>	} as,	I think not my self worthy of such
<i>Prosequor,</i>		I pursue thee with love, i.e. I love
		thee.
<i>Muto,</i>		He changeth square things for round
<i>Munero,</i>		He rewardeth him with the fellow-
		ship of his Kingdom.
<i>Supersedeo</i>		We must leave off the multitude of
		examples. (at my table.
<i>Communico</i>		I will give thee allowance alwaies
<i>Afficio,</i>		I affect thee with joy, or I make
		thee glad, with some few others

VI. Verbs of Comparing or Exceeding; as,

I prefer this man by many degrees.

He is beyond him but a little space.

It is seemly to be overcome in virtue by those whom thou excellest in eminency of place.

„ VII. Verbs that betoken receiving, distance, or taking away, will have an Ablative case with a Proposition; as, *I heard it of many. It is far distant from us. I delivered thee from the evils.*

1 Obs. And this Ablative may be turned into the Dative; as, *He took his life from him.*

VIII. *Mereor* will have an Ablative case with the Proposition *De;* as,

IV. Verba Abundandi, & Implendi.

V. Cetera quædam Deponentia & Neutra, viz

<i>Fungor,</i>	1	Qui adipisci veram gloriâ volunt, Justitiæ fungantur officiis.
<i>Fruct,</i>		Optimum est alienâ inſantiâ frui.
<i>utor,</i>		In re malâ animo ſi bono utare, juvat.
<i>Vesco,</i>		<i>Vesco caruibus.</i>
<i>Nitor,</i>		<i>Nitor meis viribus Virtute decet, non ſanguini niti.</i>
<i>Dignor,</i>	ut,	Haud equidē tali me dignor honore
<i>Proſequor,</i>		<i>Proſequor te amore.</i>
<i>Muto,</i>		<i>Mutat Quadrata rotundis.</i>
<i>Munio,</i>		Regni cum ſocietate munieravit.
<i>Superſedeo</i>		Exemplorum multitudi- ne ſuperſe- dendum eſt.
<i>Communico</i>		<i>Cōmunicabo te ſemper menſâ meâ.</i>
<i>Afficio,</i>		<i>Afficio te gaudio, cum paucis aliis.</i>

VI. Verba quæ vim Comparationis obtiner; ut,

*Præfero hunc multis gradibus.**Paulo intervallo illum ſuperat.*Deforme eſt ab iis virtutibus ſuperari, quos digni-
tate præſtas.

VII. Verba Accipiendi, Diſtandi & Auferendi

Ablativum cum Præpoſitione optant; ut,

*Audiſi ex multis. Longè diſtat à nobis.**Eripuit te à malis.*1 Obſ. Vertitur hic Ablativus aliquando in Dati-
vum; ut, *Eripuit illi vitam.*VII. *Merceor* Ablativo adhæret cum Præpoſitione
De; ut,

De

Thou never deservedst well of me.

Cataline deserved very ill of the Common-wealth.

XVII.

§. XVII. Rule, Of Verbs Passives.

Verbs Passives will have after them an Ablative case with a Preposition, and sometimes a Dative; as, *Virgil is read of me.*

A Boar is oft-times held by a little dog.

Honest things, not hidden things, are desired of good men.

1 Obs. The other cases remain in the Passives which belong to their Active; as,

Thou art accused by me of theft.

Thou shalt be made a mocking-stock.

2 Obs. *Vapulo, veneo, liceo, exsulo* and *fio*, do follow the construction of Passives, i.e. they govern an Ablative case with a Preposition, or a Dative; as,

Thou shalt be whipt by the Master. I had rather be spoiled by a Citizen, than sold by an enemy.

What will become of him? Virtue is cheapned by all at a low rate. Why is Philosophy banish'd from banquets?

XVIII.

§. XVIII. Rule, Of Verbs having diverse Constructions.

With a diverse Construction.

I. **T**He same Verb may have diverse cases in a several respect or consideration; as,
He gave me his garment for a pawa, thou being present, with his own hand.

II. These Verbs have a diverse Construction,

1 In the same signification; as,

1 *I flatter thee.*

2 *He bespotted me.*

3 *I hearken to thee.*

4 *I agree with thee.*

5 *I dissent from thee.*

6 *I bestow a book on thee.*

De me nunquam bene meritus es.

Catilina pessimè de Republicâ meruit.

§. XVII. *Regula, De verbis Passivis.*

XVII.

Verba Passiva admittunt Ablativum cum Præpositione, & interdum Dativum; ut,
Virgilius legitur à me.

A cane non magno saepe tenetur Aper.

Honesta bonis viris, non occulta petuntur.

1 *Obs.* Cæteri casus manent in Passivis qui fuerunt Activorum; ut,

Accusari à me furti.

Habebis ludibrio.

2 *Obs.* *Vapulo, vaneo, liceo, exsulo, fio*, Passivorum constructionem habent, i. e. Ablativum admittunt cum Præpositione, vel Dativum; ut,

A præceptore vapulabis.

Malo à cive spoliari, quam ab hoste venire.

Quid fiet ab illo? Virtus parvo pretio licet omnibus.

Cur à conviviis exsulat Philosophia?

§. XVIII. *Regula, De Verbis variam Constructionem habentibus.*

XVIII.

I. **E**idem Verbo diversi casus diversæ rationis ap-
poni possunt; ut, Cum diversa
significati-
one.
Dedit mihi vestem pignori, te præsentem, propriâ manu.

II. Hæc variam habent constructionem,
1 In eadem significatione, viz.

1 *Adulo* { tibi } 2 *Aspersit* { mihi labem.
 Adulor { te } *Aspergit* { me labe.

3 *Attendo* { tibi } 4 *Consentio* { tibi.
 Attendo { te } *Consentio* { tecum.

5 *Dissentio* { tibi, à te, } 6 *Dono* { tibi librum.
 Dissento { tecum } *Dono* { te libro.

- 7 I mock thee.
 8 I bestow my means on thee.
 9 I put on thy coat.
 10 He spread his cloak on the horse.
 11 I forbid thee this thing
 12 I cure $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{my son} \\ \text{that disease} \end{array} \right.$
 13 I moderate my affection
 14 I deprave thee
 15 I tarry for thee
 16 I forbid thee the house
 17 I go into the house
 „ 2 In a different signification, as,
 1 I assent $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to thee} \end{array} \right.$
 I come $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to thee} \end{array} \right.$
 2 I envy $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{thee} \end{array} \right.$
 I imitate $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{thee} \end{array} \right.$
 3 I obey $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{thee} \end{array} \right.$
 I hear $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{thee} \end{array} \right.$
 4 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I see to thee} \\ \text{I avoid thee} \\ \text{I make a caution, or I am careful for thee} \end{array} \right.$
 5 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I give place to thee} \\ \text{I go out of the city} \\ \text{Give me a book} \end{array} \right.$
 6 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I advise, or look to thee} \\ \text{I ask advice of thee} \\ \text{I resolve concerning thee} \end{array} \right.$
 7 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{It hapeneth to me} \\ \text{It toucheth me} \end{array} \right.$
 8 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I favour thee} \\ \text{I desire thee} \end{array} \right.$
 9 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{It is wanting to me} \\ \text{He faileth me} \\ \text{He revolteth from me} \end{array} \right.$

- 7 Illudo { tibi } 8 Impertio { tibi fortunas meas
te } { te fortunas meas
9 Induo { tibi tunicam } 10 Instravit { equo penulam
te tunicâ } { equum penulâ
- 11 Interdico tibi hanc rem, vel te hâc re
- 12 Medicor { gnato tuo
istum morbum.
- 13 Moderor { affectui, } 14 Obirecto { laudens
affectum } { laudi.
- 15 Praestolor { tibi } 16 Prohibeo { te domo
te } { tibi domum

17 Subeo { rectum
recto

» 2 In diversâ significatione.

(video

1 Accedo { tibi, i. e. Assentior } 2 Amulor { tibi, i. e. in-
te, i. e. Adeo } { te, i. e. imitor

3 Ausculto { tibi, i. e. Obedio
te, i. e. Audio

4 Caveo { tibi, i. e. periculum à te avertio
te } { i. e. declino
à te } { de te, i. e. do aliquid ad cautionem

5 Cedo { tibi
urbe
librum

6 Consulo { tibi, i. e. consilium do, vel prospicio
te, i. e. consilium à te peto
in te, i. e. statuo
mibi, i. e. accidit

7 Contingit { me, i. e. tangit

8 Cupio { tibi, i. e. faveo.
te, i. e. expeto

9 Deficit { mibi, i. e. deest
me, i. e. destituit
à me, i. e. in alteram partem transiit.

- 10 { I give or send } to carry to one
letters to thee } to read.
- 11 { I lend thee on usury
I borrow of thee on usury
- 12 { I am sick of a Feaver
I take pains for the publick safety
- 13 { I am careful for thee
I am afraid of thee
- 14 { I remember thee
I speak of thee
- 15 { I conquer the City
I obtain my desire
- 16 { I promise you
I entertain you
- 17 { I betake my self home
I report it to you
- 18 { I propound it to you
I refuse a gift
- 19 { I declare him consul
I pay thee
- 20 { I free thee
I endeavour this
- 21 { I desire this
I labour about trifles
- 21 { I have leasure for trifles
I am void of blame
- The place is empty.
Use will teach the rest.

XIX.

§. XIX. Rule, Of the Infinitive mood.

Of the Infinitive mood. >> **V**ERBS of the Infinitive mood are put after Verbs or Adjectives; as,
Ponticus, wilt thou be made rich? Thou must desire nothing.

And

- Do { tibi literas, i. e. ut ad aliquem seras
 10 Mitto { ad te literas, i. e. ut legas
 Fænero, { tibi, i. e. do ad usuram.
 11 Fæneror { abs te, i. e. accipio ad usuram
 12 Laboro { febri
 { de salute publicâ
 Metuo Timeo, { te, vel à te, i. e. ne mihi noceas
 13 Formido, { tibi, vel de te, i. e. sollicitus sum.
 14 Memini tui, te, de te
 15 Potior urbis. Potior voto
 16 Recipio { tibi, i. e. promitto
 { te, i. e. accipio
 { domum i. e. confero
 17 Refero { tibi, i. e. narro
 { ad te, i. e. propono
 18 Renuntio { muneri, i. e. recuso
 { consulem, i. e. declaro
 19 Solvo { tibi, i. e. satisfacio
 { te, i. e. libero
 20 Studeo { huic, i. e. operam do
 { hoc, i. e. cupio
 { nugis, i. e. operam do
 21 Vaco { ad nugas, i. e. otium habeo
 { culpâ, i. e. carco
 { Vacat locus.
- Cætera docebit usus,

§. XIX. Regula, De Infinitivo modo.

XIX.

- „I. **V**erba Infinitiva quibusdam tum Verbis tum De Infinito
 „ Adjectivis subiunguntur; ut, modo.
 Vis fieri dives, Pontice? nil cupias.

Et

And he was worthy to be loved.

Bold to endure all things. Enduring to be called.

1 Obs. They have an Accusative case before them in stead of a Nominative; as, *I bid thee to go hence.*

I bid thee be in good health.

Which may be resolved by *that*; as, *I bid that thou go hence. I am glad that thou art in good health.*

2 Obs. They have like cases before and after them; as, *An Hypocrite desireth to seem just.*

Nature hath granted to all men to be happy, if any knew how to use it.

3 Obs. They are sometimes put absolutely by an Ellipsis; as,

That these villanies should be committed, i. e. It is fit.
The Lamb trembled, i. e. Begun to tremble.

XX.

§. XX. The Rule of the Gerunds.

Of the Gerunds in

GERUNDS and Supines will have such a case as the Verbs that they come of; as,
We must use age. To hear a sermon.

And they are as it were Nouns of both Numbers:

These in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Di} \\ \text{Dam} \\ \text{Do} \end{array} \right\}$ of the $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Genitive} \\ \text{Accusative} \\ \text{Ablative} \end{array} \right\}$ Case,

as $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{An occasion of studying.} \\ \text{Fit to study.} \\ \text{Weary with studying.} \end{array} \right\}$

Hence is it that,

XXL
Di.

1 The Gerund in *Di* may be used after certain Substantives and Adjectives that govern a Genitive case; as,

There is no place for telling.

The wicked love of having.

Certain of going. Skilful in darting.

1 Obs.

Et erat tum dignus amari.

Audax omnia perpeti. Patiens vocari.

1 Obs. Pro Nominativo Accusativum ante se statuit; ut, Jubeo te abire.

Gaudeo te bene valere.

Atque resolvuntur per quiddam & ut; ut, Jubeo, ut tu abireas. Gaudeo, quod tu bene valeas.

2 Obs. Utrunque eisdem casus habent; ut,

Hypocrita cupit videri iustus, vel se videri iustum.

Natura beatis omnibus esse dedit, si quis cognoverit uti.

3 Obs. Ponuntur interdum Absolutè per Ellipsin;

Hæcine fieri flagitia?

i. e. decet.

Agnus est epidare?

i. e. capis.

§. XX. Regula, De Gerundiis.

XX.

Gerundia & Supina regunt casus suorum Verborum; ut,

De Gerundiis in

utendum est ætate. Auditum concionem.

Ita se habent ut nomina utriusque numeri.

In	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} Di \\ Dum \\ Do \end{array} \right\}$	tanquam	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} Genitivi \\ Accusativi \\ Ablativi \end{array} \right\}$	Casus;
----	---	---------	--	--------

Occasio studendi.

Aptus ad studendum.

Fessus studendo.

Hinc est quod,

1 Gerundia in Di pendent à quibusdam tum

XXI.

substantivis tum Adjectivis Genitivum regentibus; Di.

Non est narrandi locus.

Amor sceleratus habendi.

Certus emendi. Peritus jaculandi.

R

1 Obs.

1 *Obs.* This Gerund is often joynd with a Genitive case plural; as,

For the cause of seeing them.

Leave off getting apples.

Liberty of encreasing new Comedies.

2 *Obs.* The Infinitive mood is sometimes put in stead of this Gerund; as,

Skiffat to beat

XXII.

Do,

2. Gerunds in *Do* be used with one of these Prepositions; *A, ab, abs, de, è, ex, cum, in, pro*; as,

Idle boyes are quickly frighted from learning.

The manner of right writing is joynd with speaking.

1 *Obs.* Sometimes they are used without a Preposition; as,

XXIII.

We learn by teaching.

Dum,

3. The Gerund in *Dum* is used after one of these Prepositions, *Inter, ante, ad, ubi, propter*; as,

In supper while be merry.

Christ dyed to redeem us.

1 *Obs.* When you have this English *must* or *ought*, it may be put in the Gerund in *Dum*, with the Verb *est*, and a Dative case expressed or understood; as,

I must go to peace, we ought to pray, that there may be a sound mind in a sound body.

N. B. Gerunds are often turned into participials in *Dus*, which agree with their Substantives; as,

In reading old Authors thou shalt profit.

It is the next to theft to be drawn on by a reward to accuse men.

1. *Obs.* Hoc Gerundium sæpiissime conjungitur Genitivo plurali, ut,

Illorum videndi gratia.

Licentia diripiendi pomorum.

Crescendi copia novarum.

2. *Obs.* Infinitivus aliquando loco hujus Gerundii ponitur; ut,

Petrus medicari.

XXII.

2. Gerundia in *Do* pendent ab his Præpositionibus; *A, ab, abs, de, è, ex, cum, in, pro;* ut,

De;

Ignavi à discendo citò deterrentur

Rectè scribendi ratio cum loquendo conjuncta est.

1 *Obs.* Ponuntur & absque Præpositione; ut,
Docendo discimus.

XXIII.

Dum;

3. Gerundia in *Dum* pendent ab his Præpositionibus; *Inter, ante, ad, ob, propter;* ut,

Inter cœrandum hilares esse.

Christus moriebatur propter nos redimendum.

1 *Obs.* Cùm significatur necessitas, ponuntur citra Præpositionem, addito Verbo *est*, cum Dativo expresso vel subintellecto; ut,

Abenndum est mihi. Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.

N. B. Sæpe vertuntur Gerundia in Participialia in *Du*, quæ suis Substantivis conveniunt; ut,

Legendis veteribus proficies.

Ad Accusandos homines duci præmio proximum latrocinio est.

XXIV.

§. XXIV. Rule, Of Supines.

Of the
Supines,
um,

I. **T**He *first Supine* is put after Verbs and Participles that betoken *moving to a place*; as,
Thy come to look on.

Why goest thou about to undo thy self.

1 *Obs.* But these have a motion scarce discernable.
I set to sale. I bestow my Daughter to be married.

2 The Poet says, *I go to visit, I go to see.*

XXV.
u,

II. The *latter Supine* is put after Nouns Adj:ctives;
as, *Ease to be done. unhoneit to be spoken.*

XXVI.

§. XXVI. Rule, Of Time.

Of Time.

NOuns are commonly used,
1. In the Ablative case, which betoken part
of time; i. e. with answer to *when*; as,

No man is wise at all hours.

Thou wakest in the night, and sleepest in the day.

2. In the Accusative case, which signifie continual
term of Time, without ceasing or intermission; i. e.
with answer to the question *how long*; as,

Thou sleepest the whole winter.

Black Pluto's Gate lieth open night and day.

1 *Obs.* Sometimes a Preposition is added; as,
*Three months ago. About three years. In a few
dayes. For a day. About that age. About that time.*

§. XXIV. Regula, De Supinis.

XXIV.

I. **P**rius Supinum sequitur Verbum aut Participium significans motum ad locum; ut
De Supinis
um,
Spectatum veniunt?

Cur te is perditum.

1. Obs. Illa verò, *Do venum, do filiam nuptum*, latentem habent motum.

2. Poëticè dicunt, *Eo visere. Vado videre.*

II. Posterius Supinum sequitur nomina Adjectiva; XXV.

ur, *Facile factu. Turpe dictu.*

§. XXVI. Regula, De Tempore.

XXVI.

Frequentius usurpantur

1. In Ablativo, quæ significant partem tem- De tempore
poris, i. e. quando? ut,

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.

Nocte vigilas, luce dormis.

2. In Accusativo, quæ durationem temporis denotant, *i. e. quamdiu?* ut,

Hyemem totam stertis.

Noctes atque dies paret atri janua Dicis.

1 Obs. Interdum additur Præpositio; ut,

Ante tres menses. Per tres annos. In paucis diebus.

Circa id ætatis. Id tempus per vel sub.

XXVII. §. XXVII. Rule, Of space or distance of place.

Of space.

NOuns that betoken space between place and place be commonly put in the Accusative case, and sometimes in the Ablative; as,

Depart **not** a *foot-breadth* from a good conscience:
They are not *many paces* one from another.

XXVIII §. XXVIII. Rule. Of Nouns of Place.

Of Place.

NOuns of place, when they follow a Verb that signifieth action or motion,

1. *In* a place, *to* a place, *from* a place, or *by* a place (if they be Nouns Appellatives, or proper names of great places) be put with a Preposition; as,
He is *in* the Market.

I live *in* England. He went hence *to* the Church.
He came *through* France *into* Italy.

He is gone *out* of the Town.

2. *Obs.* But sometimes the Preposition is understood; as, He went *to* Italy.

3. *In* a place or *at* a place, (if they be proper names of Cities or Towns) of the first or second Declension and the Singular number, be put in the Genitive case; But if of the third Declension or Plural Number, only in the Ablative; as,

What should I do *at* Rome.

He lived *at* London.

He was born *at* Athens.

I being unconstant love Tibur *at* Rome, and Rome *at* Tibur.

4. *To* a place (if they be proper names) are put in the Accusative case; as,

I go *to* London to buy wares.

I went *to* Cambridge.

4. From

§. XXVII. Regula, De Spacio Loci. XXVII.

Spacium loci in Accusativo effertur, interdum & De Spacio.
in Ablativo; ut,

A rectâ conscientiâ transversum *pedem* nē discēdas.
Nec *Multis* inter se *passibus* absunt.

§. XXVIII. Regula, De Loco. XXVIII

Nomina loci cum apponuntur Verbis significant De Loco.
tibus actionem aut motum;

1. *In loco, ad locum, à loco, aut per locum* (si sint
nomina Appellativa, vel nomina majorum locorum)
adduntur fere cum præpositione, ut, *In foro* versat-
tur.

Vivo in Anglia. Ad Templum abiit.

Venit per Galliam in Italiam.

Profectus est ex oppido.

1. *Obs.* Sed omittitur aliquando Præpositio; ut,
Italiam petit.

2. *In loco aut ad locum* (si sint propria nomina Ur-
bium aut oppidorum) primæ vel secundæ Declinati-
onis & singularis Numeri, Genitivum; sin tertiæ
Declinationis & pluralis duntaxat Numeri, Ablati-
vum admittunt; ut,

Quid Romæ faciam?

Londini vixit.

Athenis natus est.

Romæ Tibur amo ventosus, *Tibure* Romam.

3. *Ad locum* (si sint propria) ponuntur in Accu-
sativo; ut,

Eo *Londinum* ad merces emendas,

Concessi *Canabrigiam*.

4 From a place, or by a place (if they be proper names) are put in the Ablative case; as,

He went by London to Cambridge.

He went from London.

Obs. *Humus, militia, bellum, domus*, and *rus* do follow the rules of proper names of Cities or Towns; as,

We live together at home, and in the wars.

He was brought up in the Country.

I will go into the Country.

Go home.

He is returned out of the Country.

He is newly gone from home.

XXIX.

§. XXIX. Rule, Of government of Impersonals.

Of Impersonals,
I Active.

I. Impersonals of the Active voice govern

1. A Genitive case, viz. *Interest, refert*, and *est* for *Interest*; as, It concerneth all men to do well.

It much concerneth a Christian Common-wealth, that the Bishops be learned and pious.

1 Obs. Except these Ablative cases, *Mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra* and *cuius*; as,

It is expedient to thee to know thyself.

It little concerneth you.

2 Obs. *Est* in such clauses as these, is put for *licet* after the Greek fashion, viz.

You may see.

Nor is it for any man to deceive you.

II. A Dative, viz. *Accidit, certum est, contingit, constat, confert*, &c. which be put acquisitively; as,

It is not lawful for any man to sin.

It is better for me to dye manfully, than to live with disgrace.

I am resolved to run all hazards.

III. An Accusative, 1. Only, viz. *Juvat, decet, delectat, oportet*; as, It becometh not men to scold like women;

2 With

4. *A loco aut per locum* (si sint propria) ponuntur in Ablativo; ut,

Profectus est Londino (vel *per Londinum*) *Cambrigiam*. *Discessit Londine*.

Obs. *Humus, militia, bellum, domus & rus*, propriorum sequuntur formam; ut,

Domi bellique simul *viximus*.

Rure *educatus est*.

Ego rus *ibo*,

Ite domum.

Rure *reversus est*.

Nuper domo *exiit*.

§. XXIX. *Regula, De regimine Impersonalium.* XXIX.

I. Impersonalia activæ vocis reguntur

De Impersonalibus,
I Activis.

1. Genitivum, viz. *Interest, refert, & est* pro *interest*; ut, *Interest omnium* rectè agere.

Refert multum Christianæ Reipublicæ, Episcopos doctos & pios esse.

1. *Obs.* Præter Ablativos, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ & eujâ*, ut,

Tuâ *refert* teipsum nôsse.

Vestrâ *parvi interest*.

2. *Obs.* *Est* in hujusmodi clausulis ponitur pro *licet* ad imitationem Græcorum; viz.

Videre est.

Neque est te fallere cuique.

II. Dativum, viz. *Accidit, certum est, contingit, constat, confert, &c.* quæ acquisitivè ponuntur; ut,

Peccare nemini licet.

Enim per virtutem mihi præstat, quàm per dedecus vivere.

Stat mihi cõsus renovare omnes.

III. Accusativum, I solum, viz. *juvat, deest, delectat, oportet*; ut, *Dedecet viros muliebriter rixari*.

2 Cum

2 with the Prepositiō *ad*, viz. *attinet, pertinet, spectat*, as
It belongeth to thee. It belongeth to all men to live well

3 With a Genitive, viz. *Pœnitet, tædet, misceat*,
miserescit pudet, piget; as,

It repenteth every one of his own estate.

It is keth me of my life.

2 Passives.

II. Impersonals of the Passive voice have such cases as other Verbs Passive have; as,

Neither is there sowing nor mowing there for me.

He is gone to Athens. They slept all night.

The enemies fought stoutly.

1 Obs. Yet many times the case is not exprest; as,

What do they in the School? they ply their books.

Chap. 6.

XXX. §. XXX. Rule. Of the government of Participles.

6 Of Participles.

Participles govern such cases as the Verbs that they come of; as, *Like to enjoy his Friends.*

Taking order for thee. Called the seven wise-men.

1 Obs. But when they be changed into Nouns, they will have a Genitive case; as,

Greedy of another mans goods. Most desirous of thee.

2 Obs. Participles in *Dus* will have a Dative case; as, *He is to be earnestly entreated by me.*

3 Obs. *Exosus* and *Perosus* having the active signification, will have an Accusative case; as,

Hating cruelty.

But having the Passive, a Dative; as,

Hated of God and good men.

4 Obs. *Pertusus* will have a Genitive or an Accusative case; as, *Weary of wedlock. Weary of his sluggishness.*

5 Obs. *Natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus*, will have an Ablative case; as,

O thou that art born of a Goddess!

A good woman come of good Parents.

Of what blood is he come?

2. Cum Præpositione, *ad*; viz. *Attinet, pertinet, spectat*,
ut, *Ad te attinet. Spectat ad omnes bene vivere.*

3. Cum Genitivo, viz. *Pœnitet, tædet, miseret*,
miserescit, pudet, piget; ut,

Sux quemcunque fortunæ pœnitet.

Tædet me vitæ.

11. Impersonalia passivæ vocis similes cum perso- 2 Passivis.
nalibus passivis casus obtinent; ut,

Mihi istic nec feritur, nec metitur.

Iitur Athenas. Dormitur totam noctem.

Ab hostibus constanter pugnat ur

1 Obs. Sed & horum casus interdum non expri-
muntur; ut, *Quid agitur in ludo literario? Studetur.*

Cap. 6.

(. XXX. Regula, De Regimine Participiorum. XXX.

Participia regunt casus suorum Verborum; ut,
Fruiturus amicis.

Consulens tibi. Septem vocati sapientes.

1 Obs. Sed cùm fiunt nomina Genitivum postu-
lant; ut,

Alieni appetens Cupientissimus tuus,

2 Obs. Quæ in *Dus* verò Dativum; ut,

Mihi exorandus est.

3 Obs. *Exosus* & *perosus* activè significantia regunt
Accusativum; ut,

Exosus sævitiam.

Passivè verò Dativum; ut,

Exosus Deo & sanctis.

4 Obs. *Pertæsus* nunc Genitivum, nunc Accusativum
regit; ut, *Pertæsus thalami. Pertæsus ignaviam suam,*

5 Obs. *Natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus,*
editus, in Ablativum feruntur; ut,

Nate Deâ.

Bona bonis prognata Parentibus.

Quo sanguinè cretus?

6. Peri-

6 The words put in stead of a Verb by way of circumlocution, do sometimes govern the Case of the Verb; as, *He doth earnestly mind that.*

Do you perswade me to that?

XXXI.

Chap. 7. §. XXXI. Rule, Of the Government of Adverbs.

1 Of Adverbs which govern cases.

7. Adverbs
I With
Case.

ADverbs govern
I A Nominative case, viz. *En* see, and *Ecce* behold, being Adverbs of Shewing; as,
Behold Priam. Loe two Altars.

1 *Obs.* But being Adverbs of upbraiding, they will have an Accusative, as,

See his habit or fashion. Look thou the other fellow.

II. A Genitive, viz. Adverbs of quantity, time, and place; as, *In what Country. To what Land. At that time. An abundance of tales. Words enough. Part of the men.*

1 *Obs.* So alio *Ergò* for *causà*; as, *For his sake.*

2 *Obs.* *Pridie* the day before, and *Postridie* the day after, will have a Genitive or an Accusative case, as,
The day before that day. The day after the Kalends.

3 *Obs.* *Minimè gentium* in no wise, is a proper phrase, or manner of speech.

III. A Dative, viz. such as be derived of Nouns that govern a Dative case, as, *He came to meet him. He singeth like him. He liveth unprofitable to himself.*

1 *Obs.* These Datives be used Adverbially, *Temporè* betime, *lucè* by day, *vesperè* at even, as,
We must rise betime. We must go to bed at even. We must take pains by day.

IV. An Accusative case of the preposition they be come of; as, *Nearer the City. Next to Spain.*

N.B. *Plurè*

6 Periphrasis etiam verbi aliquando regit casum
ipsum; ut.

Id studiosè operam dat, i. e. curat :

Idne estis auctores mihi ? i. e. id suadetis.

Cap. 7. §. XXXI. Regula, De Regimine
Adverbiorum.

XXXL

I De Adverbiis quæ casus regunt.

Adverbia regunt.

I. Nominativum, viz. *En, & Ecce*, demonstran-
di; ut, *En Priamus. Ecce duo altaria.*

7. Adverbi-
orum.

I Cum

Casu.

1 Obs. Exprobantis verò Accusativo junguntur ;
ut, *En habitum : Ecce alterum.*

II. Genitivum, viz. Adverbia loci, temporis ; &
quantitatis; ut, *ubi gentium. Quo terrarum. Tunc
temporis. Abundè fabularum. Satis verborum.
partim virorum.*

1 Obs. Sic & *ergò* pro *causâ*, ut, *illius ergò.*

2 Obs. *Pridie & Postridie* Genitivum aut Accusa-
tivum regunt ; ut, *Pridie ejus diei.*

Postridie Kalendas, sive Kalendarum.

3 Obs. Minimè gentium peculiaris phrasis est.

III. Dativum, viz. quæ derivantur à Nominibus
Dativum regentibus ; ut, *Venit obviam illi.*

Canit similiter huic. Sibi inutiliter vivit.

1 Obs. Sunt & hi Dativi, Adverbiales, Tempori, luci,
vesperi, ut,

Tempori surgendum. Vesperei cubandum.

Luci laborandum.

IV. Accusativum Præpositionis unde sunt pro-
secta; ut, *Propius urbem. Proximè Hispaniam.*

N. B. Plur

N. B. *Plūs, minūs, ampliūs*, will have a Nominative, a Genitive, a Dative, and an Ablative case; as,
*Above three hundred wagons : Above fifty men :
 Above half a mile : More than that.*

2. Of Adverbs, which govern Moods.

2 With a
Mood.

1. **U** *Bi* when, *postquam* after that, *cū* when, do govern an Indicative; as, *When I shall sacrifice an heifer for my fruits, come thou.*
 Or a Subjunctive; as, *When I sung of Kings, and wars, Apollo pulled me by the ear.*
2. *Donec* until, governs an Indicative; as,
until he had to fold the sheep and count them.
 Or a Subjunctive; as *until* that water which thou hast set on, *be boyled.*
Dones as long as, an Indicative; as.
As long as I was safe.
3. *Dum* whilst, or as long as, governs an Indicative; as, *If'ilst the maid is making ready.*
As long as thou doest what becometh thee.
Dum so that, or until, doth govern a Subjunctive, as, *So that I may profit thee.*
until the third Summer shall see him reigning in Italy.
4. *Quoad* as long as, governs an Indicative; as,
As long as thou expectest thy Chamber-fellow,
 Or a Subjunctive; as, *As long as I could.*
Quoad until doth govern a Subjunctive; as,
I will keep all things safe till the Army be sent hither.
5. *Simulac & Simulatque* as soon as, do govern an Indicative; as, *As soon as he was able to abide war.*
 Or a Subjunctive; as, *As soon as his age waxed ripe.*
6. *Quemadmodū* as, *ut* as, *utcumque* as, *sicut* as, do govern

N. B. *Plūs, minūs, ampliūs*, Nominativo, Genitivo, Accusativo & Ablativo junguntur; ut,
Plūs trecenta vehicula: Plūs quinquaginta hominum.
Plūs quingentos passus. Plūs eo.

2. De Adverbiis, quæ Modos regunt.

1. **U**bi, *postquam*, & *cum*, Indicativum regunt; 2. Cum
 ut, *Cum faciam virulā* pro frugibus, ipse ve- Modo.
 nito.

Et Subjunctivum; ut,

Cum canerem Reges, & prælia, Cinthius autē vellit.

2. *Donec* pro *quousque* regit Indicativum, ut,

Cogere donec oves stabulis numerūmq; referre *jussit*

Aut Subjunctivum; ut,

Donec ea aqua, quam adjeceris, *decocta sit.*

Donec pro *quamdiu* regit Indicativum; ut,

Donec eram *suspes.*

3. *Dum* de re imperfectā, regit Indicativum; ut,

Dum apparatur virgo.

Dum quod te dignum est *facis.*

Dum pro *quamdiu*, *dummodo*, & *donec*, regit Sub-
 junctivum; ut, *Dum* *prosum* tibi.

Tertia *dum* Latio regnantem *viderit ætas.*

4. *Quoad* pro *quamdiu*, Indicativum regit; ut,

Quoad *expestes* contubernalem

Aut Subjunctivum; ut, *Quoad* *possem* & *liceret.*

Quoad pro *donec* regit Subjunctivum; ut,

Omnia integra servabo, *quoad* exercitus huc *mit-
 tatur.*

5. *Simulac*, *Simulatque* Indicativum regunt; ut,

Simulac belli *patiens* erat.

Vel Subjunctivum; ut, *Simulatque* *adoleverit* ætas.

6. *Quemadmodum*, ut, ut *cunq; sicut*; regunt Indicati-
 vum;

verb in Indicative; as, *As thou saluest*, so shalt thou be saluted again.

Or a Subjunctive; as, *As thou shalt sow*, so shalt thou reap.

Ut after that, doth govern an Indicative; as,
After that they came into the City.

7 *Quasi* as, *ceu* as, *tanquam* as, *perinde ac si* like as,
Haud secus ac si, no otherwise than as, do govern a Subjunctive; as,

As though we knew not our selves among our selves.
And these also couple like cases; as,

I knew the man even as thy self.

He smileth on me as on a friend,

8 *Nè* not, an Adverb of Forbidding, doth govern an Imperative; as, *Be not so wroth.*

Or a Subjunctive; as, *This is a great knave, do not fear him*

XXXII. Chap. 8. §. XXXII. Rule, Of the Government of Conjunctions.

1 Of Conjunctions which do couple Words.

§. Of Conjunctions which do Couple.

Conjunctions Copulatives and Disjunctives, and these four *quàm*, *nisi*, *præterquam*, *an*, do couple like cases, and most commonly like moods and tenses; as, *The night, and love, and wine* do perswade no moderate thing.

He is younger than thou art.

He pleaseth no body but himself.

Peter and John did pray and preach in the Temple.

1 *Obs.* But oftentimes some particular reason of words, requireth divers cases, moods and tenses; as,

I bought a book for an hundred asses and more.

I lived at Rome and at Venice.

I gave thee thanks, and will do so whil'st I live.

2 *Obs.*

um; ut, *ut salutabis, ita & resalutaberis.*

Aur Subjunctivum; ut, *ut sementem feceris, ita & meres.*

ut postquam Indicativum regit; ut,
ut ventum est in Urbem.

7 *Quasi, ceu, tanquam*, perinde ac si, haud secus ac si,
regunt Subjunctivum; ut,

Quasi non noverimus nos inter nos.

Atque hæc copulant similes casus; ut,

Novi hominem tanquam te.

Amidet mihi quasi amico.

8 *Nè* Prohibendi Imperativum regit; ut,

Nè sævi tantopere.

Aur Subjunctivum; ut, *Hic nebulo magnus est.*

nè metuas.

Cap. 8. §. XXXII. Regula, De Regimine
Conjunctionum.

XXXII

1 De Conjunctionibus quæ voces copulant.

Conjunctiones Copulativæ & disjunctivæ, cum his quatuor, *quam, nisi, præterquam, an*, si-
miles omnino casus, & aliquoties similes modos & tempora conglutinant; ut, *Nox, & Amor, vinumq;*
nihil moderabile suadent.

Est mindè natu quàm tu.

Nemini, nisi sibi, placet.

Petrus & Joannes precabantur & docebant in templo

1 *Obs.* Sæpe verò dictionum aliqua privata ratio
diversos casus, modos & tempora postulat; ut,

Emi librum centussis & pluris.

Vixi Romæ & Venetiis.

Tibi gratias egi, atque agam dum vivo.

S

2 *Obs.*

2 *Obs.* *Cum* and *tm*, and *tum* being doubled, will couple like cases; as,

He embraceth all learned men, but especially *Marcellus*. He hateth both learning and virtue.

2. Of Conjunctions which govern Moods.

2 Govern
Moods.

1 **E** *Tſi* although, *tameſi* although, *etiameſi* although, *quanquam* although, in the beginning of Speech govern an Indicative; as,

Though no news was brought.

But in the middle of a speech a Subjunctive: as

Thou blameſt me, *though thou haſt done* it thy ſelf.

2 *Quamvis* although, *licet* although, commonly do govern a Subjunctive; s,

Though thou comest thy ſelf.

3 *Ni* except *niſi* unleſs, *ſi* if, *ſiquidem* if ſo be, *quia* that, *quia* becauſe, *quam* than, *poſtquam* after, *poſtea* *quam* after that, *ubi* for *poſtquam*, *nunquam* never *priuſquam* before that, do

govern { An Indicative, } { I am glad that thou
or, } as {
Subjunctive, } { art returned ſafe.

Si if, doth govern an Indicative; as,

If thou beſt well, it is well.

Or a ſubjunctive; as, *If thou ſhalt deny*, thou ſhalt be whipt.

Si uſed for *quamvis* is though, a Subjunctive; as,

No not *though ſhe intreat* me.

4 *Quando* ſeeing that, *quandoquidem* ſeeing that, *quoniam* becauſe, do govern an Indicative: as,

Say on, ſeeing that we ſit together on the ſoft graſſe.

5 *Quippe* becauſe, doth govern an Indicative; as,
Because he is ſick.

2 Obs. *Cum* & *tum*, item *tum* geminatum, similes
 alus copulant; ut,

Amplectitur *Cum* eruditos omnes, *tum* imprimis
Marellum. Odit *tum* literas, *tum* virtutem.

2. De Conjunctionibus quæ modos Regunt.

E *Ts*, *tametsi*, *etiamsi*, *quanquam*, in principio 2 Regunt
Modos.
 rationis regunt Indicativum, ut,
Etsi nihil novi afferebatur.

Sed in medio Orationis, Subjunctivum, ut,
 Me culpas, *etiamsi* ipse feceris.

3 *Quamvis*, & *licet* frequentius Subjunctivum re-
 git, ut,

Ipse *licet* venias.

4 *Ni*, *nisi*, *si*, *siquidem*, *quod*, *quia*, *quam*, *postquam*,
nequam, *ubi* pro *postquam*, *nunquam* *prinsquam*,

regunt	{	Indicativum,	{	ur,	{	Quod tu rediisti, (vel redieris) inco- lumis, gaudeo.
		aut,				
		Subjunctivum,				

regit { Indicativum; ut, *Si vales*, bene est.

&
 { Subjunctivum: ut, *Si negaveris*, vapulabis

Si pro *quamvis* Subjunctivum: ut,

Non, *si* me obsecret.

4 *Quando*, *quandoquidem*, & *quoniam* regunt In-
 dicativum: ut,

Dicite, *quandoquidem* in molli *consedimus* herbæ.

5. *Quippe* regit Indicativum: ut,

Quippe aegrotat.

Quippe *qui* as he that, doth govern an Indicative or Subjunctive; as,

As he hath twice so sworn himself.

Qui, when *quippe* is understood, signifying a Cause a Subjunctive; as,

Thou art a fool to believe this fellow, i. e. because thou believest.

6 *Cum* for *quamvis* although, *quandoquidem* seeing that, *quoniam* because, govern a Subjunctive; as,

Seeing thou art fit.

7 *Ni*, or *nam*, whether of asking, will have an Indicative; as *Whether is he alive or no?*

Of doubting, a Subjunctive; as,

See whether he be returned.

8 *Ut* to the end that, for *nē non* lest not, for *quam* although, and *utpote* because, governs a Subjunctive, as, *to the end that he might be with you.*

I am afraid he cannot stand it out.

Though all things fall out as I would.

Because thou hast deceived me so oft.

ut for *postquam* after that, *quemadmodū* even as, *ut* as, or used in asking, will have an Indicative; as,

After that I went from the City.

Go on to do, as thou doest.

Like as is his madness; How doth he?

XXXIII. Chap. 9. §. XXXIII. Rule. Of the Government of Prepositions.

9 Of Prepositions. I. Thirty Prepositions govern an accusative case, viz.

- 1 To the Church,
- 2 At the market,
- 3 Before death,
- 4 Against two,

- 5 Towards thee,
- 6 On this side Thames
- 7 On this side the River,
- 8 About the Town.

dicative *Quippe qui*, Indicativum & Subjunctivum; ut,
Quippe qui bis pejerabit, sive pejeraverit.

g a' Causa *Qui*, cum *quippe* subintelligitur, habens vim cau-
 salem, Subjunctivum; ut,
Stultus es qui huic credas.

m scieit *6 Cum* pro *quavis*, *quandoquidem*, & *quoniam*,
 ive; a regit Subjunctivum; ut,
Cum sis aptus.

re an lo *7 Ne, an, num*, Interrogandi regunt Indicativum;
 u, *Superaine?*

for quan *Dubitandi*, Subjunctivum; ut,
 Subjunc *Vise num redierit.*

u. *8 ut*, causalis, & *pro nē* non, pro *quanquam*, &
ut, Subjunctivum regit; ut,
ut una esset tecum.

en as, *Metuo ut subleat.*
 ative; *ut omnia contingant, quæ volo.*

ut qui toties sisletis.
ut propterea, quemadmodum, sicut, & Inter-

rogativum regit Indicativum; ut,
ut ab Urbe discessi.

Perge facere, ut facis.
ut est dementia. ut valet?

Govern **Cap. 9. §. XXXIII. Regula, De Regi-**
 mine *Præpositionum.*

XXXIII.

recusati **I. T**riginta *Præpositiones* Accusativum regunt; *9 Præpositi-*
 vir. *onum.*

s *1 Ad Ecclesiam*

ver, *2 Apud forum*

3 Ante obitum

4 Adversus duos

9 Alia

5 Adversum te

6 Cis Tamesin

7 Circa fluvium

8 Circa oppidum

S 3

9 Cir-

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 9 About the hill | 20 Through the plain fields |
| 10 About two thousand | 21 Behind the back |
| 11 Against the prick | 22 After death |
| 12 Towards the people | 23 Besides the Cottage |
| 13 Without the house | 24 For my neighbour |
| 14 Betwixt the cup & the lip | 25 According to Aristotle |
| 15 Within the house | 26 By the water-courses |
| 16 Below all men | 27 Above his capacity |
| 17 By the well | 28 Beyond the Alps |
| 18 For a reward | 29 Towards London |
| 19 In his power | 30 Beyond the Indians |

II. And twelve govern an Ablative case, viz.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1 From God | 7 Concerning trifles |
| 2 From an enemy | 8 Out of a well |
| 3 Of any body | 9 From an high Rock |
| 4 Without money | 10 Before all things |
| 5 Before the Master | 11 Without bread |
| 6 With loss | 12 For the poor |

III. Five govern an accusative and an Ablative case.

1 Privy to his Father

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| 2 { Into the house | 4 Upon a stone |
| 3 { In the house | |
| 5 { A little before night | 5 Under the earth |
| 6 { In the night | |

6 So *procul* when it is a Preposition; as,
Far from the City. Far from the wall.
 To which you may add *Tenus* up to; as,
Up to the privy parts.
Up to the breast. Up to the ears.

1 Obs. A Preposition is often understood; as,
I expect to day, or at the furthest to morrow.
He appeared in the shape of a man.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 9 Circum montem | 20 Per campos |
| 10 Circiter duo millia | 21 Pone tergum |
| 11 Contra stimulum | 22 Post mortem |
| 12 Erga populum | 23 Præter casam |
| 13 Extra ades | 24 Propter vicinum |
| 14 Inter calicem & labrum | 25 Secundum Aristotelem |
| 15 Intra domum | 26 Secus decursus aquarum |
| 16 Infra omnes | 27 Supra caput |
| 17 Juxta fontem | 28 Trans Alpes |
| 18 Ob præmium | 29 Londinum versus |
| 19 Pendens illum | 30 Ultra Iados |

II. Duodecim verò regunt Ablativum, viz.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1 A Deo | 7 De nugis |
| 2 Ab inimico | 8 E fonte |
| 3 Abs quovis | 9 Ex aliâ rupe |
| 4 Absque pecuniâ | 10 Præ omnibus |
| 5 Coram Præceptore | 11 Sine Pane |
| 6 Cum damno | 12 Pro Pauperibus |

III. Quinque regunt Accusativum & Ablativum.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 Clam { patrem
{ patre | 4 Super { lapidem
{ lapide |
| 2 In { cæstum
{ cælo | |
| 3 Sub { noctem
{ nocte | 5 Subter { terram
{ terra |

6. Item Procul quando fit Præpositio; ut,
Procul urbem. Procul muro.

Quibus addas Tenus; ut,

Pabe tenus.

Pectoribus tenus. Aurium tenus.

1. Obs. Præpositio sæpe subauditur; ut,

Exspectat hodie, aut * summum cras

Apparuit † humanâ specie.

S 4

* ad.

† Sub.

2 Obs.

2 *Obs.* And oft times it is more than needs; as, *Abstain from vices. I will call my friends to this matter.*

3. *Obs.* A Preposition in Composition doth sometimes govern the same case, which it governed being without composition; as,

I pass by thee unsaluted. I leave my Office.

4 *Obs.* These seem to be singular expressions; as
To go out of the doors.

To prevent the windes in running.

XXXIV. Chap. 10. §.XXXIV. Rule, Of the Government of Interjections.

20 Interjections.

Certain Interjections govern cases, viz.
1 *O* of Exclamation, a Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative; as,

O glad some day! O happy Husbandman! O pretty boy!
But of calling, a Vocative only; as,

Come hither ó Galatée!

2. *Hens*, and *ohé*, a Vocative; as,

O Syrus! Ho little Book!

3 *Pro* and *Prob*, *ah* and *vab*, an Accusative and Vocative; as, *O the faith of God and man!*

O holy Jupiter! Ah me poor man! Ah the Inconstancy!
Alas unhappy maid! Oh you Villain!

4 *Hen*, a Nominative, Dative, and Accusative, as,
Alas the Godliness. O the hated Slock.

Alas for me poor man.

5 *Hem* and *apige*, an Accusative; as, *Fy upon cross!*
See Davus for you. Away with such complements!

6 *Hei* and *væ*, a Dative; as, *Woe is me.*
Woe be to thee.

1 *Obs.* Interjections are often put without a case;
as, *Alas, I am afraid.*

What madnels, with a mischief.

2 *Obs.*

2 *Obs.*
Am

3 *Obs.*
ninquan
regebat;
Prater

4 *Obs.*
videntur

Cap

Qu

tivus, 8

O festu

Vocantis

Huc

2 *Hen*

Hen

3 *Pro*

vum; ur,

Prob s

stant

4 *Hen*

Hen

Hen

5 *Hem*

Hem

6 *Hei*

Va ti

1 *Obs.*

su ponne

He

- 2 *Obs.* Szpe verò redundat; ut, Abstine à vitiis.
Amicos ad vocabo ad hanc rem.
- 3 *Obs.* Præpositio in compositione eundem non-
nunquam, casum regit quem & extra compositionem
regebat; ut,
Præterco te in salutatum. Decedo Magistratu.
- 4 *Obs.* *Limen exire.* Cursu prevenire ventos, &c.
videntur singularia.

Cap. 10. §. XXXIV. *Regula, De Re-
gimine Interjectionum.*

XXXIV.

- Q**uædam Interjectionum regunt casus, viz
- 1 *O* Exclamantis, Nominativum, Accusa- 1o Interje-
tivum, & Vocativum; ut, ctionum.
O festus dies! O fortunatos agricolas! O formose puer!
Vocantis verò Vocativum tantum; ut,
Huc ades ô Galatæa.
- 2 *Heus & ohe,* Vocativum; ut,
Heus Syre! Ohe libelle!
- 3 *Pro & prob, ah & vah,* Accusativum & Vocati-
vum; ut, *Prob Deum atque hominum fidem!*
Prob sancte Jupiter! Ah me miserum! Vah incon-
stantiam! Ah virgo infelix! Vah scelus!
- 4 *Heu,* Nominativum, Dativum, & Accusativum; ut,
Heu pietas. Heu serpem invisam.
Heu misero mihi.
- 5 *Hem & apage,* Accusativum; ut, *Hem astutias*
Hem Davum tibi. Apage istiusmodi salutem.
- 6 *Hei & vae* Dativum; ut, *Hei mihi.*
Vae tibi.
- 1 *Obs.* Interjectiones non rarò absolutè & sine ca-
su ponuntur; ut,
Hei vercor! Quæ malum dementia?

2 *Obs.*

2 *Obs.* And they are often understood ; as,
O me poor wretch ! O the base prank !
I think you wonder, *Sirs* !

Chap. II.

xxxv.

§. XXXV. Rule. Of the Figures of a word.

Of Figures
1 Of a
Word.

Figure is a kind of speaking on some new fashion ; or, the altering of a word or speech from the usual manner of speaking, and that by authority of good writers.

Figure is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ Of a word :} \\ \text{of two} \\ \text{sorts,} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{which} \\ \text{belongs} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Etymology.} \\ \text{to} \\ \text{Syntaxis.} \end{array} \right.$

A Figure of a word (or that which belongs to Etymology) is that which any way changeth the form of a word ; and these be its chief kinds.

1 *Prothesis*, is the putting a letter or syllable to the beginning of a word ; as, *Gnatus* for *natus*, *te-tuli* for *tuli*.

2 *Aphæresis*, is the taking a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word ; as, *Ruit* for *eruit*, *temnere* for *contemnere*.

3 *Epanthesis*, is the putting of a letter or syllable into the middle of a word ; as, *Religio* for *religio*, *induperator* for *imperator*.

4 *Syncope*, is the taking a letter or syllable from the middle of a word, as, *Abiit* for *abivit*, *dixi* for *dixisti*.

5 *Paragoge*, is the putting of a letter or syllable to the end of a word ; as, *Dicier* for *dici*, *emori* for *emori*.

6 *Apocope*, is the taking of a letter or syllable from the end of a word ; as, *Ingeni* for *ingenii*.

7 *Diaeresis*, the dividing of one syllable into two ; as, *Aulâi* for *Aula*, *evolûisse* for *evoluisse*.

8 *Synæresis*,

2 *Obs.*
M
C

§. X

Fig
mu
muni lo
rum au
Est aut
Figu
dupl
Figu
nis form
pux spe

1 Pro
syllabæ
tuo, setu

2 Ap
syllabæ
temnere

3 Epe
vel sylla
gio, ind

4 Synco
medio di

5 Par
vel sylla
mori pr

6 Apo
labæ a fi

7 Dia
in duas;

2 Obs. Sæpe etiam subintelliguntur; ut,
Me miserum ! Facinus indignum !
Credo vos mirari, iudices !

Cap. II.

§. XXXV. Regula, De Figuris dictionis, XXXV.

Figura est novatâ arte aliquâ dicendi forma; sive De Figuris
 mutatio formæ dictionis aut orationis, a com- 2 Dictionis,
 muni loquendi consuetudine, idque bonorum scripto-
 rum autoritate.

Est autem $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{Dictionis} : \\ \text{Figura} \\ \text{duplex,} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quæ} \\ 2. \text{Constructionis} : \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Etymologiæ} \\ \text{Syntaxi} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{accidit.} \end{array} \right.$
 Figura Dictionis (sive Etymologica) est quæ dictio-
 nis formam aliquo modo mutat; ejus hæc sunt præci-
 pue species.

1 *Prothæsis*, (sive *adjectio*) est appositio literæ vel
 syllabæ ad principium dictionis; ut, *Gnatus pro na-
 tus, sætuli pro tuli.*

2 *Aphæresis*, (sive *detractio*) est ablatio literæ vel
 syllabæ à principio dictionis; ut, *Ruit pro eruit,
 temere pro contemnere.*

3 *Epenthæsis* (sive *insertio*) est interpositio literæ
 vel syllabæ, in medio dictionis; ut, *Religio pro reli-
 gio, induperator pro imperator.*

4 *Syncope* (sive *concisio*) est ablatio literæ vel syllabæ à
 medio dictionis; ut, *Abiit pro abiit, Dixi pro dixisti.*

5 *Paragoge*, (sive *productio*) est appositio literæ
 vel syllabæ ad finem dictionis; ut, *Disier pro dici, e-
 morier pro emori.*

6 *Apocope*, (sive *abscissio*) est ablatio literæ vel syl-
 labæ à fine dictionis; ut, *Ingeni pro Ingenii.*

7 *Diæresis* (sive *divisio*) est divisio unius syllabæ
 in duas; ut, *Aulâi pro aula, evoluisse pro evoluisse.*

§ *Synæresis*

8. *Synæresis*, is the contracting of two vowels into one syllable, which belong to two diverse syllables; as, *Theſei* for *Theſei*. *Vemens* for *vehemens*.

9. *Metathesis*, is the mis-placing of a Letter or syllable; as, *Piſtris* for *pristis*, a long Ship.

10. *Antithesis*, or *Antistæchon*, is the putting of a letter for a Letter; as, *Olli*, for *illi*.

11. *Tmeſis*, is the parting of a compound word betwixt the parts whereof another is put; as, *Qua mi bi cunque placent*. What things soever please me.

12. *Enallage*, is the putting of the Parts of Speech or their Accidents one for another; as, The people being as King i. e. ruling all abroad, *Agnus trepidare* for *trepidabat*, The Lamb did tremble.

13. *Archaismus*, is an old fashion of Speaking, which is now out of use; as, *Valdè tonit* for *tonuit*, It thundered exceedingly. *Tam nulli consili*. So void of counsel. *Operam abuti*. To bestow his labour to a wrong end.

14. *Metaplasmus*, is any change (at all) in a word; as, *Agreste* for *agressi*.

Chap. 12.

xxxvi. §. XXXVI. Rule. Of the Figures of Construction.

2 Of Construction.

A Figure of Construction; is that which any way changeth the frame of a Speech. Its kinds are,

1. *Appositiō*, is the putting together of two or more Substantives in the same case; as, *The River Rhine. The City Athens. M. T. C.*

2. *Restrain generality*; as, *A living Creature, an Horse.*

And it is } 3. *Take away equivocation*; as, *The Dog-star.*

4. *To attribute a propriety to one*; as, *Erasmus a man* of most exact judgment.

2 Syllep.

8 *Synaresis*, (sive *complexio*) est contractio duarum vocalium (quæ ad diversas syllabas pertinent) in unâ syllabam; ut, *Thesēi*, pro *thesēi*, *vēmens* pro *vehemens*.

9 *Metathesis* (sive *trajectio*) est transpositio literæ vel syllabæ; ut, *Pistris* pro *pristis*.

10 *Antithesis*, sive *Antistichen*, (sive *oppositio*) est positio literæ pro literâ; ut, *Olli* pro *illi*.

11 *Tmesis*, est defectio vocis compositæ, cujus partibus alia interponitur; ut, *Quæ mibi cunque placent*.

12 *Enallage* (sive *Antimeria*) partes Orationis, eanimque *Accidentia* alia pro aliis ponit; ut, *Populum latè Regem*, i. e. *regnantem*, *Agnus trepidare*, pro *trepidabat*.

13 *Archaismus*, est vetus & jam obsoletus loquendi mos; ut, *Valdè tonit* pro *tonuit*. *Tam nulli consili*, pro *nullius consilii*. *Operam abuti*.

14 *Metaplasmus* (sive *transformatio*) est quævis mutatio vocis; ut, *Agreste* pro *Agresli*.

Cap. 12.

§.XXXVI. Regula, De Figuris Constructionis. XXXV.

Figura Syntaxeos sive Constructionis, est quæ orationis structurâ aliquo modo mutat. Ejus Species sunt Constructionis.

1 *Appositio*, est duorum vel plurium Substantivorum ejusdem casûs conjunctio; ut, *Flumen Rhenus. Urbs Athenæ. M. T. C.*

Fit autem causâ {
 1 Restringendæ generalitatis; ut, *Animal equus*.
 2 Tollendæ æquivocationis; ut, *Canis astrum*.
 3 Ad proprietatem attribuendam; ut *Erasmus vir exactissimo judicio*.

2 *Syllepsis*

2 *Syllepsis*, is the comprehending of the more unworthy gender or person under the more worthy; as,
I and my brother are white. Mars and Venus, both being naked, lye tyed fast together in the snares.

3 *Prolepsis*, is a brief expression of things; as,
Two Eagles flew, this from the East, that from the West. The people live, some in want, some in delights.
Bear ye one anothers burdens. Let both of us take an equal share.

4 *Zengma*, is the bringing back of one Verb or Adjective to diverse Suppositives, to one expressly, and to the other by supplying it; as,

John was a Fisher, and Peter.

The Husband and the wife is angry.

5 *Synthesis*, is a Speech which agreeth in sense, though not in words; as, *An armed nation fall on.*

We are both hurt. A brood-Goose. Two thousand slain.

6 *Antiptosis*, is the putting one case for another; as,
All kind of elegancy: Are ye Authors of it?

7 *Synecdoche*, is when that which belongs to a part, is spoken of the whole; as,

A Black-moor having white teeth: Wounded in the forehead: Flowers that have the names of Kings written on them.

8 *Ellipsis*, is the want of a word in a speech; as,
I remember that (I saw:)

I (thought) presently with my self.

9 *Pleonasmus*, is the abounding of a word in a speech beyond any necessity of it; as,

I saw it with these eyes.

I slaughtered him with his own sword.

10 *Asyndeton*, is the want of Conjunctions in a speech; as, *It shall be done, will thou, nill thou: Eat, drink, play.*

11 *Polyssyndeton*, is an over-plus of Conjunctions in a speech; as,

2 *Syllepsis*, est comprehensio indignioris generis vel personæ sub digniore; ut,

Ego & frater sumus candidi.

Mars & Venus, impliciti laqueis, nudus uterq; jacer.

3 *Prolepsis*, est pronuntiatio quædam rerum summaria; ut, *duæ aquilæ volaverunt, hæc ab Oriente, illa ab Occidente. Populus vivit, alii in penuriâ, alii in deliciis. Alter alterius onera portate*

Curemus æquam uterque partem.

4 *Zeugma*, est Verbi vel Adjectivi, ad diversa supposita reductio, ad unum quidem expressè, ad alterum vero per supplementum; ut,

Joannes fuit Piscator & Petrus.

Maritus & uxor est irata.

5 *Synthesis*, est Oratio congrua sensu non voce; ut,

Gens armati ruunt.

uterque laesi sumus. Anser facta. Duo millia cæsi.

6 *Antiphrasis*, est positio casus pro casu; ut, *Omne, genus elegantia, i. e. omnis generis. Idne estis auctores? i. e. ejus.*

7 *Synecdoche* est, cum id quod partis est, attribuitur toti; ut *Æthiops albus dentes. Saucius frontem, vel fronte. Flores inscripti nomina Regum.*

8 *Ellipsis* est, defectio vocis in Oratione; ut,

*Memini * videre, i. e. * me.*

*Ego continuè * mecum, i. e. * cogitabam.*

9 *Pleonasmus*, est abundantia vocis in oratione supra necessitatem; ut,

Vidi his oculis.

Suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio.

10 *Asyndeton*, est conjunctionum in Oratione defectus; ut *Velis, nolis, fiet.*

Ede, bibe, lude.

11 *Polysyndeton*, est Conjunctionum in Oratione redundantia; ut,

Somnus,

Sleep, and wine, and good chear, and whores, and baths, do weaken mens bodies and minds.

12 *Anastrophe*, is when a Preposition is set before its case, as,

The command is *in thy power*.

13 *Synchysis*, is a confused order of words; as,

¹ For it is ² bad ³ for ⁴ such ⁵ as have ⁶ bleared-eyes and ⁷ raw
stomacks to play at ball.

14 *Hypallage*, is a placing of words contrariwise; as,

To commit the South-winds to the Ships.

15 *Hellenismus*, is a going from the Latine use to imitate the Greeks; as,

Do not fight *against two*.

The rest which belong rather to the handsomg, than the making of a Speech, are to be sought for among the Rhetoricians.

Somnus, & vinum, & epulæ, & scorta, & balnea corpora atque animos enervant.

12 *Anastrophe*, est cùm Præpositio suo casui postpositur; ut,

Te penès imperium.

13 *Synchysis*, est ordo Verborum confusus; ut,

I 7 3 2 4 6 5

Namque pilâ lippis inimicum & ludere crudis.

14 *Hypallage*, est mutua casuum permutatio;

Dare classibus Austros.

15 *Hellenismus*, sive *Græcismus* est recessus à Latina consuetudine in imitationem Græcorum; ut,

Noli pugnare duobus, i. e. contra duos.

Cæteræ, quæ ad ornatum magis Orationis, quam structuram ejus spectant, à Rhetoricis inquirendæ sunt.

BOOK. IV.

OF PROSODIE.

IV.
Prosodic,

treateth of

PROSODIE is the fourth part of Grammar, which teacheth the right pronounciation of words. A right pronounciation is that which observeth in every word, the Spirit, Tone, and time of the Syllables.

Prosodia therefore teacheth

1 Of the Spirits.	} Chap. 1.
2 Of the Tones or Accents	
3 Of the time or Quantity of Syllables, Chap. 2, 3.	

Chap. 1. Of Spirits and Tones, or Accents.

1 Spirits.

1 **A** Spirit is the manner of uttering of a syllable with a breath; And it is

Sharp, with which a syllable is sharply uttered; as, *Hamus, homo.*
Gentle or flat, with which a syllable is gently pronounced; as, *Amo, omni*

2 Tones.

2 A Tone, or Accent is the manner of pronouncing a syllable by lifting it up, or letting it down; as, *Probitatem vituperare.*

There be three sorts of Accents

1 An Acute, which sharpneth or listeth up a syllable, & is marked with a thwart stroke ascending towards the right hand (')	} Chap. 1.
2 A Grave, which flatteth or letteth down a syllable, & is marked with a thwart stroke descending towards the right hand (")	
3 A Circumflex, which uttereth a syllable with a longer stay, lifting it up as the Acute, and letting it down as the Grave Accent, and it is marked with a figure made of an Acute and Grave (^)	

There

PROSODIE
rectam v
Recta pron
nce Spiritum
Dicendum
reg in
Prosodia de

De Spirit
Spiritus e
S proferen
bam cum S
que vel
2 Tonus sy
bam, cande
tatem vitupe

1 A
&
ce
2 C
m
Ac-
plex,
3 C
ra
de
ex

LIB. IV.

DE PROSODIA,

PROSODIA est quarta pars Grammatices, quæ IV. *Prosodia.*
rectam vocum pronuntiationem tradit.

Recta pronuntiatio est, quæ observat in unaquaque
re Spiritum, Tonum, & Tempus Syllabarum.

Dicendum } 1 Spiritibus, &
 quod in } 2 Tono, sive Accentibus } Cap. 1.
 Prosodia de } 3 Tempore sive Quantitate Syllabarum
 Cap. 2, 3. *agit de !*

Cap. I.

De Spiritibus & Tonis, sive Accentibus.

Spiritus est ratio } *Asper*, quo asperè proferitur i Spiritibus
 proferendi syl- } syllaba; ut, *Hamus, homo.*
 labam cum Spiritu, } *Lenis*, quo syllaba leniter pro-
 ferre vel } fertur; ut, *Amo, omnis.*

2 *Tonus* sive *Accentus* est ratio pronuntiandi syl- 2 *Tonis.*
 abam, eandem elevando vel deprimendo; ut, *Pro-*
batem vituperare.

1 *Acutus*, qui syllabam acuit, sive attollit,
 & notatur virgulâ obliquâ in dextram af-
 cendente (^)
 2 *Gravis*, qui syllabam gravat sive deprimi-
 mit, & notatur virgulâ obliquâ in dex-
 tram descendente (v)
 3 *Circumflexus*, qui syllabam longiori mo-
 rà effert, pariter attollens cum Acuto, &
 deprimens cum Gravi, & signatur notâ
 ex Acuto & Gravi conflata (^)

There be three Rules of Tones or Accents.

1 A word of one syllable being short or long by Position, hath an *Acute* Accent; as, *Mēt, pārs*: but if it be long by Nature, it is *Circumflected*; as, *Spēs, flōs*.

2 In a word of two syllables, if the first be long by Nature, and the latter short, the first is *Circumflected*; as, *Lūa, mūsa*; but otherwise it hath an *Acute*; as, *Bōnus, Dēus, sōlers*.

3 A word of many syllables, having the last syllable save one long, when a long syllable followeth, it hath an *Acute* in the last syllable save one; as, *Libertas*, but when a short syllable followeth, it hath a *Circumflex* in the last syllable save one; as, *Amāre, Romānus*.

But if it hath the last syllable save one short, the syllable before the last save one will have an *Acute* accent; as, *Dōminus, Pōntifex*.

The rest of the syllables in words of many syllables have *Grave* accents (though not marked) as *leberimus*.

1 *Obs.* The Compounds of *Facio* have an *Acute* in the last syllable save one; as, *Benefācis, malefācis*.

2 *Obs.* The Compounds of *Fūs-fit*, have an *Acute* in the last syllable; as, *Calescit, beneficit*.

3 *Obs.* Grammarians do often confound a *Circumflex* with an *Acute*, because it is scarce difference from it in pronunciation.

1 Mo
acuitur;
fitur; ut

2 In
rurā, &
Lūa, m
sōlers.

3 Dic
bet sequ
sequen
Amāre,

Sin br
mam; ut

Ceter
et non i

1 *Obs.*
ur, Benef

2 *Obs.*
Calescit,

3 *Obs.*
confundu
tur.

Tonorum regulae sunt tres.

1 Monosyllaba dictio, brevis, aut Positione longa, acuitur; ut, *Mel, pās*; ac Natura longa Circumfleſcitur; ut, *Spēs, flōs*.

2 In Disyllabā dictione, si prior longa fuerit natura, & posterior brevis, prior Circumfleſcitur; ut, *Lūa, mūsa*; in cæteris vero acuitur; ut, *Bonus, Dēus, sōlers*.

3 Dictio Polysyllaba, si penultimam longam habet sequente longā, penultimam acuit; ut, *Libertas*; sequente vero brevi, Circumfleſcit penultimam; ut, *Amāre, Romānus*.

Sin brevem habet penultimam, acuit antepenultimam; ut, *Dōminus, Pōntifex*.

Cæteræ omnes syllabæ in Polysyllabis gravantur, nisi non noceantur, ut, *Celeberrimus*.

1 *Obs.* Composita à *Facio*, penultimam acunt, ut, *Benefācis, malefācis*.

2 *Obs.* Composita à *Fis, fit*, ultimam acunt, ut, *Calefīt, malefīt*.

3 *Obs.* Grammatici circumflexum cum acuto sæpe confundunt, quod ab eo vix prolatione discernitur.

There be five things which alter the Rules of the Accents.

I. *Difference*, for which sake

1 Some words are *Circumflexed* in the last syllable, as the Ablative case of the first Declension *Musâ*, whereby it may differ from the Nominative and Vocative *Musa*. Thus *ergô* for *causâ* differs from *ergô* the Conjunction.

2 Some have an *Acute* accent in the last syllable, as many Adverbs, to difference them from other parts of Speech; viz *unâ, aliquâ, patâ, ponè, &c.* which in the end of a sentence have an *Acute* accent, but in the beginning or middle thereof a *Grave* accent.

3 Some have an *Acute* in the syllable before the last syllable save one; as, *Déinde, déorsum, quîmo, intercâloci, nihilôminus, quâteaus, &c.* when they are not several words; as are *interea loci, nihilominus, pabētēnus, &c.*

N. B. An Accent is now seldom marked, except for difference sake, for then it is noted not only in the last syllable, but also in the last syllable save one, and in that which is before the last save one; as, *occido, occido.*

II. *Transposition*, or mis-placing words. For when prepositions be set after their cases, they have a *Grave* accent; as, *Trans tra pèr & remos Te penès imperium.*

III. *Attraction*, when the last syllable of the word going before doth draw unto it the accent of the Inclivative Conjunction; as, *Luminâque laurâsque Dei.*

But when there is an apparent Composition, the accent is not altered; as, *itaque, undique, hîcine.*

IV. *Concision*, when words are cut off by *Syncope*, or *Apotope*, for then they keep the accent of the whole word; as, *Vingili* for *Virgiliî*. *Arpinâs* for *Arpinâtis*. So also *hîc, illû*, for *hîcce, illâcce*; and the Compounds of *dic, duc, fac*; as, *Benedic, reduc, benefac.*

V. The

Quinq
Tona

I. Diffè

1 Quæ

ur, Ablat

ferat à N

causâ diff

2 Qæ

videantur

quò, pîetâ

ur, in cor

3 Qæ

dén su n,

&c. cùm

loci, nîbî

N B.

nîst differ

tum in ul

timâ; ur,

II. Tra

casibus g

imperium

III. A

tis dictio

junctioni

1 Obs.

riatur ton

IV. Co

pen castro

dictionis

nâtis. Si

à Dic, duc

Quinque sunt quæ *Tonorum regulas perturbant*, sive *Tonas mutant*.

I. *Differentia*, cujus causâ

1 Quædam dictiones *Circumfleantur* in ultima; ut, Ablativus primæ Declinationis *Musâ*, quod differat à Nominativo & Vocativo *Musa*, Sic ergo pro causâ differt ab ergo Conjunctione.

2 Quædam acuntur, ut Adverbia plurima, nè videantur esse aliæ partes Orationis; viz *unâ*, aliquò, *putâ*, *ponè*, &c. quæ in fine sententiarum acuntur, in consequentia vero gravantur.

3 Quædam Antepenultimam suspendunt; ut *Deiade*, *dènsun*, *quînimo*, *interea loci*, *nihilominus*, *quâtenus*, &c. cum non sunt orationes dæve s; ut sunt, *Interea loci*, *nihilominus*, *pûbe ténus*, &c.

N B. Accentus nota nusquam ferè jam apponitur, nisi differentię causâ, tunc enim signatur non tantum in ultima, sed etiam in penultima, & antepenultima; ut, *occido*, *occido*.

II. *Transpositio*, Præpositiones enim postpositæ suis casibus gravantur; ut, *Transi* per & remos. *Te pœvès* imperium.

III. *Attractio*, cum scilicet ultima syllaba præcedentis dictionis attrahit sibi Accentum Encliticæ Conjunctionis; ut, *Luminâque laurûsque Dei*.

I Obs. Ubi vero manifesta est Compositio, non variatur tonus; ut, *itaque*, *quidique*, *hæcine*.

IV. *Concisio*, cum dictiones per *Syncopen* aut *Apocopen* castrantur; tunc enim tonum retinent integræ dictionis; ut, *Virgîli* pro *Virgîlii*, *Arpiâs* pro *Arpinâtis*. Sic *hîc*, *illûc*, *prohîc*, *illûc*, & Composita à *Dic*, *dne*, *fac*; ut, *Benedic*, *redûc*, *benefac*.

V. *The idiom*, or the propriety of the language: For Greek words, if they come whole to the Latines, (*i. e.* if they be expressed with the very same letters) they keep their own accent: as, *Metamorphosis*, *Orthographia*.

But if they become altogether Latine, they keep the Latine accent: as, *Georgica*, *Philosophia*, *idolum*.

N. B. If the proper accent of a strange word be unknown, it will be most safe to pronounce it according to the Latine accent.

2 Those syllables which are common, are pronounced short in Prose, *i. e.* where a mute and a liquid do follow a short vowel, as, *Celebris*, *Cathedra*: otherwise they are pronounced long, as, *Unus*, *illius*, *ubique*.

3 An Interrogation doth alter the accent: as, *Sic cine a'is Parmeno?*

Chap. 2.

Of the Quantity of the First and Middle Syllables.

3 Time or Quantity.

Time, or Quantity, is the measure of pronouncing a Syllable, or the space of tuning a Vowel, whereby we measure how long it is a pronouncing.

According to Time, or Quantity, a Syllable is said to be

{	Short, which hath one time, or which is quickly pronounced: as, <i>Lēgō</i> , whose whole time is thus marked (˘)
	Long, which hath two times, or which hath the space of two short times; as, <i>Audirēt</i> , whose long time is thus marked (—)

According

V. *Idiom*
Dictiones
(*i. e.* si
totum suu

Sin p
servant

N. B.
nus, tuti
enuntiar

2 Syll
sequitur
untur, ut
producu

3 Int
a'is Parm

De Te

TE
an
quo scil

Secundu
Tempus
five Qu
tatem
laba dic

V. *Idioma*, sive linguæ proprietas.

Dictiones enim Græcæ, si integræ ad Latinos veniant, (i. e. si iisdem planè literis proferantur) servant tonum suum: ut, *Metámorphosi*, *Orthographia*.

Sin prorsus Latinx fiunt, Latinum quoque tonum servant; ut, *Geórgica*, *Philosophia*, *idolum*.

N. B. 1 Si ignoretur proprius peregrinæ vocis tonus, tutissimum fuerit juxta Latinum accentum illam enuntiare.

2 Syllabæ communes (i. e. ubi muta cum liquida sequitur vocalem brevem) in prosa oratione corripuntur; ut, *Célebris*, *Cáthedra*; in aliis vero dictionibus producuntur; ut, *unús*, *illús*, *ubíque*.

3 Interrogatio etiam tonum transfert; ut, *Siccine* *ais* *Parmenó*?

Cap. 2.

De Tempore, sive Quantitate Primarum & Mediarum Syllabarum.

Tempus, sive *Quantitas*, est syllabæ pronuntiandæ mensura, sive spatium modulandæ vocalis quo scil. moram ejus in pronuntiando metimur.

De Tempore sive Quantitate.

Secundum *Tempus*, sive *Quantitatem*, syllabæ dicuntur

- Brevis*, quæ unum habet tempus, sive quæ celeriter pronuntiatur; ut, *Lègèrè*; cujus tempus breve sic notatur (˘)
- Longa*, quæ duo tempora habet, sive quæ spatium duorum brevium exigit; ut, *Audírent*, cujus tempus longum sic notatur (—)

Secun-

According to
the order which
they have in
words, Syllables
are nam'd

First,	{	which	{	first	{	place
Middle		have		middle		in a
Last,		the		last		word

The quantity of the
first syllables are
known eight man-
ner of wayes : by

Of the first.

- I. *Position.*
- II. *A vowel before a vowel.*
- III. *A Diphthong.*
- IV. *Derivation.*
- V. *Composition.*
- VI. *Preposition.*
- VII. *Rule.*
- VIII. *Example or Authority.*

But the Middle Syllables have besides these a particular way of being known, which you may see IX.

I. According to *Position*,

1 A Vowel set before two Consonants, or a double consonant in the same word, is long; as, *Ventus*, *āvis*, *patrīzō*. But the Compounds of *jugum* make *i* short; as, *Bijugum*.

2 And if a Consonant doth close the foregoing word, and the word following beginneth with a consonant, the vowel foregoing shall be long; as, *Majōr sum quān cui possit fortuna nocere*.

3 A short vowel in the end of a word, when the word following beginneth with two consonants, sometimes, but seldom is made long; as,

Occultā spolia, & plures de pace triumphos.

4 A short vowel before a mute, with a liquid following is common, *i. e.* long or short; as,
Et primū volūcri similis, mox vera volūcris,
But a long vowel is not changed; as, *Aratrum, Simulacrum.*

II. A Vowel before another in the same word is short; as, *Dēus, nīhil.*

But

Secundū
nem su
habent
ctionib
labæ d

Primari
barum
octo m
noscu

Medi
quem vi

I. Jux
1 Vo
eadem d
20 : Sed
gum.

2 Q
sequente
cedens lo

Majō
3 Vo
bus con
producit

Oscul

4 Vo
commun
Et pri
Long
Sim

II. V
est; ut

Secundum ordinem suum quem habent in dictionibus syllabae dicuntur

Prima	primae	primum	locum in dictione quavis occupant
Mediae		medium	
Ultimae		ultimum	

I. Positione.

II. Vocali ante vocalem.

III. Diphthongo.

IV. Derivatione.

V. Compositione.

VI. Praepositione.

VII. Regula.

VIII. Exemplo, seu Autoritate.

Primarum syllabarum quantitas octo modis cognoscuntur, viz.

I.
Primum.

Mediarum vero peculiaris est cognoscendi modus quem videre licet IX.

I. Juxta Positionem.

1 Vocalis ante duas consonantes, aut duplicem in eadem dictione longa est; ut, *Vēnus, āxus, patri-
zo*: Sed Composita à *jugum* corripunt; ut, *Bijugum*.

2 Quod si consonans priorem dictionem claudat, sequente item à consonante inchoante, vocalis praecedens longa erit; ut,

Majōr sūn quā cui possi fōrtuna nocere.

3 Vocalis brevis in fine dictionis, sequente à duabus consonantibus inchoante, interdum, sed rarius producitur; ut,

Oscultā spolia, & plures de pace triumphos.

4 Vocalis brevis ante mutam sequente liquida, communis redditur; ut,

Et primò volūcri similis, mox vera volūcris.

Longa vero vocalis non mutatur; ut, *Arātrum, Simulacrum.*

II. Vocalis ante algeram in eadem dictione brevis est; ut, *Dēus, nihil.*

Sed

But 1 Genitive cases in *ius*, make the last syllable save one common; as, *unius*, *illius*. Except that *i* in *alterius* is alwayes short, and in *alius* alwayes long.

2 In the fifth Declension *e* between a double *i* is long; as, *Faciei*.

3 *Fi* in *Fio* is every where long, but where *e* and *r* follow it both together; as,

Omnia jam fient, sleri quæ posse negabas.

4 *Obe* hath the first syllable doubtful; *theu* alwayes long.

5 A Vowel before another in Greek words is long; as, *Dicite Pærides*; and in Possessives; as, *Aniæ natrix*.

But the quantity of Greek syllables is better to be found from the Greeks.

6 In forraign words the quantity is doubtful; as, *Michaël*, *Abraham*.

III. Every Diphthong is long; as, *Aurum*, *Missa*. And syllables that are Contracted; as, *Cogo*, *nîl*.

But *præ* before a vowel is often made short; as, *Ver præit astatem*; and but seldom long; as, *Dominus præit Arion. æ* in *Maotis* is doubtful.

IV. Derivatives have the same quantity that their Primitives have; as, *amator* of *amo*. Yet there be some excepted.

1 Which are derived from them that be short, and are long, viz.

<i>Vox, vōcis,</i>	} of {	<i>Vōco.</i>	<i>Fecundus</i>	} of {	<i>Fūvo.</i>
<i>Lex, lēgis,</i>		<i>Lēgo.</i>	<i>Vōmer</i>		<i>Vōmo.</i>
<i>Rex, rēgis,</i>		<i>Rēgo.</i>	<i>Lāterna</i>		<i>Lāreo.</i>
<i>Sēdes,</i>		<i>Sēdeo.</i>	<i>Tēgula</i>		<i>Tēgo.</i>
<i>Jūnior,</i>		<i>Jūvenis.</i>	<i>Mācero</i>		<i>Māceo.</i>
<i>Hūmanus,</i>		<i>Hōmo.</i>	<i>Pēnuria</i>		<i>Pēnus.</i>

Sed i Genitivi in *ius*, penultimam habent communem; ut, *unius*, *illius*. Licet i in *alterius* semper sit brev's, in *aius* semper longa.

2 In quinta declinatione e inter geminum i longa fit; ut, *Faciēi*.

3 Fi in *Fio* ubique longa est, nisi sequatur e & r simul; ut,

Omnia jam fient, fieri quæ posse negabas.

4 Ohe primam syllabam ancipitem habet; *ēhen* semper longam.

5 Vocalis ante alteram in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa fit; ut, *Dicite Pærides*; & in Possessivis, ut, *Avēia nutrix*.

Sed Græcarum quantitas à Græcis rectius addiscenda est.

6 In peregrinis quantitas est ambigua; ut, *Mithæi*, *Abraham*.

III Omnis Diphthongus i longa est; ut, *Aurum*, *Mæsa* Syllabæ item Contractæ; ut, *Cōgo*, *nīl*.

Sed *præ* ante vocalem sæpius corripitur; ut, *Væpræit æstatem*; rarius producitur; ut, *Domino prærit Arion*. æ in *Maotis* est anceps.

IV. Derivata eandem cum Primitivis quantitatem sortiuntur; ut, *āmotor* primā brevi ab *āmo*. Excipiuntur tamen quædam.

1 Deducta à brevibus, quæ producuntur, viz.

<i>Vox, vōcis,</i>	} a }	<i>Vōco.</i>	<i>Jucundus,</i>	} a }	<i>Jūro.</i>
<i>Lex, legis,</i>		<i>Lēgo.</i>	<i>Vōmer,</i>		<i>Vōmo.</i>
<i>Rex, regis,</i>		<i>Rēgo.</i>	<i>Lāterna,</i>		<i>Lāteo.</i>
<i>Sēdes,</i>		<i>Sēdeo.</i>	<i>Tēgula,</i>		<i>Tēgo.</i>
<i>Jūnior,</i>		<i>Jūvenis</i>	<i>Mācero,</i>		<i>Mācer.</i>
<i>Humanus,</i>		<i>Hōmo</i>	<i>Pēnuria,</i>		<i>Pēnus.</i>

2 Deducta

2 Which are derived of them that are long, and are short, viz.

Dux, dūcis,	} of	Dūco	} of	Frāgor,	} of	Frā-
Dīcax,		Dīco		Frāgilis		go.
Fīdes,		Fīo		Nōto, tas,		Nōtu.
ārena, ārisla		āreo		Nāto, tas,		Nātu.
Pōsai,		Pōto		Dīsertus,		Dīsero.
Gēnā,		Gīgno		Sōpor,		Sōpio.

And some others of both sorts.

V. Compound words have the quantity of the Simple; as, Pōtens, impōtens, Sōlor, consōlor.

1 Except	Inūba,	} of	Nū'o	Cognitum,	} of	Nō'm
	Prōnūba,			Agnitum,		
	Dejēro,	} of	Jūro	Perstīturus,	} of	Stāturus,
	Pejēro,			Resistiturus,		

2 Also the Compounds of Dico, that end in dīcus; as, Maledīcus..

3 Ambīus the Noun hath i short, Ambīus the Participle hath i long.

4 Idem in the Masculine gender hath i long, in the Neuter i short.

5 In words that are Compounded

1 With Verbs, the former part ending in e is short; as, Valēdico.

2 With Participles, bi, tri, tre, du, the same are short; as, Biceps, triiceps, trēcenti, dūcenti.

3 With Nouns the former part ending in i, y, u, is short; as, Tardigradus, Polydorus, cornūpetra.

Except quīvis and some others.

6 These words make long the last syllable of their simples which is common, viz. ubique, ubilibet, ibidem, quandōque, quandōcunque, but do in quandōquidem is short,

VI. Of the Prepositions,

1 A, de, e, se, prae, and those that end in a, are long, except a vowel follow; as, unda dēhiscens.

2 Pro the Latine syllable is long, except in these words,

2 Dedu

Dux, dūcis

Dīcax

Fīdes,

ārena, ārisla

Pōsui,

Gēnui,

An

V. Con

Pōtens, im

1 Exci-

puntur

tamen

2 Icer

cus.

3 Amb

producit

4 Ide

corripit

5 In

1 Cu

pitur; u

2 Cu

tur; ut;

3 Cu

corripit

cipe quī

6 H

commu

quandō

corripit

VI. L

1 A

producit

2 P

2 Deducta à longis, quæ corripuntur, viz.

Dux, dūcū,	Dūco.	Frāgor,	Frān-
Dīcax	Dīco.	Frāgilis,	go.
Fīdes,	Fīo.	Nōto, as	Nōtu.
ārena, ārista	āreo	Nāto, as	Nāu.
Pōsui,	Pōno.	Dīscertus	Dīssero.
Gēnui,	Gīgno.	Sōpor,	Sōpio.

Atque alia nonnulla utriusque generis.

V. *Composita* simplicium quantitatem sequuntur; ut, *Pōtens, impōtens. Sōlor, consōlor.*

1 Exci-	Inuūba,	ā Nūbo.	Cognītum,	ā Nōtū
piuntur	Pronūba		Agnītum,	
tamen	Dejēro,	ā Jūo.	Perstīturus	ā Stāu-
	Pejēro		Restīturus	rus.

2 Item *Composita* à *Dīco* in *dīcus*; ut, *Maledī-*
cus.

3 *Ambītus* Nomen corripitur, *ambītus* Participium
producitur,

4 *Idem* Masculinum producit *i*, Neutrum verò
corripit,

5 In *Compositis*.

1 Cum verbis, prior pars vocis in *e* desinens corri-
pitur; ut, *Valēdīco.*

2 Cum particulis, *bi, tri, tre, du*, eadem corripun-
tur; ut, *Biſceps, triſceps, trīcenti, dūcenti.*

3 Cum Nominibus, prior pars exiens in *i, y, u*,
corripitur; ut, *Tardīgradus, Polīdorus, cornūpetā*, ex-
cipe quīvis & pauca alia.

6 Hæ voces ultimam syllabam simplicium, quæ
communis est, producunt, viz. *ubīque, ubīlibet, ibīdem*,
quandōque, quandōcumque, sed do in *quandōquidē*
corripitur.

VI. Ex *Præpositionibus*.

1 *A, de, è, se, præ*, & quæ in *a* desinunt, ubique
producuntur, nisi vocali sequente; ut, *unda dīſſecens.*

2 *Pro* Latina longa est, præterquam in istis,
Pro-

words, *Prōcella, prōfugus, prōtervus, prōnepos, prōnep-
tis, prōfanus, prōfiteor, prōfundus, prōficiſcor, prōfari,
prōparo, prōfugio, prōfectō, prōpello, prōpulſo*. But

1. } *Propago, gas*, } have *Pio* doubtful,
and
2. } *Propago, gnis* }

2. *Pio* the Greek ſyllable is ſhort; as, *Prōpheta, Prōlogus, Prōmetheus*, &c. but in *Propino* it is doubtful.

3. *Di* is long, except in *Dzimo*, and *dſertus*.

4. The reſt of the Prepoſitions be ſhort, if poſition do not hinder; for *re* in *reſert* it is good, cometh of *res*, and is therefore long.

VII. There be } 1. Of Preterperfect tenſes and Su-
two Rules, } pines of two ſyllables.
2. Of Preterperfect tenſes that dou-
ble the firſt ſyllable.

1. Every Preterperfect tenſe and Supine of two ſyllables, hath the firſt ſyllable long, as, *Lēgi, cēmi, mō-
tum, ſātum*. Except

1. Six Preterperfect tenſes, *Fīdi, bībi, dēdi, ſēdi, tūli, ſiēti*.

2. Nine Supines, *Dātum, ſātum, cātum* (of *cico*)
ātum, lītum, quātum, ſītum, rātum, vātum.

2. Preterperfect tenſes that double the firſt ſyllable of their Preſent tenſe, have their firſt ſyllable ſhort; as, *Pēpendi, mōmordi, ſpōſpōdi*.

VIII. The quantity of ſuch ſyllables as come not under the rules aforegoing is to be known by the Example and Authority of Poets, and this is the moſt certain and moſt general way.

1. Becauſe every rule reſteth upon the Authority of the Antients.

2. Becauſe the quantity of many ſyllables is not known but by examples.

1. Theſe words have their firſt ſyllable common,
vir.

words, *P*
ti, *prōfa*
prōparo

1. } *Propo*
2. } *Propo*

2. *Pro*
Prōmethe

3. *Di p*

4. *Rel*
pinnur,
est, ideōq

VII. *Reg*
est duplex

1. *Omn*
rem habet
Excipiunt

1. *Sex*
ſſeti.

2. *Nov*
itum, līt

2. *Prim*
brevem ha

VIII. *C*
rationes n
Authorita
certissima

1. *Qui*
titur.

2. *Qui*
exen

1. *Hxc*

words, *Præcella*, *præfugus*, *prætervus*, *præceptor*, *præp-
tius*, *præfanus*, *præfiteor*, *præfundus*, *præfiscor*, *præfari*,
præparatio, *præfugio*, *præfcedo*, *præpello*, *præpulsio*. Sed,

1. *Propago*, *gas*,
&
Propago, *gignis* } *Pro* habent *incipitem*,

2. *Pro* Græca corripitur; ut, *Præpheta*, *Prælogus*,
Præmetheus, &c. Sed in *propino* anceps est.

3. *Di* producitur, nisi in *Dzrimo*, & *disertus*.

4. Reliquæ *Præpositiones*, si positio sinat, corripiuntur; nam *re* in *refert* *pro* utile est, à nomine *res* est, ideoque producitur.

VII. *Regula* } 1. De *Præteritis* & *Supinis* dissyllabis.
est duplex } 2. De primam *Præteriti* geminantibus.

1. Omne *Præteritum* & *Supinum* dissyllabum priorem habet longam; ut, *Lēgi*, *ēni*, *mōtum*, *īatum*.
Excipiuntur tamen,

1. Sex *Præterita*, *ſſēdi*, *bībi*, *dēdi*, *ſcīdi*, *tūli*, *ſſēci*.

2. Novem supina, *Dārum*, *ſātum*, *cētum* (à *cico*)
itum, *lītum*, *quītum*, *ſūtum*, *rātum*, *ūcum*.

2. Primam *præteriti* geminancia, primam itidem brevem habent; ut, *ſcēendi*, *mōmordi*, *ſpōspondi*.

VIII. Quarum syllabarum quantitas sub prædictas rationes non cadit, à Poëtarum usu, *Exemplo*, atque *Auctoritate* petenda est; atque hæc ratio est omnium certissima & generalissima,

1. Quia regula omnis auctoritate veterum nititur.

2. Quia multarum syllabarum modulus non nisi exemplo cognoscitur.

1. Hæc primam syllabam habent communem;

viz. *Britannus, Bithynus, Cacus, Cosyra, Crathys, Creticus, Curetes, Fidene, Gradivus, Hinulus, Hymen, Italus, liquor, liquidus, Lycas, Orion, Pachinus, palatium, Pelion Pyrene, rudo, Sychaeus, Sycanius, &c.*

2 And these their middle; *Batavus, connubium, ficedula, malea, Pharsalia, Sidonius, &c.*

2
Middle.

IX. Middle syllables are partly known the same way that the first, and partly, 1 By the increase of the Genitive case, And 2 the Analogy of the Conjugation.

1 The increase of the Genitive case is, when a Noun hath more syllables in the Genitive case singular, than it had in the Nominative, and according to it, the last syllable save one of Nouns increasing,

1 Sharp, is long.

2 Flat, is short,

2 The Analogy of Conjugation is, when Verbs follow their common Rule of Conjugating, and according to this.

a	{ the character { or note of the {	First	{ Conjugation is {	long.
e		Second		long.
i		Third		short,
u		Fourth		long.

But in *Do* and its Components, when they are of this Conjugation, *a* is short; as in *dāmus, circumdāmus, dābis, circumdābis, aēre, circumdāre.*

The syllables *rimus* and *ritis* in the Preterperfect tense of the Subjunctive mood are short; as, *Amaverimus, amaveritis*; but long in the Future tense; as, *Amaverimus, amaveritis*.

Latine Adjectives in *inus* make (*i*) long; as, *Claustrinus, mediastinus*. Except these following, *Diuturnus, eraspinus, pristinus, perenninus, hornoninus, serotinus, Oleagnus, saginus, cedrinus, carbasinus*, and others that signify matter, or that come of the names of metals, and end in *inus*; as, *Chrystallinus, myrrinus, &c.* which are derived of Greek Nouns.

Chap.

Britannus, Bithynus, Cacus, Cosyra, Crathys, Creticus, Curetes, Fidene, Gradivus, Hinulus, Hymen, Italus, liquor, liquidus, Lycas, orion, pachinus, palatium, Pelion, Pyrene, rudo, Sycheus, Sycanus, cum quibusdam aliis.

1 Hæc verò mediam; Batavus, connubium, Ficedula, malea, Pharsalia, Sidonius, &c.

IX. Media syllaba partim eadem ratione quâ primæ, partim etiam, 1 Ex incrementis Genitivi, atque, Mediarum;

2 Conjugationis Analogiâ cognosci possunt.

1 Incrementum Genitivi est quando Nomen plures habet syllabas in Genitivo singulari, quàm in Nominativo; juxta hoc, penultima Nominum crescentium.

1 Acutè; longa est.

2 Graviter brevis est.

2 Analogia Conjugationis est; quando Verba sequuntur communem regulam conjugandi; & juxta hanc.

ā	{ index	Primæ	{ Conjugationis	longa	{ est.
ē		Secundæ		longa	
æ		Tertiæ		brevis	
ī		Quartæ		longa	

Sed in Do & ejus Compositis, quando primæ sunt Conjugationis, a brevis est; ut, Dānus, circumdānus, dābis, circumdābis, dāre circumdāre.

Syllabæ rimus & ritus in Præterito modi Subjunctivi sunt breves; ut, Amaverimus, amaveritis; in Futuro verò longæ; ut, Amaverimus, amaveritis.

Adjectiva in inus Latina penultimam producant; ut, Clandestinus, mediastinus, &c. Præter hæc sequentia, diutinus, crastinus, pristinus, perendinus, hornotinus, strotinus, oleaginus, saginus, cedrinus, carbasinus, & reliqua materialia, sive à metallorum nominibus formata in inus; ut, Chrysalinus, myrrhinus, &c. à Graecis deducta.

Chap. 3.

Of the Quantity of the last Syllables.

And last
Syllables.

T He last syllables are reckoned according to the order of the letters with which words do end; thus,

Words that end in

A are long; as, *Amā*, *contrā* *ergā*.

Except

1 *Putā*, *itā*, *quā*, *ejā*.

2 Likewise all cases in *a*, besides Vocatives in *a*, of Greek Nouns in *as*; as, *ō A-nā*, and the Ablative case of the first Declension; as, *Musā*.

3 Numerals in *inta*, which have *a* common; as, *Triginta*, *quadraginta*.

B are short; as, *ab*.

Except

1 Hebrew words; as, *Jatōb*.

C are long; as, *ac*, *sic*, and *hic* the Adverb.

Except

1 *Lac*, *nec*, *dovet*, which are short.

2 *Fac*, and the Pronoun *hic* are common; as, also its Neuter Gender *hoc*, so that it be not of the Ablative case.

D are short; as, *ad*.

1 Except Hebrew words; as, *Dat id*.

E are short; as, *Marē*, *penē*, *legē*, *scribē*.

Except

1 Nouns of the Fifth Declension in *e*; as, *Fidē*, *diē*, *rē*, with the Adverbs that come of them; as, *Hodiē*, *quayē*.

2 *Famē*, now of the Third Declension short; was heretofore of the Fifth long.

Cap. 3.

De Ultimarum Syllabarum Quantitate.

Ultimæ syllabæ numerantur juxta ordinem litterarum finalium, sic,

3
Et ultimarum syllabarum.

A producuntur; ut, *amā. contrā. ergā.*

Excipe

1 *Puā. uā. quā. ejā.*

2 Item omnes casus in *a*, præter Vocativos in *a*, à Græcis in *as*; ut, *ſcāmā*, & Ablativum primæ declinationis; ut, *Musā*.

3 Numeralia in *ginta*, quæ *a* habent communem; ut, *Triginta. quadraginta.*

B brevia sunt; ut *āb*.

Excipe

1 Hebræa; ut, *ſcōb*.

C producuntur; ut, *āc. ſcē. & hīc* Adverbium.

Excipe

1 *Lāc. nēc. donēc*, quæ contrahuntur.

2 *Fac*, & pronomen *hic* sunt communia, item & ejus Neutrum *hoc*, modo non sit Ablativi casus.

D brevia sunt; ut, *ād*.

1 Excipe Hebræa; ut, *Davīd*.

E brevia sunt; ut, *Marē. penē. legē. ſcribē.*

Excipe

1 Voces Quintæ Inflectionis in *e*; ut, *Fidē. diē. rē*, cum Adverbis inde enatis; ut, *Hodiē. quārē*

2 *Famē*, quæ nunc Tertiæ Inflectionis brevis, olim quintæ longa fuit.

The Latine Grammar.

3 The second person singular of the Imperative mood, of the Active voice, of the second Conjugation; as, *Docē, movē, manē*.

But *e* in *Cave, vide, salve*, and *vale* is sometimes short.

4 Monosyllables in *e*; as, *Nē, tē, cē*, except, *quē, nē, tē*, the Inclivative Conjunctions.

5 Adverbs in *e* derived of Adjectives; as, *Dolē, valdē, and ferē*; yet *benē* and *malē* are short.

6 Words that in Greek are writ with an *Eta*, or *e* long; as, *Achisē, cecē, tempē*, are long; as, *Dominī, amarī*.

Except

1 *Mibi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, uti* for *ut*, and *cui* a word of two syllables, which are common.

2 *Nisī* and *quasī* which are short, as are also the Vocative cases of Greek Nouns, whose Genitive singular endeth in *os*; as, *Pallidī, Daphnī*.

L are short; as, *Animāl, mēl*.

Except

1 *Sā', and Sōl*.

2 Hebrew words which are writ in Greek with a long vowel; as, *Michaēl*.

V are long; as, *Peān, Hymēn, nōn*.

Except

1 *Forsān, forsitān, ān, tamēn, attamēn, veruntamēn*.

2 Words cut off by Apocope; as, *Mēn', vidēn'*.

3 *In* with its Compounds; as, *Exīn, subīn, &c.*

4 Nouns ending in *en*, whose genitive case singular hath *nis* short; as, *Carmēn, pedēn, libicēn*,

5 Greek

Words that end in

Finita in

3 Secundæ personæ singulares imperativorum Activorum secundæ Conjugationis; ut, *Docē, movē, manē.*

Sed *e* in *Cave, vide, salve, & vale* quandoque etiam corripitur.

4 Monosyllaba in *e*; ut, *mē, tē, cē*, præter *quē, nē, vē*, Encliticas Conjunctiones.

5 Adverbia in *e*, ab Adjectivis deducta; ut, *doctē, valdē*, item *sermē, & sciē*. *Benē* examen & *malē* corripuntur,

6 Quæ à Græcis per *u* scribuntur; ut, *Anchiē, celiē, tempē.*

longa sunt; ut, *Dominī, amā ī.*

I Excipe

1 *Mihi, tibi, sibi, nobis, ibi, uti* prout, & *cui* dissyllabum, quæ sunt communia.

2 *Nisi & quasi* quæ corripuntur, ut & Dativi & vocativi Græcorum, quorum Genitivus in *os* breve exit; ut, *Pallidī, Daphnī.*

L corripuntur; ut, *Animā, mēl.*

Excipe

1 *Sāl & sōl.*

2 Hebræa, quæ Græcè scribuntur per vocalem longam; ut, *Michaēl.*

N producantur; ut, *Parān, hymēn, nōn.*

Excipe

1 *Foriān, forsiān, ān, tamēn, attamēn, vēruntamēn.*

2 Voces per Apocopen castratas; ut, *Mēn', vidēn'.*

3 In cum Compositis; ut, *Exīn, subīn, &c.* Nomina in *en*, quorum Genitivum *inis* correptum habet; ut, *Carmēn, pectēn, tibiēn.*

5 Greek Nouns in *ou* by little *o*; as, *Ilīōn*, *Petīōn*, *Cantacōz*.

6 Greek Nouns in *in*, *yn*, and *an*, whose Nominative case is short; as, *Alexīn*, *I.γ.ν*, *Maiān*.

O are common; as, *Amo*, *virgo*, *porro*, *docendo*,
Except

1 Oblique cases in *o* which are always made long, as, *Dominō* *servō*.

2 Adverbs derived of Adjectives; as, *Tantō*, *salvō*, &c. But *sedulō*, *crebrō*, and *mutuō* are common, rather to be made long.

3 Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *dō*, *siō*, and *ergō* for *causā*.

4 *Ambo*, *duo*, *ego*, *homo*, *citō*, *modō*, with its compounds, are seldom read long.

5 Greek words in *o* are long; as, *Sapphō*, unless they come of Nominative cases in *on* from which (*n*) is taken away; as *Leo*, *Plato*, which for the most part are short.

R are short; as, *Casār*, *torculār*, *pēr*, *disiēr*,
Except,

1 *Fār*, *lār*, *nār*, *vēr*, *sūr*, *cūr*, and *pār*, with its compounds. *Cor* is once read long in Ovid.

Molle menū levibus cor est violabile telus.

2 Greek words that end in *er* with *e* long; as, *Aēr*, *cratēr*, except *patrēr*, *matēr*.

S have terminations answerable to the number of vowels.

as are long; as, *Amās*, *minār*.

Except,

1 Greek nouns, whose Genitive case singular endeth in *os*; as, *Arcōs*, *Pallās*.

2 The Accusatives plural of Nouns increasing; as, *Heroās*, *Philliās*.

es are long; as, *Anchisē*, *seās*, *doēs*.

Except

Words that end in

Finia in

3 Græca in *on* per *o* parvum; ut, *Ilīōn*, *Peliōn*, *Caucasōn*.

6 Græca in *in*, *yn*, & *an*, quorum Nomina-
tivus est brevis; ut, *Alexīn*, *Ityn*, *Maiān*.

O Communia sunt; ut, *Amo*, *virgo*, *perro*, *docendo*,
Excipe.

1 Obliquos in *o*, qui semper producuntur;
ut, *Dominō*, *servō*.

2 Adverbia ab Adjektivis deducta; ut, *Tan-
tō*, *falsō*, &c. Sed *sedulō*, *cribrō*, *matud*, sunt
communia rariū producenda.

3 Monosyllaba in *o* producuntur; ut, *dō*, *flō*,
item *ergō* pro *causā*.

4 *Ambo*, *duo*, *ego*, *homo*, *cuius*, *modo*, cum com-
positis vix leguntur producta.

5 Græca per *o* producuntur; ut, *Sapphō*,
nisi descendant, à Nominativis in *ay* quibus
adimitur; ut, *Leo*, *Plato*, quæ plerunque
corripiuntur.

R Corripiuntur; ut, *Casār*, *torcūtār*, *pēr*, *dīcēr*,
Excipe.

1 *Fār*, *lār*, *uār*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *cūr*, & *pār*, cum com-
positis, Cor semel apud Ovidium producitur.

Molle meum levibus cor est violabile telis,

2 Græca in *ng* er, ut, *Stēr*, *Cratēr*, excipe
patēr & *matēr*.

S pares cum numero vocalium terminationes ha-
bent.

produciuntur; ut, *amār*, *musār*,

as Excipe.

1 Græca, quorum Genitivus singularis in
dos exit; ut, *Arēās*, *Pallās*.

2 Accusativos plurales nominum crescen-
tium; ut, *Heroās*, *Phillidār*.

longa sunt; ut, *Anchīsēs*, *sedēs*, *docēs*.

cs Excipe

Except

1 Nouns in *es* of the Third Declension that increase short; as, *Milēs, divēs*. But of these, *Cerēs, abiēs, ariēs, pariēs* and *pēs*, with its Compounds, are long.

2 *Es* of *sum*, with its Compounds, *potēs, adēs, prodēs, obēs*, and *penēs* the Preposition, are short.

Neuters singular, and Nominatives plural of Greek Nouns that end in *es* not *eis*; as, *Cacoethēs, Cyclopēs*,

is are short; as, *Parīs, panīs, tristīs*

Except

1 Oblique cases plural in *is*; as, *Musīs, dominīs*, and *queīs* for *quibus*.

2 Words that make long the last syllable save one of the Genitive case increasing; as, *Samnīs, nitīs*.

3 Which are made in *is* of the Diphthong *ei*; as, *Omnīs, Simōīs*.

4 All Monosyllables; as, *Vīs, līs*, besides *is, bis*, and *quīs*.

5 *Velīs* with its Compounds, *malīs, nolīs*, and *ausīs, faxīs*.

6 The second persons singular of the Indicative mood present tense of the fourth Conjugation; as, *Audīs, dormīs*.

7 The second persons of the Future tense of the Subjunctive mood, which are common; as, *dederis, amaveris*,

os are long; as, *Herōs, bonōs, dominōs*.

Except

1 *Compōs, impōs*, and *ōs, offīs*.

2 Greek Nouns with little *o*; as, *Delōs, Palladōs*,

us are short; as, *Famulū, empūr*.

Except

Excipe

1 Nomina in *es* tertiæ Declinationis graviter crescentia; ut, *milēs*, *arēs*. Sed ex his, *Cerēs*, *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *pariēs*, & *pēs* cum Compositis longa sunt.

2 *Es* quoque à *sam* unà cum Compositis; *poiēs*, *adēs*, *prodēs*, *obēs*, & *penēs* Præpositio corripuntur.

3 Item Neutra singularia: & Nominativi plurales Græcorum in *es* breve non *es* desinentia; ut, *Cacoethēs*, *Cyclopēs*.
is breviter sunt; ut, *Parīs*, *panīs*, *tristīs*.

Excipe

1 Obliquos plurales in *is*; ut *Musīs*, *dominīs*, & *quīs* pro quibus.

2 Producentia penultimam Genitivi crescentis; ut, *Samnīs*, *nītīs*.

3 Quæ sunt in *is* ab *eis* Diphthongo; ut, *Omnīs*, *Simoīs*.

4 Monosyllaba omnia; ut, *Vīs*, *līs*, præter *īs*, *hīs*, & *quīs*.

5 *Velīs*, cum Compositis, *malīs*, *volīs*, item *ausīs*, *faxīs*.

6 Secundas personas singulares Indicativi præsentis quartæ Conjugationis; ut, *Audīs*, *dormīs*.

7 Secundas personas Futuri Subjunctivi, quæ sunt communes; ut, *dederis*, *amaveris*.

or producuntur; ut, *Herōs*, *honōs*, *dominōs*.

Excipe

1 *Compōs*, *impōs*, & *ōs*, *offis*.

2 Græca per *o* parvum; ut, *Delōs*, *Palladōs*.

us corripuntur; ut, *famulūs*, *tempūs*.

Excipe

Except

1 The Nominative cases of Nouns that increase long; as, *Virtūs, salūs*.

2 The Genitive cases singular, the Nominatives, the Vocatives and Accusatives plural of the fourth Declension; as, *hujus manūs, he manūs, has manūs, & manūs*.

3 Monosyllables in *us*; as, *pūs, erūs*.

4 Words which are writ in Greek with *us*; as, *Panthūs, Cliūs*.

And the name *Jesūs* to be revered of all good men.

u are long; as, *manū, genū*.

y and ys are short; as, *Moly, Tiphys*,

The last syllable in every verse is common;
i. e. it may be either long or short.

Appendix

Excipe

1 Nominativos acutè crescentium; ut, *Vir-*
tūs, salūs.

2 Genitivos singulares, Nominativos, Vo-
cativos, & Accusativos plurales Quaræ De-
clinationis; ut, *hujus manūs, ha manūs, hæ*
manūs, & manūs.

3 Monosyllaba in *ui*; ut, *pūs, crūs.*

4 Quæ à Græcis scribuntur per *ui*; ut;
Pantbūs, Clyūs.

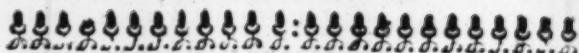
Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen Iesus.

u producantur; ut, *Manū, genū.*

y & *ys* corripuntur; ut, *Moly, Tiphy's.*

Ultima cujusque versūs syllaba habetur
communis.

Appendix



Appendix Grammatices.

Appendix
Grammatices.

agit

De Ordine.

HAtenus de *vocum Elementis, Accidentibus Constructione & Pronunciatione*, quæ quidem quatuor, quas jam diximus, *Partes Grammaticæ* tanquam *propria & partialia singularum subiecta*, constituantur, & ipsam *orationem juxta Regulas Grammatices* componendâ (tanquam *subiectum* hujus *Artis*, ut *Logici* dicunt, *adequatũ, totale & principale*) conspiciunt.

Nunc verò de *Ordine vocũ* pauca subijciemus. Nam & hoc etiam ad finem *Grammatici* aliquo modo conducit, ut, quo ordine voces sint collocandæ, ad orationem melius eloquendam, aut scribendam intelligat.

Cap. I.

De Ordine vocum Grammatico.

Dictionum
sive vocum

Ordō *Dictionum* est earundem inter se collocatio, ut alia necessario præcedat, alia sequatur.

Est autem Oratio triplex.
 1. *Grammaticus*.
 2. *Oratorius*.
 3. *Poeticus*.
 Quorum ob-
 servant
 1. *Grammatici*.
 2. *Oratores*.
 3. *Poetæ*.
 in Oratione componenda.

Grammatico.

1. *Ordo Grammaticus* sive *naturalis* est, quando voces in oratione juxta naturam suam collocantur, nullo observato sonorum numero.

Atque hic ordo è sermone vernaculo præcipuè cognoscitur.

Secundum hunc ordinem composita oratio *Translatio* dicitur.

In *Translatione* verò sic collocantur voces.

1. *Vocativus*, vocandi particulæ, & quæ ab illis pendunt.

2. *Nominativus*, & quæ ab eo pendunt.

3. *Verbum*

3. *Verbum*
 1. *Infinitivum*
 Hic tan
 1. *Adverbium*
 2. *Subiectum*
 Item
 3. *Interiectum*
Adverbium
 voces.
 4. *Imperativum*
 5. *Accusativum*
 debet per
 6. *Si*

Scipio
 sunt om
 afferant
 multum
 ne quid
 est maxi
 bene, re
 dissimul.

Ca

Ordō
 quæ co
 Juxta
 solum
 nem dic
 In or
 1. *Oratio*
 & *Verbum*
 2. *Adverbium*
 qui del

Appendix Grammatices.

381

3 Verbum principale, & quæ ab eo pendent, viz.
1 Infinitum, 2 Casus Verbi, & quæ ab illis pendent,
Hic tamen observandum.

1 Adverbium Verbo subjungitur.

2 Subjunctivum & Adjectivum conjungi debent.

Item Præpositio & suus casus.

3 Interrogativa, Relativa, Indefinita, & Partitiva,
Adverbia quædam & Conjunctiones præcedunt alias
voces.

4 Impersonale quandoque incipit orationem.

5 Accusativus ante verbum Impersonale exponi
debet per *quod* vel *ut*.

6 Si quid defuerit suppleri debet.

Exemplum Ordinis Grammatici.

Scipio & Læli, antes exercitationesque virtutum
sunt omnino arma apertissima senectutis; quæ cultæ
afferant fructus mirificos in ætate omni, cum vixeris
multum diuque, non solum quia deserunt nunquam,
nè quidem in tempore extremo ætatis, quanquam id
est maximum; verum etiam quia *conscientia vite ætate
bene, recordati dque benefactorum multorum est jucun-
dissimi.*

Cap. 2. De Ordine vocum Oratorio.

Ordo Oratorius est quando voces in oratione jux- 2 Oratoria.
ta Artem Oratoriam collocantur, observatis
quædam certis, sed omnino dissimilibus sonorum numeris.

Juxta hunc ordinem compositæ voces *Prosa* sive
solutam Orationem (quam & *καὶ ἐξολω* Orationem
dicimus) constituunt.

In oratione componendâ,

1 Obliquus in principio, Nominativus in medio,
& Verbum in fine collocetur.

2 Adjectivum præcedere, Substantivum verò se-
qui debet.

3 Inter

3. Inter Adjectivum & Substantivum alix voces interseruntur.

4. Adverbia Præpositionesque cum sua casu venustius ante Verbum vel Participium suum collocantur.

5. In prosâ versum fugito : citare tamen pores.

6. Principium vel exitum carminis, nec principium nec exitum proæ facito.

7. Principii cura sit major, medii penè nulla, clausulæ verò, maxima.

8. In fine & principio periodi commendantur dictiones polysyllabæ, sed clausula varianda est maxime.

9. Artificium numeri nunquam longius senis à fine syllabis obsequeatur.

10. Ex longis omnibus clausula rarior est, rarissima ex omnibus brevibus, ac ex temperatione longarum & brevium frequentior.

11. Vocalium in diversis vocibus concursus sit quàm rarissimus.

12. In sublimi stylo adhibendæ sunt longæ syllabæ; in humil. verò breves.

Exemplum Ordinis Oratorii.

Aptissimum omnino sunt Scipio & Læli, arma senectutis artes exercitationesque virtutum; quæ in omni ætate culex, cum multum diuque vixeris, minimeos afferant tractus; non solum quia nunquam desunt, ne in extremo quidem tempore ætatis, quanquam id maximum est, verum necesse quia conscientia beneactæ vitæ, multorumque bene factorum recordatio, jucundissima est.

N. B. Neque tamen hæc præcepta sunt ita modicus tenenda, quin ut puer ex doctissimorum observatione pectora illis apprehendat, & in componenda oratione proprias aures & pulmones consulat.

Itaque

Itaque
arque in
suam nu
hendat.

O
dem &
Juxta
P

Itaque sex septemve periodos à se compositas semel atque iterum reciter; sic enim experietur orationem suam numerosam esse, vel hiantem & asperam deprehendat.

Cap. 3.

De Ordine vocum Poëtico.

O Rdo Poëticus est quando voces in oratione juxta Artem Poëticam collocantur, observatis quidem & certis & similibus sonorum numeris.

3 Poëtica.

Juxta quem
Carmen
constituitur.

Juxta hunc ordinem constricta Oratio *Carmen* sive Poëma dicitur.



2 Pro Ratione	Numeri Versum,	usitate dicitur	Hemistichon,	quod continet	dimidium versus.	Per est
			Distichon,		duos versus.	
1 Materia			Tetrastichon,		quatuor versus.	Dissyllabi
			Hexastichon,		sex versus.	
			Etcostichon,		annorum	pedes
			Hemaro-		dierum	sunt
			stichon,		numerus	quatuor
			Acrostichis, cujus initiales, finales; aut medix littere collectae certum sensum praebent.			
			Comœdia, Tragedia, Bucolica, Elegia, Ode, Hymnus, Georgica, Satira, Epigramma, Epitaphium, Epithalamium, Genethliacum, &c.			

In quo dignoscendi sunt.

In *Carmine* verò ritè constituendo summa cura adhibenda est ad dignoscendos pedes, & diversa versuum genera. Ex pedibus enim conjunctis fiunt Versus, & ex Versibus Carmen.

Cap. 4.

De Pedes, & ejus generibus.

1 Per.

PES est duarum syllabarum pluriùmve constitutio, ex certâ temporum sive quantitatum observatione.

Pes

- 1 *Simplex*, 1 *Dysyllabus*, qui constat ex 1 *Simpliciter*
 atque is duabus syllabis.
 2 *Trissyllabus*, qui constat ex
 aut tribus syllabis.
 2 *Compositus*, qui constat ex simplicibus
 pedibus conjunctis

- Dissyllabi* } *Spondeus*, } qui constat ex } duabus longis. a
pedes } *Pyrrhychi* } duabus brevibus. b
 sunt } *Trocheus*, } priore longâ, & po- c
 quatuor } *Iambus*, } steriore brevi. c
 } } priore brevi, & po- d
 } } steriore longâ. d

* *Virtus*, b *Dēus*, c *annus*, d *amans*.

- 1 *Molossus*, } 1 tribus longis. e
 1 *Tribrachius*, } 1 tribus brevibus. f
 1 *Dactylus*, } primâ longâ, reliquis
 1 *Anapaestus*, } duabus brevibus. g
 1 *Bacchius*, } primis duabus brevibus, h
 1 *Antibacchius*, } postremâ longâ. h
 1 *Amphimacer*, } primâ brevi, reliquis
 1 *Amphibrachius*, } duabus longis. i
 } primis duabus longis, k
 } postremâ brevi. l
 } primâ longâ, mediâ bre-
 } vi, ultimâ longâ. l
 } primâ brevi, mediâ lon-
 } gâ, ultimâ brevi. m

* *Magnâtes*. f *Dominus*. g *Scribē*. h *Prius*.
 i *Honestas*. k *Audire*. l *Charitas*. m *Ventus*.

Pedes compositi, potius pedum conjunctiones; quam
 pedes à quibuldam vocantur, atque ab aliis omittun-
 tur tanquam non multum ad institutum Grammatici
 pertineant. Hos tamen tetrasyllabas nihilominus ad-
 dicimus, propter aliquem eorum usum in Carminibus
 his quæ ab his nomen acceperunt, viz. Choriambicum
 paicum, &c.

Pedes igitur composui præcipui sunt 18.

Proceleusmaticus
 Dispondeus
 Choriambus
 Anispastrum
 Diambus
 Dichoræus
 Ionicus à majore
 Ionicus à minore
 Epitritus primus
 Epitritus secundus
 Epitritus tertius
 Epitritus quartus
 Peon primus
 Peon secundus
 Peon tertius
 Peon quartus

qui constat ex

duobus Pyrrhichiis.
 duobus Spondeis.
 Trochæo & Iambo.
 Iambo & Trochæo.
 duobus Iambis
 duobus Trochæis.
 Spondeo & Pyrrhichio.
 Pyrrhichio & Spondeo.
 Iambo & Spondeo.
 Trochæo & Spondeo.
 Spondeo & Iambo.
 Spondeo & Trochæo.
 Trochæo & Pyrrhichio.
 Iambo & Pyrrhichio.
 Pyrrhichio & Trochæo.
 Pyrrhichio & Iambo.

Ulc, a Hominis. b Concludentes. c Historia.
 d Alexander. e Severitas. f Comproba. g Canabimur.
 h Venerantes. i salutantes. k Constat. l Comitia. m Incantare.
 n Conscire. o Resolvere. p Scire. q Severitas.

Ex pedibus autem, Iambus & Trochæus, Spondeus & Daetylus, Anapaestus & Tribrachus, usitatissimi sunt.

Cap. 5.

De Versuum varietatibus generibus.

2 Versus,

Versus est oratio iusto atque legitimo pedum numero constricta.

Versum composituro discendum est, pedibus ipsarum ritè metiri (sive in suos pedes distinguere) quam Scansionem sive Dimensionem vocant; ut,

& eorundem

3 Scansio.

Ia-vè nec || invide || o sive || me lile || ibis in un-
 Hei mihi || quod dū mī nō || nōa lile || ire tū ||.

Scan-

Scansio

1 Cap.

pars in

Scansio

Specie

1 Tri

2 Per

3 He

4 En

Illè

Ob C

quando

1^{un}

2^{un}

3^{un}

4^{un}

N. B.

Aurè

urbem

2 Syn

in diver

Sei a

At heu

At bis

Interdu

Et sue

Tec su

Aliqu

sequent

Omnia

L

3 Eff

proxima

Monstr

Oliv

Arbore

Scansioni occidunt hæc Figure; vid.

Cui acci-

1 *Cæsura* quum ita secatur vox ut posterior ejus pars initium sit pedis sequentis; ut,

dunt,

1 *Cæsura*.

Sic cānībūs cānībūs sīmīlēs sic mārībūs hādōs.

Species ejus sunt quatuor,

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|----------|--|
| 1 Triemimeris, | } post
cum | primum | } pedem relin-
quitur syl-
laba; ut, |
| 2 Penthemimeris, | | secundum | |
| 3 Hephthemimeris, | | tertium | |
| 4 Encemimeris, | | quartum | |

1 2 3 4
Illē, sātūs, nūvē, ūm mōtī, fīlī, fīlī, sātūs hyā, cīnībō.

Ob Cæsuram, syllaba brevis in fine dictionis aliquando extenditur.

Post 1^{um} 2^{um} 3^{um} 4^{um} } Pēlōrībūs lūbī, āns spī, āntī, ācōn, dīlīt ētrā;
} } } } } Omnī, ā, vīnē, ā, mōr, ē, nōr, cē, dāmī, ā, mōr.
} } } } } Offēntāns ārtēm, pā, ī, pē, ā, cūmquē, sō, nāuēm
} } } } } Illē, sātūs, nūvē, ūm mōtī, fīlī, fīlī, sātūs hyā, cīnībō.

N. B. Invenustus est versus qui Cæsura caret; ut,

Alīrē, cārmīpā, hūlī, sībīs, māximē, vātūm.

Urbēm, fōrtēm, nūpēr, cēpīt, fōrtior, hōstis.

2 *Synalepha* est elisio quædam vocalis ante alteram in diversis dictionibus; ut,

2 *Synalepha*.

Sē, ā, nī, mīs, vī, ē, est, crā, fīnā, vīv, hōdī, ē.

At heu, & io nunquam intercipiuntur; ut,

At hīs, ī, ō, Arē, thū, fā, ō, Arē, thū, fā, vō, ā, vīt.

Interdum etiam *Synalepha* negligitur; ut,

Et sūs, cūs, pē, ō, rī, ē, tī, c, sūb, dū, c, ī, v, ā, gāt.

Tēr, sū, ut, cōnā, tī, ī, m, pōnē, ē, Pēlō, Offām.

Aliquando fit in fine versus; seu, potius in principio sequentis; ut,

Omnī, ā, Mērcūrī, ō, sīmī, līs, vō, cēmquē, cō, lōrēm, quē, Et crinēs, flāvōs.

3 *Esthipsis*.

3 *Esthipsis* est quoties m cum suā vocali perimitur, proxima dictione à vocali exorīā; ut,

Mōnstr, hōr, rēnd, ān, fōrm, īn, gēns, cū, plūmēn, ā, dē, mpt, ē, ē.

Olīgī, elīdebāt, S, ut,

Arbōrī, būs, vērē, rēs, dē, cīdērē, fālē, vūs, rāmōs.

X 3

4 *Syn-*

4 Synaresis.

4 Synaresis est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio; ut,

*Sēn len || ō fūē || rīat. * al || var || ā || vīmāne || tēxtā.*

* pro alvearia.

Fit autem frequentius in his dictionibus, *Dii, diis, iidem, iisdem, deinde, deinceps, semianimis, semihomo, semivultus, deest, decro deerit, anteambulo, anteit, cui, & Genitivus nominum in eius; ut, ulissus, ulissei, cum multis aliis.*

3 Diarefis.

3 Diarefis est ubi ex una syllaba dissecta sunt dux; ut,

Dēbuerant fūōs ēvō || ū || ū || ē || fūōs. pro evoluisse.

6 Systole.

6 Systole est quæ longam syllabam corripit; ut,

Marī longā decem tūlē || ū || t fastīdīā mē || ēs.

7 Diastole.

7 Diastole est quæ brevem syllabam producit; ut,

In quē || rē || dī || mūs quicquid mō || t || alē || crē || ā || mur.

Atque hæc si reperitur in ultima dictionis syllabâ *Cæsura* frequentius dicitur; ut,

Omi || ā || vincit || mō || r || ē || || rō || s || cē || damūs || ā || mō || i.

Versuum genera } 1 Depositionis.

sunt varia pro } &

ratione } 2 Metri.

1 Depositio.

1 Depositio est terminatio scansionis, ex quâ versuum abundantiam, plenitudinem, aut defectum cognoscimus.

Secundum hanc versus dicitur,

Secundum
quam dicitur,

1 *Acatalecticis*, sive *perfectis*, cui nihil aut superest aut deest; ut,

Mūsē || jōvīs || sūt || sī || tē.

1 *Acatalecticis*.

2 *Catalecticis*, sive *semimutulis*, cui in fine deest syllaba; ut,

Mūsē || jōvēm || ē || ā || tē || ant.

2 *Catalecticis*.

3 *Brachycatalecticis*, sive *mutulis*, cui in fine pes deest; ut,

Mūsē || jōvīs || gnātē.

3 *Brachycatalecticis*.

4 Hyper-

aut duæ

M

M

2 Me-

furatur.

Q

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

1 Dimelei;

4 *Hypercatalecticis*, sive *exuberantibus*, in quo una, 4 *Hypercata-*
aut duæ syllabæ superlunt; ut, *lecticis*.

Mūsæ || sōrō || rēs sūt Mēnēr (uæ,
Mūsæ || sōrō || rēs Pā || ānīs (lugent.

2 *Metrum* est legitimus pedum numerus, qui men- 2 *Metrum*.
suratur.

Quoad *Metrum* versus dicitur,

Secundum

1 *Dimeter*,

duobus, estque

1 *Adonius*, sive *Adonicus* qui constat quod est,
ex dactylo & spondæo; ut, 1 *Adonicus*.

Gaudjā || pēllē.

Pēllē || ū || mō ēm.

2 *Archilochius dactylicus*, qui constat 2 *Archilo-*
ex duobus dactylis, & syllabā; ut, *chius dacty-*
Dīscitē || ū || ū || m. *licus*.

3 *Alcmanius*, qui constat ex tribus 3 *Alcmani-*
dactylis & syllabā; ut, *us*.

Dīscitē || ū || ū || ū || mō ēm || ū || m.

4 *Glyconicus*, qui constat ē spondæo, 4 *Glyconicus*
& duobus dactylis; ut;

Tandē || ēgēā || ū || ū || ū || m.

5 *Pherecratus*, qui constat ē spon- 5 *Pherecra-*
dæo, dactylo & spondæo; ut, *tus*.

Nigrīs || æquōrā || ū || ū || ū || m.

Hic versus aliquando pro priori
spondæo habet trochæum; ut,

Prōdē || as || ū || ū || ū || m.

Aliquando Anapæstum; ut,

Sīmīlī || sūrgit ab || ū || ū || m.

6 *Asclepiadeus*, qui constat ex 6 *Asclepi-*
spondæo, dactylo, & syllabā lon- *adeus*.
ga, & duobus deinde dactylis;

ut,

Macē || nās || ātā || ū || ū || ū || ū || ū || m.

7 *Sapphicus*, qui constat ex trochæo 7 *Sapphicus*.
spondæo, & duobus deinde trochæis;

ut,

Jām sā || ū || ū || ū || ū || ū || ū || ū || ū || m.

Phalæcius.

Pentameter,

quinque, estque

Post tres versus Sapphicos, Adonicus addi solet.

8 Phalæcius, qui constat ex spondeo, dactylo, & tribus tandem trochæis, ut.

Quoquō||dissigz||ās pā||rens Mā||tūi
Nostrium||non pore||ris la||tere||nasum.

Elegiacus.

4

9 Elegiacus, qui constat dactylo vel spondeo, cum syllabâ longâ; & duobus tandem omnino dactylis, cum syllabâ item longâ; ut,

Res est||ficti||i||plēnā||mōis
(āmōr.Hēi mīb||quod dōm||nō||nōn lēct
(iē||tūō.

Heroicus.

Hexameter,

qui constat pedibus

sex, estque

10 Heroicus, qui constat quatuor primis locis ē spondeo vel dactylo, quinto dactylo, & sexto spondeo; ut,

Tyri||tūpāt||rēcū||baus sūb iēg||
(mīnēfāgī.Sylv||rem tēnū||i Mū||sām mēdi-
(tārē||ēnā.

Reperitur etiam spondeus aliquando in quinto loco; ut,

Chārā Dē||ūm fōb||tēs māg||nī fōr||
(iēcē||mētūm.

Est & Heroicus Tetrameter qui constat ex quatuor postremis Hexametri pedibus; ut,

Aut Ephēsum bīmā||is rē Cōrīnthē.

Iambicus

11 Iambicus, qui constat ē pedibus Iambicis; ut,

Sūt||ēt ip||sā Rō||mā i||rī||ūis

Est autem hic versus

1 *Purus*, sive *Legitimus*, qui constat
 è folis Iambis; ut,

Phāse || ūs īl || lē, quēm || vīdē || ūs hōspī-
 (iēs

2 *Imparus*, qui aliquot in locis re-
 cipit pedem diversum Iambo; ut,

Jūs ēē || iā ā || nīs, ōp || prīmī || lēgēs
 (tīmōr

3 *Scæzon*, sive *Choliambus*, i. e. clau-
 dicans Iambus, qui in sexto loco
 Spondæum, & in quinto Iambum re-
 tinet; ut,

Nēc sōn || tē tā || brā pī ō || ūī || cābā || ī-
 (nō.

N. B. Recipit Iambicus interdum (ob ma-
 jorem gravitatem exprimendam) in lo-
 cis imparibus (i. e. primo, tertio, &
 quinto) pro Iambo tribrachum, spon-
 dæum, dactylum, anapæstum; atque in
 locis paribus (i. e. secundo & quarto)
 quandoque tribrachum, spondæum rari-
 ūs, ultimum verò locum rarò mutat; &
 saltem binos pedes Iambos perpetuò sibi
 servat.

Hic versus etiam dicitur
 in duo genera uisitoria

1 *Dimetrum*, sive *tetrametrum*, qui
 constat ex quatuor pedibus quēni-
 que metimur

Per dipodiam; i. e. geminum
 pedem more Græco; ut,

O cārmīnū || dūlēē || nōt.e.

Per monopodiam, i. e. sin-
 gulos pedes more Latino;

O cārmīnū || dūlēēs || nōt.e.

6 Hic a-

12 Archilochius Heptameter.

6 Heptameter,

qui constat pedibus

septē, estque

12 Archilochius Heptameter, qui constat quatuor primis pedibus Heroicis & tribus tandem trochæis; ut,
Sōlvit̃r̃ || ac̃r̃s̃ h̃y || t̃m̃s̃ gr̃a || ā ṽỹc̃ē
(ṽr̃is̃ || c̃i F̃āṽōñi.

2 Trimetrum sive senarium, qui senis constat pedibus, quemque metimur,

Per dipodiam; ut,

Q̃uī nō || dam̃ant || s̃ū̃t
h̃is̃tr̃i || ō || ñēs m̃āx̃im̃i,

Per monopodiam; ut,

Q̃uī nō || dam̃ant || s̃ū̃t
h̃is̃tr̃i || ō || ñēs m̃āx̃im̃i,

Plura qui q̃ærit, Autores qui de *Arte Poëtica* fusiùs scripserunt, oriofior consulat.

Et discas oportet, & quod didicisti agendo confirmes.
Sen. Epist.

Doctissimorum enim virorum usus pluris faciendus,
quàm omnes omnium Grammaticorum Caneos.
Danesius,

Artifices, solus, qui facit; usus erit. Ovid.

The Latine Grammar teacheth the Art or Skill to write or speak Latine aright:
It is divided into four parts.

The Latine Grammar teacheth the Art or Skill to write or speak Latine aright:
It is divided into four parts.

A Synopsis or short view of the Latine Grammar.

- I. *Orthographie*, which teacheth how to spell words, *Lib. 1.*
- 1 Of Letters. C. 1.
 - 2 Of Syllables. C. 2.
 - 3 Of Right Utterance. C. 3.
 - 4 Of points in Sentences. C. 4.

It treateth ———

- 1 In General. C. 1.

- II. *Etymologic*, which treateth of the *Eight parts of speech*, and their Accidents, *Lib. II.*
- 1 In particular,
 - 1 Of a Noun and
 - 1 Its proper Accidents C. 2. which are
 - 1 Case, C. 3.
 - 1 General,
 - 1 Of Proper, C. 5.
 - 2 Common, C. 6.
 - 2 Of Adjectives, C. 10.
 - 2 Special, Of Nouns
 - not increasing, C. 7.
 - increasing,
 - Long, C. 8.
 - Short, C. 9.

- 2 Gender, C. 4. the Rules to know which are
 - 3 Declension
 - the first, C. 11.
 - the second, C. 12.
 - the third, C. 13.
 - the fourth, C. 14.
 - the fifth, C. 15.

To which belong the manner of declining Adjectives, C. 16.

- 4 Comparison, C. 17.
- To these belong the Rules of Heteroclitics, which are
 - variant, C. 18.
 - Deficient in
 - Case, C. 19.
 - Number, C. 20.
 - Redundant, C. 21.

2 Its kinds, C. 22.

2 Of a Pronoun, C. 23.

3 Of

A short view of the Latine GRAMMAR.

III. Syntax is which teacheth the due joyning words together, Lib. III. by way of

		Accidents, <i>cha.</i> 24	
3 Of a Verb and its	{	Form of the Conjugation	first, <i>cha.</i> 25.
			second, <i>cha.</i> 26.
			third, <i>cha.</i> 27.
			fourth, <i>cha.</i> 28.
1 The Rules to know	{	Hither-to be long	1 The Preter-perfect Tenses
			2 The Supines
			Of Verbs in O
			1 Regular { Simple <i>cha.</i> 29. Compound <i>c.</i> 30. Simple <i>cha.</i> 31. Compound, and the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in <i>or</i> , <i>cha.</i> 31. 2 Irregular, <i>cha.</i> 33. 3 Defective, <i>cha.</i> 34.
2 The forming of		Irregular Verbs, <i>cha.</i> 35. the Verb <i>Sum</i> , <i>cha.</i> 36.	
3 Impersonals and Derivatives,		<i>cha.</i> 37.	
4 Of a Participle,		<i>cha.</i> 38.	
5 Of an Adverb,		<i>cha.</i> 39.	
6 Of a Conjunction,		<i>cha.</i> 40.	
7 Of a Preposition,		<i>cha.</i> 41.	
8 Of an Interjection,		<i>cha.</i> 42.	
1 Concordance, <i>c.</i> 1. containing the Rule	{	of the	first { Sect. 1.
			second { Sect. 2.
			third { Sect. 3.
			Case of the Relative. Sect. 4. Question and Answer, Sect. 5.
1 Of Nouns	{	1 Substantives,	Ge. { Sect. 7.
			Da. { Sect. 8.
			Ac. { Sect. 9.
			Ab. { Sect. 10.
* The Ablative Case absolute. Sect. 11.			
2 Of Pronouns,		<i>cha.</i> 4.	
3 Of Verbs,	{	Nom.	Sect. 12.
			Gen. { Sect. 13.
			Dat. { Sect. 14.
			Acc. { Sect. 15.
* Passives, Sect. 17.	{	Abl.	Sect. 16.

2 Of Government

To

A short view of the Latine GRAMMAR.

To	Verbs having divers Constructions.	
which		Sect. 18
also	The Infinitive Mood.	Sect. 19
be-	The Gerunds. Sect. 20	Di, Sect. 21
long	Supines. Sect. 24	Do, Sect. 22
the	Time. Sect. 26	Dum, Sect. 23
Rules	Space.	Sect. 27
of	Place.	Sect. 28
	Impersonals.	Sect. 29
4	Of Participles. C. 6. Sect. 30.	
5	Of Adverbs, Cases. } Sect. 31	
	C. 7. with Moods. }	
6	Of Conjunctions, C. 8. which Couple Words } Sect. 32.	
		Govern Moods }
7	Of Prepositions, C. 9. Sect. 33	
8	Of Interjections, C. 10. Sect. 34	

To	Etymologic	Of a Word, C. 11. Sect. 35
	Syntaxis	Sect. 36
IV. Prosodia, which	belong Figures	Of Construction, C. 12.
teacheth the right	Spirits and Tones, C. 1.	
Pronunciation of		First and Middle, C. 2.
Words, Lib. IV.	Quantity of	
by observing their	Syllables	Last, C. 3.

To Grammar (after a manner) pertaineth that which is said concerning the Order of words, which is	1	Grammatical, C. 1.
	2	Rhetorical, C. 2.
	3	Poetical, C. 3. touching which we consider the sorts of
		Feet, C. 4.
		C. 5.
		Verses,

A TABLE of the Heads of the *Latine Grammar.*

Chap.	Page	Chap.	Page
O F Grammar, and its Parts	2	16 Of the Declining of Adjec- tives	64
Lib. I. Of Orthographie	2	17 Of Comparison	68
1 Of Letters	4	18 Of varying Heteroclitics	74
2 Of Syllables	8	19 Of Heteroc. that want case	78
3 Of Right utterance	12	20 Of Heteroclitics that want Number	80
4 Of Points and Sentences	14	21 Of Redundant Heteroclitics	86
Lib. II. Of Etymologie	16	22 Of the Kindes of Nouns	90
1 Of the eight Parts of Speech, and their general Accidents	16	23 Of a Pronoun	94
2 Of a Noun, and its proper Ac- cidents	20	24 Of a Verb, and its Accidents	106
3 Of Case	22	25 Of the form of the first Con- jugation	112
4 Of Gender		26 Of the form of the second Conjugation	116
5 Of the general Rules of Pro- per Names	26	27 Of the form of the third Con- jugation	120
6 Of the general Rules of Com- mon Names	28	28 Of the form of the fourth Con- jugation	124
7 Of the first special Rule	30	29 Of the Preterperfect tense of Verbs Simple	128
8 Of the second special Rule	34	30 Of the Preterperfect tense of Compound Verbs	136
9 Of the third special Rule	38	31 Of the Supines of Simple Verbs	142
10 Of the Genders of Adjectives	42	32 Of the Supines of Compound Verbs, and of the Preterperfect tense	
11 Of the first Declension	44		
12 Of the second Declension	50		
13 Of the third Declension	52		
14 Of the fourth Declension	60		
15 Of the fifth Declension	62		

A Table of the Heads, &c.

Chap.	Pag.	Chap.	Pag.
tense of Verbs in or.	146	11 Of the Figures of a Word	274
33 Of certain Verbs Irregular	148	12 Of the Figures of Construction	276
34 Of Verbs that want certain Moods and Tenses	154	Lib. IV. Of Prosodie	282
35 Of forming Verbs Irregular	160	1 Of Spirits, Tones, or Accents	ib.
36 Of forming the Verb Sum	170	2 Of the quantity of the first and middle Syllables	288
37 Of Verbs Impersonals and Derivatives	172	3 Of the quantity of the last syllables.	301
38 Of a Participle	176	Appendix Grammatices	310
39 Of an Adverb	181	1 { De ordine } Grammatico	310
40 Of a Conjunction	188	2 { Vocum } Oratorio	311
41 Of a Preposition	192	3 { Poëtico	313
42 Of an Interjection	196	4 De Pedē, & ejus generibus	314
LIB. III. Of Syntax	198	5 De Versuum variis generibus	318
1 Of Concordance	198		
2, 3 } Of the Government of { Nouns	214		
4 } { Pronouns	224		
5 } { Verbs	226		
6 } { Participles	258		
7 } { Adverbs	260		
8 } { Conjunctions	264		
9 } { Prepositions	268		
10 } { Interjections	272		

A PRAYER to be used every day,
for Childrens good proceeding at their
BOOKS.

O Almighty Lord and merciful Father,
maker of Heaven and Earth, which of
thy free liberality givest wisdom abund-
antly to all that with faith and full assu-
rance ask it of thee. Beautifie by the light
of thy heavenly grace the towardness of our
wits, the which with all powers of nature
thou hast poured into us, that we may not
only understand those things which may
effectually bring us to the knowledge of
thee and the Lord Jesus our Saviour, but
also with our whole heart and will con-
stantly follow the same, and receive daily
increase through thy bountiful goodness
towards us, as well in good life as learning;
so that thou which workest all things in all
creatures, maist make thy gracious bene-
fits shine in us, to the endless glory and
honour of thine immortal Majesty. *Amen.*

Our Father which art in heaven, Hallow-
ed be thy Name; Thy Kingdome come,
Thy will be done in Earth as it is in Hea-
ven. Give us this day our daily bread. And
forgive us our trespasses, as we forgive them
that trespass against us. And lead us not
into temptation, But deliver us from evil,
For thine is the Kingdome, the Power, and
the Glory, for ever and ever, *Amen.*

Pro Puerorum in Studiis
pio progressu, Precatio
quotidiana.

Domine Pater, Celi ac Terræ
effector; qui liberaliter tribuis
sapientiam omnibus eam a te cum
fiducia petentibus: Exorna (qua-
sumus) ingeniorum nostrorum bo-
nitatem, quam cum ceteris natu-
ra viribus nobis infudisti, lumine
divina gratia tuâ; ut non modò
quæ ad cognoscendum te & Sal-
vatorem nostrum Dominum le-
sum valeant, intelligamus; sed
etiam totâ mente, & voluntate
persequamur, & indes benigni-
tate tuâ, tum doctrinâ, tum pœ-
tate proficiamus; ut qui efficis omnia
in omnibus, in nobis resplendere
dona tua facias, ad gloriam sem-
piternam Majestatis tuæ. *Amen.*

Pater noster, qui es in cælis, San-
ctificetur Nomen tuum. Adve-
niat regnum tuum. Fiat Voluntas
tua, sicut in cælo, sic & in terra.
Pauca nostrum quotidianum da
nobis hodie. Et dimitte nobis debi-
ta nostra, sicut & nos dimittimus
debitis nostris: Et ne nos in-
ducas in tentationem, sed libera
nos à malo. Quia tuum est Reg-
num, Potestas, & gloria in sæcu-
la sæculorum. *Amen.*



FINIS.

e
is
n
-
-
e
b
-
-
d
te
-
-
ia
e
-
-

na
-
as
a.
da
vi-
tis
n
as
-
-
-